

# A FIRST LATIN BOOK

---

W. T. ST. CLAIR

Boston University  
College of Liberal Arts  
Library

THE GIFT OF C.C. Dodge Class of '78

December 1919

No. 478.2  
5a 2f





# A FIRST LATIN BOOK

BOSTON UNIVERSITY  
COLLEGE OF LIBERAL ARTS  
LIBRARY



# A FIRST LATIN BOOK

(CAESAR FOR BEGINNERS)

*A COMPLETE BEGINNER'S BOOK IN LATIN, INTRODUCTORY TO  
CAESAR, AND CONTAINING THE ENTIRE TEXT OF THE  
SECOND BOOK OF THE GALLIC WAR, WITH  
COPIOUS NOTES, AND A VOCABULARY*

BY

WILLIAM T. ST. CLAIR, A.M.

*Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in the Louisville (Kentucky)  
Male High School; Author of 'Medical Latin,' 'Summary of Latin  
Syntax,' and 'Notes to the Third Book of Caesar's Gallic War'*

BOSTON UNIVERSITY  
COLLEGE OF LIBERAL ARTS  
LIBRARY

NEW YORK  
LONGMANS, GREEN AND CO.

LONDON AND BOMBAY

1905

Dodge 178  
Dec. 19

Copyright, 1899, by  
LONGMANS, GREEN & CO.

---

*All rights reserved.*

First Edition, August, 1899.

Reprinted, January and October, 1900 ; October, 1902 ; August, 1904.

Revised, March, 1905.

ROBERT DRUMMOND, PRINTER, NEW YORK.

PA  
2087  
E991

Affectionately Enscribed

to

My Son



## PREFACE.

---

LATIN is an excellent mental training for teaching accuracy, conciseness and exactness. How can this discipline be best secured in schools where the Latin course is confined within three or four years? Those preparatory schools in which Latin is taken up early—say at the age of ten or twelve—may with great profit use ‘New Gradatim,’ ‘Viri Romae,’ or ‘Nepos’ before ‘Caesar’s Gallic War.’ The material for schools of limited time, however, clearly must be taken from the Latin author to be studied first. This book is designed to fit the beginner to take up Caesar as his first Latin. Caesar is not claimed as indispensable to the preparatory course, to the exclusion of other pertinent authors; but the choice of Caesar is the best solution of the problem under the limitations and restrictions given. Besides the fact that Caesar’s Latin is hard to master, we have two difficulties to contend with. *First*, in many schools preparatory work is in the hands of young teachers of very narrow or very short experience; the chief result of their pains is wearisome and, to a great degree, unrewarded labor certainly to themselves and perhaps to their pupils. Indeed even the best teachers would welcome a good *teaching book* introductory to Caesar. *Second*, the change from the ordinary beginner’s book is so great and so radical that the pupil is lost when he faces Caesar’s

Latin. The aim of this book is to meet and, if it may be, lessen these hindrances, not to explain all the difficulties of the Latin language.

The points of practical value are:

1. A working vocabulary of five hundred words taken from the second book of Caesar.

2. Lessons of uniform length throughout, adapted to the average ability of pupils.

3. Lessons graded with a view towards reaching and mastering the complex constructions of Caesar. The subordinate clauses, such as *ut*, *quī*, *cum*, etc., are brought in early in carefully graded lessons, showing the combination of these clauses and illustrating their order and dependence.

4. Steady and uniform progression in the building of the complex sentence and stress laid upon the proper adjustment of words and clauses. Illustrative clauses and phrases from the second book of Caesar, often copied verbatim, oftener with the order and style of the text closely imitated.

5. Alphabetically and by conjugations all of the verbs in the second book of Caesar; principal parts and meanings to be learned as part of the vocabulary, beginning with paragraph (91).

6. The first fourteen chapters of the second book of Caesar simplified and adapted in twenty lessons. Prose composition in each of these lessons based upon the text. Principles and constructions met with in these particular chapters are explained in the *same terms and examples* used in the foregoing lessons which are prepared with a view to application in these chapters.

7. The second book of Caesar complete, with notes. The notes invariably use the terms and examples which

the pupil has been applying from the first lesson. There are no grammatical references and new or offhand expressions, but explanations in terms with which the pupil is already familiar.

There is no wide chasm between the lessons in the main part of the work and the text of Caesar. Between these come the simplified chapters of Caesar and the notes in which, when like points occur in Caesar's text, are repeated the illustrative sentences and explanations used in the former part of the work. Much Latin construction has been purposely omitted and left for the remaining books of Caesar. The lessons have been abridged and constructions made plain, so as to place them within the grasp of the average pupil; since it is not the *quantity* of material crowded into a lesson or a child's head, but the *quality* of the work done, which brings the best results and is therefore most needed. The author gratefully acknowledges his indebtedness to Professor Abraham Flexner, head master of "The Flexner School," Louisville, for valuable assistance in arranging the plan and order of the lessons and especially in the treatment of the relative pronoun; and to Professor Garland Bruce Overton of the Male High School, Louisville, for patient and exhaustive reviews of the proof-pages throughout that have added much to the value of the work. The author feels grateful to the publishers, also, for uniform courtesy and consideration, and for suggestions and help that have added strength to the book.

W. T. S.

LOUISVILLE, June, 1899.



# CONTENTS.

---

PREFACE.....	Pages vii-ix
INTRODUCTION.....	“ xiii-xv
LESSONS I—X. First-declension and second-declension nouns and adjectives declined; first-conjugation verb, <i>portō</i> , in the present, imperfect, and future indicative; sentence-building and order of words; ablative of place, means, attendance.....	Pages 1-16
LESSONS XI—XVIII. Present system of <i>portō</i> completed; purpose clauses; apposition; relation of words and clauses; relative pronoun; principal parts of verbs.....	Pages 16-35
LESSONS XIX—XXVII. First conjugation completed in the active voice; <i>sum</i> completed; third-declension nouns; <i>quod</i> and <i>cum</i> clauses; dative with adjectives; dative with <i>imperō</i> and <i>mandō</i> ; rule of sequence.....	Pages 35-54
LESSONS XXVIII—XXXVII. Second and third conjugations in the active; <i>iubeō</i> with accusative + infinitive; sentence-analysis; order and dependence of words and clauses; varying order of words; fourth declension; adjectives of the third declension; use of <i>sumus</i> .....	Pages 54-76
LESSONS XXXVIII—XLVIII. Complex sentence analyzed; <i>cum</i> and <i>ubi</i> clauses; personal and demonstrative pronouns declined; fifth declension; more vivid future condition; <i>nē</i> in negative purpose and commands; fourth conjugation; first conjugation passive; personal agent; gerundive construction..	Pages 76-103
LESSONS XLIX—LVI. Passive voice of the second, third, and fourth conjugations; <i>cum</i> clauses continued; intermediate clauses; subjunctive mood in indirect discourse and by attraction; ablative absolute; adjectives with genitive in <i>īus</i> ; comparison of adjectives.....	Pages 103-123
LESSONS LVII—LXVI. <i>Ōrātiō Oblīqua</i> ; infinitive tenses in O. O.; subordinate clauses in O. O.; relative clause of purpose; indirect	

question ; perfect passive participle ; purpose and result clauses ; deponent verbs ; less vivid future condition ; dative with com- pound and with special verbs ; causal and concessive <i>cum</i> ; accusative of extent in space ; verbs of commanding ; verbs of fearing.....	Pages 124-151
LESSONS LXVII—LXX. Double dative ; deponents governing the ablative ; four ways of expressing (1) purpose, (2) the ablative absolute, and (3) the <i>cum</i> clause ; dative of possession ; temporal clauses ; dative of agency with the periphrastic ; impersonal verbs ; uses of the relative ; verbs of hindering ; ablative with the comparative.....	Pages 152-161
LESSONS LXXI—LXXV. Substitutes for the perfect active parti- ciple ; adverbial accusative ; ablative of quality ; partitive geni- tive ; <i>persuādeō</i> in the passive ; periphrasis for supineless verbs, etc. ; how 'ought' and 'must' are expressed ; relative clause of result ; commands and exhortations, same in O. O. ; hortatory subjunctive, same in O. O. ; conditionals in O. O. ; table and rule for <i>mood</i> and <i>tense</i> in O. O.....	Pages 161-172
SPECIMENS OF 'INDIRECT DISCOURSE'.....	" 175-177
ADAPTED AND SIMPLIFIED CAESAR.....	" 178-198
TEXT OF CAESAR, Book Two complete.....	" 201-219
NOTES TO THE SECOND BOOK.....	" 222-255
VERBS IN BOOK TWO, WITH MEANINGS.....	" 256-260
PARADIGMS OF NOUNS, PRONOUNS, AND ADJECTIVES.....	" 261-270
COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.....	" 271-273
PARADIGMS OF REGULAR VERBS.....	" 274-291
PARADIGMS OF VERBS, IRREGULAR AND DEPONENT...	" 292-309
PARADIGMS OF THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION...	" 310-311
RULES OF QUANTITY.....	" 312-314
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.....	" 315-341
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.....	" 342-350
INDEX.....	" 351-357

## INTRODUCTION.

---

**Alphabet.**—The Latin alphabet has twenty-four letters: a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z. i serves for both *i* and *j*; as the former it is called *vowel i*, as the latter *consonant i*. There is no **w**: properly **v** represented also the vowel **u**, but in this book **v** is used for the consonant and **u** for the vowel sound of **v** (*u*).

**Vowels.**—The vowels are **a**, **e**, **i**, **o**, **u**, and **y**, sounded thus:

ā as in <i>father</i> .	ǣ as in the first syllable in <i>aha</i> .
ē “ “ <i>prey</i> .	ě “ “ <i>net</i> .
ī “ “ <i>unique</i> .	ĩ “ “ <i>him</i> .
ō “ “ <i>hope</i> .	ǫ “ “ <i>harmony</i> .
ū “ “ <i>rude</i> .	ũ “ “ <i>put</i> .

**y** is sounded like the French *u*, German *ü*.

**Diphthongs.**—Some diphthongs are here omitted as being unimportant.

<b>ae</b> is sounded <i>eye</i> .
<b>au</b> as <i>ow</i> in <i>how</i> .
<b>eu</b> as <i>ew</i> in <i>new</i> .
<b>oe</b> as <i>oi</i> in <i>soil</i> .

**Consonants.**—The consonants **b**, **d**, **f**, **h**, **k**, **l**, **m**, **n**, **p**, **qu** are pronounced as in English. **c**, **g**, **t** have the hard sound, as *cold*, *get*, *take*; **ti** never like the English *sh* in *nation*. **s** has a sharp hissing sound, as *send*, *this*; never

sound *s* like *z*. *i* *consonant* (for *j*) has the sound of *y*, as *million*, *yet*. *r* was probably slightly trilled. *v* has the sound of *w*, as *vinum*, *wine*.

**Syllables.**—In a Latin word there is a syllable for each vowel or diphthong. The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima*; the syllable before the last, the *penult*; the one before the penult, the *antepenult*. Monosyllables are words containing *one* syllable; dissyllables, words of *two* syllables; polysyllables, words of more than two syllables. Utter separately all vowels except those combined as diphthongs. In dividing a word into syllables, a single consonant is joined with the following vowel; as, *lē-gā-tus*. In the case of two or more consonants, join with the following vowel those consonants that can be pronounced with the vowel; as, *ca-stel-lum*.

**Parts of speech.**—Functions as in English : verb, noun, pronoun, adjective, adverb, preposition, conjunction, interjection.

**Inflection.**—The regular change in the form of a Latin word, by which its different relations to other words are shown, is called inflection. The inflection of nouns, pronouns, participles, and adjectives is called Declension; that of verbs, Conjugation. There are five declensions of nouns and four conjugations of verbs.

**Comparison.**—Adjectives and adverbs have three degrees of comparison: positive, comparative, superlative.

**Number, voice, etc.**—There are two numbers, singular and plural; three persons, first, second, and third; three genders, masculine, feminine, and neuter; two voices in the verb, active and passive.

**Cases.**<sup>1</sup>—In the inflection of nouns, etc., Latin has the following six cases:

---

<sup>1</sup> The cases, except the nominative and vocative, are called *oblique cases*.

*Nominative* = simple meaning of the word, as subject.

*Genitive* = *of* + meaning of the word with the values of the English prepositional phrase.

*Dative* = *to* or *for* + meaning of the word—as *indirect object*.

*Accusative* = simple meaning of the word—as *direct object*.

*Vocative* = *O* + the English meaning.

*Ablative* = *from, with, by, in* or *on* + meaning of the word.

**Accent.**—The accent of a syllable is the stress of voice laid upon it.

1. Words of *two* syllables are accented upon the *penult*; as, *tu'-ba*.

2. Words of *more* than *two* syllables are accented upon the *penult*, if that is long; otherwise upon the *antepenult*; as, *a-mā'-vī*, *a-mā'-ve-ram*.

3. The accent should not fall upon the last syllable.

**Quantity.**—Latin vowels marked with a horizontal line above them are long in quantity, i.e., long in duration of the time required to sound them. Vowels not so marked may be regarded as short and require half as much time in sound as long vowels. The length or shortness of a vowel or a syllable is called *quantity*. A syllable is long in quantity (1) if it contains a long vowel or diphthong; (2) if the vowel of the syllable precedes *x*, or two consonants, except a mute and a liquid. A syllable is short if its vowel precedes another vowel or *h*. A syllable is common when it contains a short vowel followed by a mute with *l* or *r*; as, *lă-c̣ri-ma*. In this book all long vowels are marked, special attention having been given to determining hidden quantities. For rules of quantity see (500–504).



## LESSON I.

### FIRST DECLENSION.

(See Introduction for the names and meanings of the cases.)

1. **Fossa**, *a* or *the ditch*, declined in the singular number.

*Nom.* fossa, *a ditch* ("as subject")

*Gen.* fossae, *of a ditch* (pronounced foss-eye)

*Dat.* fossae, *to or for a ditch*

*Acc.* fossam, *a ditch* ("as object")

*Voc.* fossa, *O ditch*

*Abl.* fossā, *from, with, by, in, or on a ditch*

2. The *stem* of a noun is the common part to which terminations are annexed to distinguish the different cases. The stem of **fossa** ends in **ā**, and is the same as the word itself in the nominative case. The stem originally ended in **ā**.

The stem form appears in each case; the nominative and vocative have nothing additional; the ablative is distinguished from the nominative and vocative by the lengthening of the stem vowel **ā**; the genitive and dative annex **e** to the stem, and the accusative annexes **m**. These terminations may be called case-endings, though strictly speaking they are combinations of the stem and the true ending.

### 3. VOCABULARY.

Nouns of the first declension end in **a** in the nominative singular and are *feminine* except when males are meant, as in **poeta**, a poet. In the vocabularies of this declension, when no gender is specified the feminine is meant.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>causa</b>	<b>causae</b>	<i>cause</i>
<b>porta</b>	<b>portae</b>	<i>gate</i>
<b>Italia</b>	<b>Italiae</b>	<i>Italy</i>
<b>fuga</b>	<b>fugae</b>	<i>flight</i>

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>silva</b>	<b>silvae</b>	<i>forest</i>
<b>tuba</b>	<b>tubae</b>	<i>trumpet</i>
<b>prōvincia</b>	<b>prōvinciae</b>	<i>province</i>
<b>lāta</b>	<b>lātae (adj.)</b>	<i>wide or broad</i>
<b>māgna</b>	<b>māgnae (adj.)</b>	<i>great or large</i>
<b>amīcitia</b>	<b>amīcitiae</b>	<i>friendship</i>

**4. Agreement of the adjective.**—An adjective agrees with the noun which it modifies in *gender*, *number*, and *case*. Thus: *silvae lātae, of a broad forest*; *tubā māgnā, with a large trumpet*.

The adjective is usually placed *after* the noun it modifies. For emphasis it may precede the noun.

## 5.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Causam.<sup>1</sup> 2. Ītaliae. 3. Portae. 4. Tubā. 5. Fuga. 6. Silvam lātam. 7. Prōvinciae māgnae. 8. Fugā.

II.—1. Of the province. 2. Flight (*obj.*). 3. For the province. 4. Of a wide ditch. 5. By flight. 6. A large trumpet (*obj.*). 7. To the cause.

## LESSON II.

## FIRST DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

## 6. Fossa declined in the plural.

*Nom. fossae, the ditches*

*Gen. fossārum, of the ditches*

*Dat. fossīs, to or for the ditches*

*Acc. fossās, the ditches*

*Voc. fossae, O ditches*

*Abl. fossīs, from, with, by, in, or on the ditches*

The *stem fossa* is unchanged throughout the plural except in the dative and ablative, where final *a* is omitted before the case-ending *īs*.

<sup>1</sup> There is no Latin word for *the* or *a*, which words must be supplied according to the sense, as also often *his*, *hers*, *theirs*.

7. Use of the genitive.—A noun in the genitive case limits another noun. One genitive may limit another genitive. Sometimes a noun in the genitive is translated by the English *possessive case* instead of *of*.

Thus: *Galbae tuba* may mean *the trumpet of Galba* or *Galba's trumpet*. Here *Galbae* is a noun in the genitive limiting the noun *tuba*.

The ablative *causā*.—*Causā* means *for the sake of*, and must stand *after a genitive*; as, *fugae causā*, *for the sake of flight*.

## 8.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
pūgna	pūgnae	fight
Gallia	Galliae	Gaul
Galba	Galbae, <i>mas.</i>	Galba ( <i>man's name</i> )
galea	galeae	helmet
rīpa	rīpae	bank
cōpiaē	cōpiārum, usually <i>plur.</i>	forces
Belgae	Belgārum, <i>mas.</i>	Belgians
amāta	amātae, <i>adj.</i>	beloved
nova	novae, <i>adj.</i>	new
alta	altae, <i>adj.</i>	tall or deep
multa	multae, <i>adj.</i>	much or many
et, conjunction		and
in, preposition with the <i>abl.</i>		in

9. Use of *in*.—The preposition *in* is used with the *ablative* to denote place where. Thus: *in prōvinciā novā*, *in the new province*.

## 10.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Cōpiārum. 2. Prōvinciīs. 3. Galeae. 4. Amīci-  
tiae causā. 5. Rīpās altās. 6. In silvā lātā. 7. Galbae  
tubā novā. 8. Galeīs multīs. 9. Belgārum cōpiās multās.  
10. Galbae cōpiārum causā.

- II.—1. With a trumpet. 2. By Galba's flight. 3. For the beloved forces. 4. The flight (*obj.*) of the Belgians. 5. For the sake of a new province.

### LESSON III.

#### FIRST-CONJUGATION VERB. FIRST DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

#### 11. Present indicative active of *portō*, *I carry*.

##### SINGULAR.

1. *portō*, *I carry*, *am carrying*,
2. *portās*, *you carry* [*do carry*]
3. *portat*, *he carries*

##### PLURAL.

1. *portāmus*, *we carry*
2. *portātis*, *you carry*
3. *portant*, *they carry*

The *present stem* of this verb is *portā*, which appears in each form except the *first person singular*, where final *ā* is lost before *ō*. The endings *s*, *t*, *mus*, *tis*, *nt*, annexed to the stem, denote the different persons of the verb and its subject, and are called *personal endings*. To conjugate this tense of a verb, change *final ō* of the *first person singular* to *ās*, *at*, *āmus*, *ātis*, *ant*.

Conjugate and give meanings of *pūgnō*, *parō*, and *superō* in the *present indicative active*. Decline and give meanings in both singular and plural of *tuba*, *galea*, and *silva alta* (*together*).

#### 12.

#### VOCABULARY.

<i>pūgnō</i> ,	<i>I fight</i>
<i>parō</i> ,	<i>I prepare</i>
<i>superō</i> ,	<i>I overcome</i>
<i>occupō</i> ,	<i>I seize</i>
<i>cēlō</i> ( <i>pronounced ka-lo</i> ),	<i>I conceal</i>
<i>vītō</i> ( <i>pronounced we-to</i> ),	<i>I avoid</i>

#### 13. Commit to memory the following examples:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>portat</i> ,                      | <i>he carries</i>                        |
| 2. <i>galeam parat</i> ,                | <i>he prepares a helmet</i>              |
| 3. <i>Galba Belgās superat</i> ,        | <i>Galba overcomes the Belgians</i>      |
| 4. <i>occupant</i> ,                    | <i>they seize</i>                        |
| 5. <i>fugam cēlant</i> ,                | <i>they conceal their flight</i>         |
| 6. <i>Belgae cōpiās Galbae vītant</i> , | <i>the Belgians avoid Galba's forces</i> |

In sentences (1) and (2), as no subject is separately expressed, *he* is to be supplied. In (3) the subject **Galba** is separately given and therefore *he* should be omitted. Again in (3) **Belgās** is the *direct object* of the verb **superat**, which it precedes: so in (2), (5), and (6), the *direct object* is in the *accusative* and stands before the verb, which comes last.

## LESSON IV.

### FIRST DECLENSION AND FIRST CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

14. Conjugate and give meanings of **occupō**, **cēlō**, and **vitō** in the *present indicative active*.

Decline and give meanings of **ripa**, **cōpia**, and **porta magna**.

Review vocabularies in Lessons I and II.

15. Example of the direct and indirect objects.

**Galba cōpiīs galeās multās** *Galba prepares many helmets*  
**parat,** *for his forces*

In this sentence **cōpiīs** is in the *dative* and is called the *indirect object* of the verb **parat**; the *indirect object* usually precedes the *direct*, as **cōpiīs** here precedes **galeās**.

16. Fix in mind this common *order of words*:

- a. Place the adjective *after* the noun it modifies.
- b. **causā**, *for the sake of*, always comes *after* a *genitive*.
- c. The verb stands at the end of a sentence with the *direct object* before it.
- d. The *indirect (dative) object* comes before the *direct*.
- e. The subject comes first; if not separately expressed, it is indicated by the *ending* of the verb.

### 17. EXERCISES.

- I.—1. Occupat. 2. Cēlāmus. 3. Superās. 4. Vītātis.  
5. Belgās superāmus. 6. Belgae fugam cēlant. 7. Cōpiīs

tubās novās parāmus. 8. Galbae cōpiaē galeās multās portant (are carrying). 9. Belgae in Galliā cōpiās māgnās parant. 10. Galba in Italiā Belgārum cōpiās superat.

II.—1. We seize. 2. You (*sing.*) are fighting (or fight). 3. You (*plur.*) are preparing helmets for the beloved forces. 4. They avoid a fight for the sake of friendship. 5. They conceal helmets and trumpets for the Belgians. 6. Galba avoids a fight and conceals his flight.

## LESSON V.

### SECOND DECLENSION.

#### 18. Servus, *slave*, declined in the singular.

<i>Nom.</i>	servus,	<i>a slave</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	servī, <sup>1</sup>	<i>of a slave</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	servō,	<i>to or for a slave</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	servum,	<i>a slave</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	serve, <sup>2</sup>	<i>O slave</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	servō,	<i>from, with, by, etc., a slave</i>

The stem of nouns in the second declension ends in *o*. In combination with the case-endings *o* undergoes changes, appearing as *ō*, *ī*, *u*, *e*, or disappearing altogether. The stem of **servus** is **servo**.

#### 19. Table of case-endings.—Commit to memory:

<i>Nom.</i>	-us	= <i>subject</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	-ī	= <i>of</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	-ō	= <i>to or for</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	-um	= <i>object</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	-e	= <i>O</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	-ō	= <i>from, with, by, in, or on</i>

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced ser-*we*, with the *r* slightly trilled.

<sup>2</sup> Pronounced ser-*wāy*, with the *r* slightly trilled.

## 20.

## VOCABULARY.

Nouns of this declension ending in **us** are mostly masculine; when no gender for such nouns is specified, the *masculine* is meant.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>mūrus</b>	<b>mūrī</b>	<i>wall</i>
<b>vīcus</b>	<b>vīcī</b>	<i>village</i>
<b>amīcus</b>	<b>amīcī</b>	<i>friend</i>
<b>gladius</b>	<b>gladī</b> <sup>1</sup>	<i>sword</i>
<b>dō</b> ( <i>conjugated like portō</i> )		<i>I give</i>
<b>novus</b>	<b>novī</b> , <i>adj.</i>	<i>new</i>
<b>māgnus</b>	<b>māgnī</b> , <i>adj.</i>	<i>great or large</i>
<b>multus</b>	<b>multī</b> , <i>adj.</i>	<i>much or many</i>
<b>amātus</b>	<b>amātī</b> , <i>adj.</i>	<i>beloved</i>

**21. Agreement of adjective. (4.<sup>2</sup>)**—Notice carefully the agreement of the adjective in the following examples; thus far the noun and its limiting adjective have the same ending;

1. *fossae lātae, of a wide ditch*
2. *mūrī lātī, of a wide wall*
3. *galeā novā, with a new helmet*
4. *gladiō novō, with a new sword*

## 22.

## EXERCISES.

- I.—1. *Mūrō.* 2. *Gladium novum.* 3. *Amīcī causā.*  
 4. *Caesar amīcō galeam novam et gladium māgnū dat.*  
 5. *Galba in vīcō tubās multās cēlat.*

- II.—1. *Of a large village.* 2. *To a beloved friend.*  
 3. *Galba is preparing a high wall for the village.* 4. *Caesar conceals in the village the helmets of his forces.*

<sup>1</sup> Nouns in **ius** and **ium** contract the genitive ending **ii** to single **ī**.

<sup>2</sup> All references are made to paragraphs.

## LESSON VI.

FIRST CONJUGATION AND SECOND DECLENSION,  
CONTINUED.23. Imperfect indicative of *portō*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. portābam, <i>I was carrying— I carried</i>	1. portābāmus, <i>we were carry- ing [ing</i>
2. portābās, <i>you were carrying</i>	2. portābātis, <i>you were carry-</i>
3. portābat, <i>he was carrying</i>	3. portābant, <i>they were car- rying</i>

The stem is **portā**, which appears in each form. To make the imperfect tense of a verb, take the present stem (11) and annex **ba**, which is called the *tense-sign*, and to this add the personal endings **m, s, t, mus, tis, nt**. Thus occupā + **ba** + **m**.

## 24. Table of endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-bam	-bāmus
-bās	-bātis
-bat	-bant

## 25. Servus declined in the plural.

<i>Nom.</i>	servī,	<i>slaves</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	servōrum,	<i>of slaves</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	servīs,	<i>to or for slaves</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	servōs,	<i>slaves</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	servī,	<i>O slaves</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	servīs,	<i>from, with, etc., slaves</i>

## 26. Table of case-endings.

<i>Nom.</i>	-ī	<i>Acc.</i>	-ōs
<i>Gen.</i>	-ōrum	<i>Voc.</i>	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	-īs	<i>Abl.</i>	-īs

## 27.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<i>lēgātus</i>	<i>lēgātī</i>	<i>ambassador</i>
<i>Rōmānus</i>	<i>Rōmānī</i>	<i>Roman (noun or adj.)</i>
<i>populus</i>	<i>populī</i>	<i>people</i>
<i>Gallus</i>	<i>Gallī</i>	<i>Gaul (noun or adj.)</i>
<i>numerus</i>	<i>numerī</i>	<i>number</i>
<i>nūntius</i>	<i>nūntī</i>	<i>message</i>
<i>hiemō</i>		<i>I winter</i>
<i>aedificō</i>		<i>I build</i>
<i>conlocō</i>		<i>I place</i>
<i>in, prep. with the accusative</i>		<i>into</i>
<i>in Galliam, in Ītaliā</i>		<i>into Gaul, into Italy</i>

## 28.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Hiemāmus.* 2. *Hiemābāmus.* 3. *Aedificat.* 4. *Aedificābat.* 5. *Caesar Gallōrum cōpiās superābat.* 6. *Cōpiaē populī<sup>1</sup> Rōmānī in vicō Belgārum hiemant.* 7. *Gallī amīcīs Galbae gladiōs novōs dabant.*

II.—1. They were building. 2. Caesar is wintering in a new village. 3. Galba was building a high wall for his forces. 4. The ambassadors of the Belgians give swords and helmets to Galba's slaves.

## LESSON VII.

## FIRST CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

29. Future indicative of *portō*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>portābō, I shall carry</i>	1. <i>portābimus, we shall carry</i>
2. <i>portābis, you will carry</i>	2. <i>portābitis, you will carry</i>
3. <i>portābit, he will carry</i>	3. <i>portābunt, they will carry</i>

The stem is **portā**; the tense-signs are **bō, bi, and bu**, to which are annexed the personal endings **s, t, mus, tis, nt**.

<sup>1</sup> *Populus Rōmānus* (always singular) means *the Roman people, the Romans*.

## 30. Table of endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-bō	-bimus
-bis	-bitis
-bit	-bunt

31. Order of words.—For answers to questions on the following sentence see (16).

Caesar in Galliā cōpiīs Galbae    *Caesar will prepare in Gaul new*  
 vīcōs novōs parābit,                    *villages for Galba's forces*

Point out the subject. What does the adverbial phrase in Galliā limit? See use of adjunct (34). Name and give position of the *indirect object*. The genitive Galbae limits what? (7). *Direct object* and position? *Agreement of adjective* and its position? (4).

## 32.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
locus	locī	place
liberī	liberōrum ( <i>plur. only</i> )	children
Germānī	Germānōrum	Germans
fīnitimī	fīnitimōrum	neighbours
nostrī	nostrōrum	our (men) <sup>1</sup>
idōneus or	idōnea, <i>adj. mas. or fem.</i>	suitable
reliquus <sup>2</sup> or	reliqua, <i>adj. mas. or fem.</i>	remaining
properō		I hasten
contrā, <i>prep. with the acc.</i>		against

33. Conjugate in the present, imperfect, and future indicative properō, conlocō, and hiemō, and give meanings.

<sup>1</sup> For this use of nostrī see (258).

<sup>2</sup> reliquus often means 'the rest of,' but the 'of' does not necessitate the use of a genitive: cōpiae reliquae—cōpiās reliquās, may mean 'the rest of the forces.'

Decline and give meanings of *causa*, *prōvincia*, *mūrus*, *gladius*, and *finitimī*.

**34. Use of the adjunct or adverbial phrase.**—The preposition with its noun always in the accusative or ablative case forms an adverbial phrase and modifies the verb. The accusative contains the idea of *place whither*, the ablative *place whence* and *where*. Prepositions are used to define more exactly the local ideas involved in these cases.

**35. Uses of *in*.**—*In* + ablative = *in* or *on*, and modifies a verb of *rest* within the limits of one place. *In* + accusative = *into* (*to*, *against*), and modifies a verb of *motion* from one place to another.

Caesar *in* Galliā (*abl.*) hiemābat,      Caesar was wintering (resting) in Gaul

Caesar *in* Galliam (*acc.*) pro-      Caesar will hasten into Gaul  
perābit,

## 36.

## EXERCISE.

1. Nostrī Germānōs et Belgās superābunt. 2. Germānī in locīs idōneīs liberōs cēlābant. 3. Reliquae Belgārum cōpiaē contrā populum Rōmānum pūgnant. 4. Cōpiaē Rōmānae (*adj.*) in Galliam pūgnae causā properābunt. 5. Galbae amīcī nostrīs māgnū gladiōrum numerum parant.

## LESSON VIII.

## SECOND DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

37. Nouns in *um*.

Nouns of the second declension ending in *um* are neuter. The *nominative*, *accusative*, and *vocative* are alike, ending in *um* in the *singular* and *a* in the *plural*.

## Oppidum, town.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	oppidum	oppida
<i>Gen.</i>	oppidī	oppidōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	oppidō	oppidīs
<i>Acc.</i>	oppidum	oppida
<i>Voc.</i>	oppidum	oppida
<i>Abl.</i>	oppidō	oppidīs

Singular nouns ending in *a*, genitive *ae*, are *feminine* and are declined like *fossa*.

Plural nouns ending in *a*, genitive *ōrum*, are *neuter* and are declined like the *plural* of *oppidum*.

## 38. Table of case-endings.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	-um	-a	<i>Acc.</i>	-um	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	-ī	-ōrum	<i>Voc.</i>	-um	-a
<i>Dat.</i>	-ō	-īs	<i>Abl.</i>	-ō	-īs

## 39.

## VOCABULARY.

(The gender is *neuter*.)

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
scūtum	-ī	shield
vāllum	-ī	rampart
perīculum	-ī	danger
arma	armōrum ( <i>plur. only</i> )	arms
loca	locōrum	places <sup>1</sup>
nōn ( <i>adv.</i> )		not
expūgnō		I storm
per, <i>prep. with the acc.</i>		through
multus	multa	multum, <i>adj.</i> much <sup>2</sup>
altus	-a	-um, <i>adj.</i> high
māgnus	-a	-um, <i>adj.</i> great

<sup>1</sup> *Locus*, place, may in the plural take the endings of the *masculine* gender, like the plural of *servus*; or the endings of the *neuter*, like the plural of *oppidum*. In Caesar's Latin the *neuter* plural is regularly used.

<sup>2</sup> The three genders of the adjective occur side by side. For full declension, see (46).

## 40.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Nostrī in Galliam arma multa portābunt. 2. Cō-piae Rōmānae (*adj.*) Belgārum vicōs et oppida expūgnā-bant. 3. Germānī per oppida Belgārum arma et liberōs portant. 4. Belgae pūgnae causā in silvīs altīs galeās et gladiōs et scūta cēlābunt. 5. Lēgātus populi Rōmānī nostrīs loca idōnea parat.

II.—1. Slaves were carrying Galba's arms through places of danger. 2. Neighbours of the Roman people (*sing.*) build large ramparts for Galba's forces. 3. Caesar will give helmets and shields to his beloved forces and storm the walls of the town.

## LESSON IX.

## SECOND DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

41. Puer,<sup>1</sup> boy, mas. Ager, field, mas. Vir, man, mas.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	puer	puerī	ager	agrī	vir	virī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī	puerōrum	agrī	agrōrum	virī	virōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs	virō	virīs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum	puerōs	agrū	agrōs	virum	virōs
<i>Voc.</i>	puer	puerī	ager	agrī	vir	virī
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō	puerīs	agrō	agrīs	virō	virīs

42. Rule of gender.—Second-declension nouns ending in *us* are mostly *masculine*, rarely *feminine*. Nouns in *er* and *ir* are *masculine*, those in *um* are *neuter*.

Decline the *nouns* of the first and second declensions (453, 454), and conjugate (with meanings) the present, imperfect, and future indicative of *amō* (474).

43 (a). Ablative with *cum*.—When *with* means *together*

<sup>1</sup> Observe that the noun and agreeing adjective need not *end alike*; as, *puer amātus*, the beloved boy.

*with*, it is expressed not by the *ablative alone*, but by **cum** + *ablative*. This is called the “*ablative of attendance*.”

**Galba in Galliam cum cōpiis** *Galba hastens into Gaul with his forces*  
**properat,**

In this example the two adverbial phrases **in Galliam** and **cum cōpiis** *precede* and limit the verb **properat**, which they *follow* in the translation.

**43 (b). Ablative without cum.**—When *with* means *with the help of* or *with the aid of*, it is expressed by the ablative alone. This is called the “*ablative of means*.”

**Nostrī pilis multīs castra ex-** *Our men are storming the camp*  
**pūgnant,** *with many javelins*

**44.****VOCABULARY.**

(The gender is *neuter*.)

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
proelium	proelī	battle
pīlum	-ī	javelin
castra	castrōrum ( <i>plur. only</i> )	camp <sup>1</sup>
hīberna	-ōrum	winter-quarters
praesidium	praesidī	defence
cum, <i>prep.</i>	<i>with the abl.</i>	<i>with</i>
redintegrō		<i>I renew</i>

**45.****EXERCISES.**

**I.—1.** Germānī cum nostrīs proelium nōn redintegrābunt. **2.** Nostrī gladiīs et pilis praesidia Gallōrum expūgnābant. **3.** Galba in Galliam cum cōpiīs properābit et armīs castra Gallōrum expūgnābit. **4.** Cōpiae reliquae in castra arma portant et praesidia nova parant.

**II.—1.** Caesar places his new forces in winter-quarters for the sake of a defence. **2.** Our men were storming the walls of the town and renewing battle with the Germans. **3.** The friends of the Romans (*noun*) will build many ramparts for our men.

<sup>1</sup> Decline **castra** (37).

## LESSON X.

## ADJECTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

46. *Altus, alta, altum, high.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>altus</b>	<b>alta</b>	<b>altum</b>	<b>altī</b>	<b>altae</b>	<b>alta</b>
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>altī</b>	<b>altae</b>	<b>altī</b>	<b>altōrum</b>	<b>altārum</b>	<b>altōrum</b>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>altō</b>	<b>altae</b>	<b>altō</b>	<b>altīs</b>	<b>altīs</b>	<b>altīs</b>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>altum</b>	<b>altam</b>	<b>altum</b>	<b>altōs</b>	<b>altās</b>	<b>alta</b>
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>alte</b>	<b>alta</b>	<b>altum</b>	<b>altī</b>	<b>altae</b>	<b>alta</b>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>altō</b>	<b>altā</b>	<b>altō</b>	<b>altīs</b>	<b>altīs</b>	<b>altīs</b>

47. *Uses of the ablative.*

1. Ablative of *place where* takes the preposition *in*, thus: **Caesar in Galliā hiemābit.**

2. Ablative of *attendance* takes the preposition *cum*, thus: **Galba cum cōpiīs properat.**

3. Ablative of *means or instrument* has *no preposition*, thus: **Rōmānī gladiīs pūgnābant.**

In (1) and (2) the adverbial phrases *in Galliā* and *cum cōpiīs* modify the verb; in (3) *gladiīs*, though a noun in the ablative case, modifies *pūgnābant* in an adverbial sense.

## 48.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>nūntius</b>	<b>nūntī, mas.</b>	<i>messenger</i>
<b>mora</b>	<b>-ae, fem.</b>	<i>delay</i>
<b>auxilium</b>	<b>auxilī, neut.</b>	<i>aid or help</i>
<b>imperium</b>	<b>-ī, neut.</b>	<i>power or command</i>
<b>sine, prep. with the abl.</b>		<i>without</i>
<b>ē or ex, prep. with the abl.</b>		<i>out of</i>
<b>convocō</b>		<i>I summon</i>
<b>cōpia</b>	<b>-ae, fem.</b>	<i>abundance</i>
<b>Rēmī</b>	<b>-ōrum, mas.</b>	<i>the Remi</i>
<b>dubitō</b>		<i>I hesitate</i>

## 49.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Nostri cum Germanorum finitimis proelium non redintegrabunt. 2. Legatus Romanus sine mora ex hibernis nuntios multos convocabat. 3. Galba oppidi muros expugnabit et imperi causam copias Belgarum superabit. 4. Remi in proeliis multis populo Romano auxilium dant. 5. Caesar per provinciam cum copiis properabit et in Italia sine periculo hiemabit.

II.—1. Slaves were carrying arms out of the town into winter-quarters. 2. Caesar will not give help to the remaining Remi. 3. They winter in the fields of the Gauls and renew the battle against our men.

## LESSON XI.

## FIRST CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

50. Present subjunctive of *portō*.

## SINGULAR.

1. portem, *I may<sup>1</sup> carry*
2. portēs, *you may carry*
3. portet, *he may carry*

## PLURAL.

1. portēmus, *we may carry*
2. portētis, *you may carry*
3. portent, *they may carry*

The present subjunctive is formed by changing final *ā*, of the stem *portā*, to *ē* and annexing the *personal endings m, s, t, mus, tis, nt*.

This is the only tense in which the stem *portā* undergoes a change of the final vowel.

## 51. Table of endings.

## SINGULAR.

-em  
-ēs  
-et

## PLURAL.

-ēmus  
-ētis  
-ent

---

<sup>1</sup> This meaning of the *present subjunctive* is given with a view to its use in *final clauses of purpose*. Other English renderings will be given later.

## 52.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
frūmentum	-ī, neut.	corn
equus	-ī, mas.	horse
oppidānī	-ōrum, mas.	townsmen
sīgnum	-ī, neut.	signal
ut (with the subjunctive)		so that
coniūrō		I conspire
vāstō		I lay waste
appellō		I call
praefectus	-ī, mas.	general

## 53. Apposition.

Rōmānī Rēmīs amīcīs auxi- The Romans give help to the  
lium dant, Remi, their friends

In the English sentence *friends* is in apposition with and limits *Remi*; the Latin equivalent for *friends* is put in the *dative* to agree with **Rēmīs**, as the *appositive* takes the *case of the noun which it limits*.

**54. Use of ut.**—When *ut* means *so that*, it introduces a subordinate clause of *purpose*, and the verb of this clause is in the subjunctive. This *ut* + subjunctive may be translated by the *English infinitive*.

Example of the *ut* clause.

Pūgnant ut superent, They fight so that they may  
overcome (or to overcome)

The *English infinitive* “to overcome” is not rendered by the *Latin infinitive*; it must be changed to the *subjunctive*.

## 55.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Rōmānī gladiīs pūgnant, ut Gallōs superent.  
2. Galba nostrīs equōs dabit, ut ex Italiā properent. 3.  
Caesar cum cōpiīs per prōvinciam properat ut Gallōrum  
vicōs vāstet. 4. Germānī cum Belgīs, finitimīs populī

Rōmānī, coniūrābunt. 5. Caesar sīgnum proelī dat et cōpiaē Rōmānae oppidum māgnū expūgnant.

II.—1. The Gauls build high walls so that they may avoid a battle with our men. 2. The Romans will not lay waste the fields of the Remi, their friends. 3. Caesar hastens into Gaul to prepare<sup>1</sup> a suitable camp for our men.

## LESSON XII.

### ADJECTIVE AND VERB, CONTINUED.

#### 56. Integer, integra, integrum, *fresh*.

The masculine gender is inflected like *ager*, the feminine like *fossa*, and the neuter like *oppidum*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	integer	-gra	-grum	integrī	-grae	-gra
<i>Gen.</i>	integrī	-grae	-grī	integrōrum	-grārum	-grōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	integrō	-grae	-grō	integrīs	-grīs	-grīs
<i>Acc.</i>	integrum	-gram	-grum	integrōs	-grās	-gra
<i>Voc.</i>	integer	-gra	-grum	integrī	-grae	-gra
<i>Abl.</i>	integrō	-grā	-grō	integrīs	-grīs	-grīs

57. **Principal parts of the verb.**—Latin verbs have four principal parts, so called because when these parts are known, the other forms of the verb may be found.

They are *present indicative*, *present infinitive*, *perfect indicative*, and the *first supine*. The *present infinitive* of first-conjugation verbs ends in *-re*, thus: **portō, portāre**.

The present stem of a verb is found regularly by dropping *re* from the present active infinitive. Stem of **portō, portā**.

---

<sup>1</sup> Not infinitive in Latin.

## 58.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
subsidiū	-ī, neut.	relief
cōnsiliū	-ī, neut.	plan
initium	-ī, neut.	beginning
aedificiū	-ī, neut.	building
impedimenta	-ōrum, neut. plur.	baggage
ferus -a, -um, adj.		fierce
sed, conj.		but
trāns, prep. with the acc.		across
propter, prep. with the acc.		on account of
ad, prep. with the acc.		to or towards
noster, -tra, -trum, adj.		our
cōfirmō		I establish

Conjugate the following verbs in the present subjunctive, and review them in the present, imperfect, and future indicative with meanings: *dubitō*, *appellō*, *convocō*, and *parō*. Decline *altus* and *crēber* (466).

59. Use of *ad*.—When “to” means *towards* (of place), it is expressed *not* by the *dative*, but by *ad* + *accusative*. This phrase—*ad* + *accusative*—modifies a verb which denotes *motion* from one place to another. Thus:

*Nostri ad Galbae castra pro-*      *Our men hasten to Galba's*  
*perant,*                                      *camp*

But:

*Caesar Galbae (dat.) equum*      *Caesar gives a horse to Galba*  
*dat,*

## 60.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Galba proeli causā ē castris nostris convocāre nōn dubitābit.* 2. *Praefecti nostri (adj.) ad Galbae castra gladios et scūta portāre parant.* 3. *Lēgātus Rōmānus in Galliā aedificia nōn vāstābat sed cum Gallis amicitiam cōfirmābat.* 4. *Caesar cōpiis amātis arma nova dabit ut castra Germānōrum expūgent.*

II.—1. The Belgians do not hesitate to build high walls so that they may avoid a battle. 2. The remaining Gauls were preparing to renew the battle with the Germans, their neighbours. 3. The fierce Germans are carrying corn to the camp of the Belgians; they will not give aid to Galba.

## LESSON XIII.

### VERB, CONTINUED.

#### 61. Imperfect subjunctive of *portō*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>portārem, I might carry</i>	1. <i>portārēmus, we might carry</i>
2. <i>portārēs, you might carry</i>	2. <i>portārētis, you might carry</i>
3. <i>portāret, he might carry</i>	3. <i>portārent, they might carry</i>

#### 62. Table of endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-rem	-rēmus
-rēs	-rētis
-ret	-rent

These endings are annexed to the stem *portā*.

Conjugate in both *present* and *imperfect subjunctive*, and give meanings of *fugō*, *mandō*, and *imperō*.

#### 63. Principal parts of verbs.

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Infin.	Perf. Ind.	First Supine.	
<i>fugō</i>	<i>fugāre</i>	<i>fugāvī</i>	<i>fugātum</i>	<i>to rout</i>
<i>pūgnō</i>	<i>pūgnāre</i>	<i>pūgnāvī</i>	<i>pūgnātum</i>	<i>to fight</i>
<i>occupō</i>	<i>occupāre</i>	<i>occupāvī</i>	<i>occupātum</i>	<i>to seize</i>

**64. Moods and tenses.**—The indicative mood has six tenses, viz.: present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, and future-perfect.

The subjunctive has four tenses: present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect.

The first *three* of the indicative and the first *two* of the subjunctive are formed upon the *present stem*.

**65. Ablative of time.**—*Time when or within which* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

**Vigiliā secundā trāns Rhēnum** *He hastens across the Rhine in*  
*properat,* *(during) the second watch*

**Nostrī initiō proelī Germānōs** *Our men rout the Germans in*  
*fugant,* *the beginning of the battle*

**Vigiliā** and **initiō**, though nouns in the ablative case, in an adverbial sense modify the verb.

**66.****VOCABULARY.**

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<b>animus</b>	-ī, <i>mas.</i>	<i>mind</i>
<b>Rhēnus</b>	-ī, <i>mas.</i>	<i>the Rhine</i>
<b>tēlum</b>	-ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>weapon</i>
<b>prō</b> , <i>prep.</i>	<i>with the abl.</i>	<i>in front of</i>
<b>prīmus</b>	-a, -um, <i>num. adj.</i>	<i>first</i>
<b>secundus</b>	-a, -um, “ “	<i>second</i>
<b>extrēmus</b>	-a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>farthest</i>
<b>oppūgnō</b>	-āre	<i>to attack</i>
<b>mandō</b>	-āre	<i>to direct or instruct</i>
<b>imperō</b>	-āre	<i>to command</i>
<b>fugō</b>	-āre	<i>to rout</i>
<b>vigilia</b>	-ae, <i>fem.</i>	<i>watch (division of the night)</i>

**67.****EXERCISES.**

**I.**—1. Nostrī prō castrīs vālla alta aedificant. 2. Caesar cum cōpiīs trāns Rhēnum ad oppida Germānōrum properābat. 3. Germānī in castra lēgātōs Rōmānōs convocant et nostrīs auxilium dare parant. 4. Nostrī in Galbae castra tēla multa portābunt et primā vigiliā Belgās fugābunt. 5. Gallī prō mūrō oppidī cōpiās integrās conlocābant ut proelium cum nostrīs redintegrārent.

**II.**—1. Our (*adj.*) ambassador will not hesitate to attack a

town of the Belgians in farthest Gaul. 2. Our men were carrying new weapons into a suitable camp so that they might rout the Gauls. 3. The Belgians in many places build high walls for the sake of defence.

## LESSON XIV.

### VERB AND ADJECTIVE, CONTINUED. REVIEW OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

#### 68. Conjugation of *imperō*.

Present Indicative. <i>I command.</i>	Imperfect Indicative. <i>was commanding.</i>	Future Indicative. <i>shall command.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. <i>imperō</i>	<i>imperābam</i>	<i>imperābō</i>
2. <i>imperās</i>	<i>imperābās</i>	<i>imperābis</i>
3. <i>imperat</i>	<i>imperābat</i>	<i>imperābit</i>
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. <i>imperāmus</i>	<i>imperābāmus</i>	<i>imperābimus</i>
2. <i>imperātis</i>	<i>imperābātis</i>	<i>imperābitis</i>
3. <i>imperant</i>	<i>imperābant</i>	<i>imperābunt</i>
Present Subjunctive. <i>may command.</i>	Imperfect Subjunctive. <i>might command.</i>	
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	
1. <i>imperem</i>	<i>imperārem</i>	
2. <i>imperēs</i>	<i>imperārēs</i>	
3. <i>imperet</i>	<i>imperāret</i>	
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	
1. <i>imperēmus</i>	<i>imperārēmus</i>	
2. <i>imperētis</i>	<i>imperārētis</i>	
3. <i>imperent</i>	<i>imperārent</i>	

69. Agreement of the adjective.—Compare the *ending* of the *adjective* and the *ending* of the *noun* which it limits, in the following:

*Nostrī Belgās ferōs fugābunt, Our men will rout the fierce Belgians*

Do the noun **Belgās** and the adjective **ferōs** end alike? Look up the *gender* of **Belgās** and apply the rule for agreement of the adjective (4).

### 70. Imperative mood of *portō*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. [wanting]	[wanting]
2. { portā, carry (thou)	{ portāte, carry (ye)
{ portātō, thou shalt carry	{ portātōte, ye shall carry
3. portātō, he shall carry	portantō, they shall carry

### Examples of the use of the imperative.

**Gladiōs portā, serve!**                      *Slave, carry the swords!*  
**Oppidum, lēgātī, expūgnāte!**        *Ambassadors, storm the town!*

Do not place the person addressed (*voc.*) *first* in a Latin sentence.

### 71.

### EXERCISES.

I.—1. **Germānōs fugāte, Rōmānī!** 2. **Gallī, ut periculum vītent, ex oppidīs properant.** 3. **Galba tubā sīgnum proelī dabit.** 4. **Nostrī e Germānōrum castrīs equōs et arma portābunt.** 5. **Germānī cum Belgīs coniūrābant ut populī (*gen.*) Rōmānī praesidia expūgnārent.** 6. **Lēgātī Rōmānī in hibernīs in vicō idōneō cōpiās conlocābunt.**

II.—1. Ambassador, give the signal! 2. The Germans will attack the remaining towns and winter in the villages of the Gauls. 3. The townsmen hasten to Galba's camp to establish <sup>1</sup> friendship with <sup>2</sup> the Roman people.

<sup>1</sup> Not infinitive in Latin.

<sup>2</sup> Use *cum*.

## LESSON XV.

## PORTŌ, CONTINUED. PRESENT SYSTEM OF TENSES, COMPLETED.

72. Present system of *portō* completed.

*Present participle* portāns, *carrying*

*Present infinitive* portāre, *to carry*

*Gerund* portandī, *of carrying*

73. Gerund defined and declined.—The gerund is, in form, a neuter verbal noun of the second declension, corresponding in meaning to the English verbal noun ending in *ing*.

The gerund is thus declined. The *nominative* is supplied by the present infinitive active.

*Gen.* portandī, *of carrying*

*Dat.* portandō, *to or for carrying*

*Acc.* (ad) portandum, *for carrying*

*Abl.* portandō, *from, with, by, etc., carrying*

74. Use of the gerund.—The gerund in any form governs the same case as the verb of which it is a part. As:

Agrōs vāstandō, *By laying waste the fields*

75. Synopsis of *portō* in the present system.—The following nine forms are built upon the present stem *portā*:

- |                                 |           |                       |
|---------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>Present indicative</i>    | portō,    | <i>I carry</i>        |
| 2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>  | portābam, | <i>I was carrying</i> |
| 3. <i>Future indicative</i>     | portābō,  | <i>I shall carry</i>  |
| 4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>   | portem,   | <i>I may carry</i>    |
| 5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i> | portārem, | <i>I might carry</i>  |
| 6. <i>Imperative</i>            | portā,    | <i>carry (thou)</i>   |
| 7. <i>Present participle</i>    | portāns,  | <i>carrying</i>       |
| 8. <i>Present infinitive</i>    | portāre,  | <i>to carry</i>       |
| 9. <i>Gerund</i>                | portandī, | <i>of carrying</i>    |

Give complete synopsis, *present system*, in order of “tense-name,” “tense-form,” and “meaning,” of *incūsō* and *sustentō*.

Decline the *nouns* of the *first* and *second declensions* (453, 454), also *altus* and *crēber* (466). Name *four* kinds of *ablatives*.

## 76.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
rēgnum	-ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>kingdom</i> or <i>royal power</i>
facile, <i>adv.</i>		<i>easily</i>
castellum	-ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>redoubt</i>
armātus	-a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>armed</i>
proximus	-a, -um, “	<i>next</i>
parātus	-a, -um, “	<i>ready</i>
incūsō	-āre, -āvī, -ātum	<i>to blame</i>
sustentō	-āre, -āvī, -ātum	<i>to hold out</i>
impetrō	-āre, -āvī, -ātum	<i>to obtain</i>

## 77. Relation of words and clauses.

Lēgātī Belgārum ad Galbae	<i>Ambassadors of the Belgians</i>
castra veniunt, ut cum	<i>come to Galba's camp to es-</i>
populō Rōmānō amīcitiam	<i>tablish* friendship with the</i>
cōnfirmēt,	<i>Roman people</i>

Lēgātī = subject of the principal verb *veniunt* (indicative mood).

Belgārum = genitive plural modifying *lēgātī*.

{ ad = preposition governing the noun *castra* in the accusative.  
 { Galbae = genitive singular limiting *castra*.  
 { castra = object of *ad*: this phrase limits the principal verb *veniunt*—*a verb of motion*.

*veniunt* = present indicative active, 3d plural, *not of the first conjugation*.

---

\* To establish, etc., subordinate clause denoting *purpose* (53).

**ut** = conjunction going with **cōnfirment**: this entire clause denotes *purpose* and is subordinate to **veniunt**.

{ **cum** = preposition governing the noun **populō** in the *ablative*.

{ **populō** = object of **cum**: this phrase limits the verb **cōnfirment**.

{ **Rōmānō** = adjective modifying **populō** in the *ablative singular masculine*.

**amicitiā** = direct object of **cōnfirment**.

**cōnfirment** = present subjunctive active, 3d plural; subjunctive of *purpose* introduced by **ut**.

## 78. REVIEW VOCABULARY.

## LESSONS I—XV.

1. *trāns* (prep. with the *acc.*), *across*
2. *contrā* (prep. with the *acc.*), *against*
3. *auxilium*, *auxilī* (neut.), *aid* or *help*
4. *iuvō*, *iuvāre*, *iūvī*, *iūtum*, *to aid*
5. *adiuvō*, *adiuvāre*, *adiūvī*, *adiūtum*, *to aid*
6. *sum*, *esse*, *fuī*, [no supine], *be* or *am*
7. *lēgātus*, *lēgātī* (mas.), *ambassador*
8. *et* (conj.), *and*
9. *armātus*, *armāta*, *armātum* (adj.), *armed*
10. *arma*, *armōrum* (neut.), *arms*
11. *oppugnō*, *oppugnāre*, *oppugnāvī*, *oppugnātum*, *attack*
12. *vītō*, *vītāre*, *vītāvī*, *vītātum*, *avoid*
13. *impedimenta*, *impedimentōrum* (neut.), *baggage*
14. *rīpa*, *rīpae* (fem.), *bank*
15. *proelium*, *proelī* (neut.), *battle*
16. *quod* (conj.), *because*
17. *initium*, *initī* (neut.), *beginning*
18. *Belgae*, *Belgārum* (mas.), *Belgians*
19. *amātus*, *amāta*, *amātum* (adj.), *beloved*
20. *incūsō*, *incūsāre*, *incūsāvī*, *incūsātum*, *blame*
21. *puer*, *puerī* (mas.), *boy*
22. *lātus*, *lāta*, *lātum* (adj.), *broad* or *wide*
23. *aedificō*, *aedificāre*, *aedificāvī*, *aedificātum*, *build*
24. *aedificium*, *aedificī* (neut.), *building*
25. *sed* (conj.), *but*
26. *appellō*, *appellāre*, *appellāvī*, *appellātum*, *call*
27. *castra*, *castrōrum* (neut.), *camp*
28. *portō*, *portāre*, *portāvī*, *portātum*, *carry*
29. *causa*, *causae* (fem.), *cause*
30. *liberī*, *liberōrum* (mas.), *children*
31. *imperium*, *imperī* (neut.), *command*

32. imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum, *to command*
33. cēlō, cēlāre, cēlāvī, cēlātum, *conceal*
34. coniūrō, coniūrāre, coniūrāvī, coniūrātum, *conspire*
35. frūmentum, frūmentī (neut.), *corn*
36. periculum, periculī (neut.), *danger*
37. praesidium, praesidiī (neut.), *defence*
38. mora, morae (fem.), *delay*
39. mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātum, *direct or instruct*
40. fossa, fossae (fem.), *ditch*
41. facile (adv.), *easily*
42. cōfirmō, cōfirmāre, cōfirmāvī, cōfirmātum, *establish*
43. extrēmus, extrēma, extrēmum (adj.), *farthest*
44. ager, agrī (mas.), *field*
45. ferus, fera, ferum (adj.), *fierce*
46. pūgna, pūgnae (fem.), *fight*
47. pūgnō, pūgnāre, pūgnāvī, pūgnātum, *to fight*
48. prīmus, prīma, prīmum (adj.), *first*
49. fuga, fugae (fem.), *flight*
50. causā (stands after the gen.), *for the sake of*
51. cōpia, cōpiarum (fem.), *forces*
52. silva, silvae (fem.), *forest*
53. integer, integra, integrum (adj.), *fresh*
54. amīcus, amīcī (mas.), *friend*
55. amīcitia, amīcitiae (fem.), *friendship*
56. Galba, Galbae (mas.), *Galba*
57. porta, portae (fem.), *gate*
58. Gallia, Galliae (fem.), *Gaul (country)*
59. Gallus, Gallī (mas.), *Gaul (citizen)*
60. praefectus, praefectī (mas.), *general*
61. Germānī, Germānōrum (mas.), *Germans*
62. dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give*
63. māgnus, māgna, māgnum, (adj.), *great or large*
64. mātūrō, mātūrāre, mātūrāvī, mātūrātum, *hasten*
65. galea, galeae (fem.), *helmet*
66. hīc (adv.), *here*
67. dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātum, *hesitate*

68. *altus, alta, altum* (adj.), *high, tall, or deep*
69. *sustentō, sustentāre, sustentāvī, sustentātum*, *hold out*
70. *equus, equī* (mas.), *horse*
71. *in* (prep. with the *abl.*), *in*; (with the *acc.*) *into*
72. *prō* (prep. with the *abl.*), *in front of*
73. *Ītalia, Ītaliae* (fem.), *Italy*
74. *pīlum, pīlī* (neut.), *javelin*
75. *rēgnum, rēgnī* (neut.), *kingdom or power*
76. *vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātum*, *lay waste*
77. *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum*, *love*
78. *vir, virī* (mas.), *man*
79. *multus, multa, multum* (adj.), *much or many*
80. *nūntius, nūntī* (mas.), *message or messenger*
81. *animus, animī* (mas.), *mind*
82. *fīnitimī, fīnitimōrum* (mas.), *neighbours*
83. *novus, nova, novum* (adj.), *new*
84. *proximus, proxima, proximum* (adj.), *next*
85. *nōn* (adv.), *not*
86. *numerus, numerī* (mas.), *number*
87. *impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātum*, *obtain*
88. *propter* (prep. with the *acc.*), *on account of*
89. *noster, nostra, nostrum* (adj.), *our*
90. *nostrī, nostrōrum* (mas.), *our men*
91. *ē* or *ex* (prep. with the *abl.*), *out of*
92. *superō, superāre, superāvī, superātum*, *overcome*
93. *populus, populī* (mas.), *people*
94. *locus, locī* (mas.), *place*
95. *conlocō conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātum*, *to place*
96. *locus, locōrum* (neut.), *places*
97. *cōnsilium, cōnsilī* (neut.), *plan*
98. *parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum*, *prepare*
99. *prōvincia, prōvinciae* (fem.), *province*
100. *vāllum, vāllī* (neut.), *rampart*
101. *parātus, parāta, parātum* (adj.), *ready*
102. *castellum, castellī* (neut.), *redoubt*
103. *subsidium, subsidī* (neut.), *relief*

104. Rēmī, Rēmōrum (mas.), *Remi*
105. reliquus, reliqua, reliquum (adj.), *remaining*
106. redintegrō, redintegrāre, redintegrāvī, redintegrātum, *renew*
107. Rhēnus, Rhēnī (mas.), *Rhine*
108. Rōmānus, Rōmānī (mas.), *Roman*
109. Rōmānus, Rōmāna, Rōmānum (adj.), *Roman*
110. fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātum, *rout*
111. prōfligō, prōfligāre, prōfligāvī, prōfligātum, *rout*
112. secundus, secunda, secundum (adj.), *second*
113. occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātum, *seize*
114. servus, servī (mas.), *servant or slave*
115. scūtum, scūtī (neut.), *shield*
116. sīgnum, sīgnī (neut.), *signal*
117. ut (conj.), *so that*
118. expūgnō, expūgnāre, expūgnāvī, expūgnātum, *storm*
119. idōneus, idōnea, idōneum (adj.), *suitable*
120. convocō, convocāre, convocāvī, convocātum, *summon*
121. gladius, gladiī (mas.), *sword*
122. per (prep. with the acc.), *through*
123. ad (prep. with the acc.), *to, towards*
124. oppidum, oppidī (neut.), *town*
125. oppidānī, oppidānōrum (mas.), *townsmen*
126. tuba, tubae (fem.), *trumpet*
127. vīcus, vīcī (mas.), *village*
128. mūrus, mūrī (mas.), *wall*
129. tēlum, tēlī (neut.), *weapon*
130. hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī, hiemātum, *winter*
131. hiberna, hibernōrum (neut.), *winter-quarters*
132. cum (prep. with the abl.), *with*
133. sine (prep. with the abl.), *without*

## LESSON XVI.

## RELATIVE PRONOUN.

79. Quī, quae, quod, *who, which, what, or that.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i> quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i> cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i> quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

## 80. English meanings of the Latin relative pronoun.

NOTE.—The *plural* forms of the *Latin* relative pronoun have the *same English meanings* as the *singular* forms.

The word *that* may be substituted for *who* or *which* in the nominative and accusative cases.

## SINGULAR AND PLURAL.

	Mas. and Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>who or which</i>	<i>which</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>whose, of whom, of which</i>	<i>whose, of which</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>to or for whom, to or for which</i>	<i>to or for which</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>whom or which</i>	<i>which</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>from, with, by, in, or on whom or which</i>	<i>from, with, by, in, or on which</i>

## 81. VOCABULARY.

Review words 1–66 in ‘review vocabulary’ (78).

## 82. Commit to memory:

- |                          |                                   |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Lēgātus quī properat, | <i>The ambassador who hastens</i> |
| 2. Gallī quī hiemant,    | <i>The Gauls who winter</i>       |

- |                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| 3. Cōpiae quae parant,    | <i>The forces which prepare</i>         |
| 4. Tuba quae sīgnum dat,  | <i>The trumpet which gives a signal</i> |
| 5. Praesidia quae cēlant, | <i>The defences which conceal</i>       |
| 6. Pīlum quod superat,    | <i>The javelin which overcomes</i>      |

**83. Agreement of the relative.**—The relative *must* agree with its antecedent in *number* and *gender*; the case of the relative is determined *by its function in its own clause*, which function is always independent of that of its antecedent.

## LESSON XVII.

### RELATIVE PRONOUN, CONTINUED.

**84. *Castra* and the relative pronoun.**—As *castra* is *plural* in form and *singular* in meaning and also *neuter*, a relative pronoun referring to *castra* as its antecedent must be *neuter* and *plural*, as in example (1).

When *castra* becomes the *subject* of a verb, the latter takes a *plural form* in Latin, although it is *singular* in English, as in example (2).

### 85. Examples of *castra*, etc.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Caesar castra quae impedi-<br>menta cēlant expūgnat, | <i>Caesar storms the camp which<br/>conceals the baggage</i> |
| 2. Castra Galbae equōs cēlā-<br>bant,                   | <i>The camp concealed Galba's<br/>horses</i>                 |

### 86.

### VOCABULARY.

Review words 67–133 in ‘review vocabulary’ (78).

**87.** Conjugate and give meanings of *fugō* and *mandō* in the *imperative* (70); also decline their *gerunds* and give their *present participles* and *present infinitives* (72, 73).

88. What is the *present stem* of *cōfirmō*?

*How many* forms are derived from this stem?

Give full synopsis of these *with meanings*.

How is *purpose* expressed in Latin?

Explain fully the agreement of the *relative quae* in Latin sentence (3) below.

89.

#### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Lēgātus quī in Galliā hiemat cum Belgīs proelium redintegrābit. 2. Galba pīlis multīs aedificia Germānōrum quī contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrant expūgnat. 3. Lēgātī nostrī (*adj.*) in hībernīs in prōvinciā cōpiās quae castella nova aedificant conlocābant. 4. Germānī quī in castra cōpiās convocat, ut pūgnam vītent, proelium nōn redintegrābunt sed ē castrīs properābunt.

II.—1. With the aid of the Remi Galba overcomes the remaining Belgians who are laying waste the fields of the Romans. 2. Slaves were carrying many weapons into the camp which concealed the baggage of the Roman ambassador. 3. Our men overcome in many battles the forces which are building defences in Gaul. 4. The fierce Belgians will establish friendship with their neighbours and storm the town which gives aid to the Roman forces.

### LESSON XVIII.

#### RELATIVE PRONOUN, CONTINUED.

#### 90. Examples of the relative as the object:

1. Oppidum quod Galba aedificat, *The town which Galba builds*
2. Agrī quōs Germānī vāstant, *The fields which the Germans lay waste*

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 3. Castra quae Rēmī in Galliā conlocant,      | <i>The camp which the Remi place in Gaul</i>         |
| 4. Cōpiae quās Caesar in prōvinciam convocat, | <i>Forces which Caesar summons into the province</i> |
| 5. Tuba quam Galba servō dat,                 | <i>The trumpet which Galba gives to (his) slave</i>  |
| 6. Lēgātus quem oppidānī incūsant,            | <i>The ambassador whom the townsmen blame</i>        |

## 91.

## VOCABULARY.

Learn the *principal parts* and *meanings* of verbs 1-10 (448).

92. How words are joined together in a sentence.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Belgae contrā integrās cōpiās quās Caesar in castra convocat nōn sustentābunt, | <i>The Belgians will not hold out against the fresh forces which Caesar is summoning into camp</i> |
|--|--|

**Belgae:** subject of **sustentābunt**, which is the *principal verb* in the sentence and is placed *at the end*. **contrā integrās cōpiās:** adverbial phrase, modifies **sustentābunt**. **nōn:** adverb limiting **sustentābunt**. **quās:** begins the relative clause and is the *direct object* of **convocat**. **Caesar:** subject of **convocat**. **in castra:** adverbial phrase limiting the *next verb*, **convocat**.

## 93.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Cōpiae quās Galba in hibernīs conlocat Belgārum praesidia nōn oppūgnābunt. 2. Nostri cum Rēmīs coniūrando castra quae Germānī in Galliā conlocābant oppūgnāre parābant. 3. Lēgātī Galbae in Galliam properāre

nōn dubitant, ut oppida quae amīcī Germānōrum imperī causā aedificant oppūgnent. 4. Caesar cōpiīs amātīs vicōs quōs nostrī in Galliā facile expūgnābant (*stormed*) dabit.

II.—1. The slaves whom Galba conceals in a suitable place will carry relief to the Remi. 2. Caesar was giving swords and javelins to the Remi, whom he calls friends, so that they might attack the large camp which the Germans were preparing to place in Gaul. 3. O Romans! storm the redoubt which the Belgians are preparing. 4. Galba's forces will attack the wall which the Germans are building.

## LESSON XIX.

IRREGULAR VERB SUM, I AM. RELATIVE PRONOUN, CONTINUED.

**94. Present indicative, *sum, I am.* Imperfect indicative, *eram, I was.* Future indicative, *erō, I shall be.***

<i>I am.</i>		<i>I was.</i>		<i>I shall be.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>sum, I am</i>	<i>sumus, we are</i>	<i>eram</i>	<i>erāmus</i>	<i>erō</i>	<i>erimus</i>
2. <i>es, you are</i>	<i>estis, you are</i>	<i>erās</i>	<i>erātis</i>	<i>eris</i>	<i>eritis</i>
3. <i>est, he is</i>	<i>sunt, they are</i>	<i>erat</i>	<i>erant,</i>	<i>erit</i>	<i>erunt</i>

**95. Use of *sum*—Predicate nominative.**—Finite forms of *sum* are followed by a *noun* or an *adjective* in the nominative case; such a nominative is called a *predicate nominative*. If the predicate nominative is an *adjective*, it takes the *gender* and *number* of the *subject* to which it belongs. The case with *esse* will be explained later.

### 97. Examples of the predicate nominative :

- |                        |                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Mūrus altus est,    | <i>The wall is high</i>         |
| 2. Porta lāta est,     | <i>The gate is wide</i>         |
| 3. Oppidum māgnū erat, | <i>The town was large</i>       |
| 4. Cōpiaē ferae erant, | <i>The forces were fierce</i>   |
| 5. Belgae ferī erant,  | <i>The Belgians were fierce</i> |
| 6. Castra māgna erunt, | <i>The camp will be large</i>   |

In the above sentences the *predicate adjective* is in the *nominative*, having the *number* and *gender* of the subject to which it belongs. In (2) *lāta* is *nominative singular feminine*, to agree with *porta*. In (6) *castra* is *plural*, hence *erunt* is *plural* and *māgna* is *nominative plural neuter*, agreeing with *castra*.

### 98. The pronoun in the genitive (possessive) case.

#### EXAMPLES.

- |                              |                                      |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Germānī quōrum castra     | <i>The Germans whose camp Galba</i>  |
| Galba occupābit,             | <i>will seize</i>                    |
| 2. Cōpiaē quārum tēla nova   | <i>The forces whose weapons are</i>  |
| sunt,                        | <i>new</i>                           |
| 3. Oppidum cūius mūrī altī   | <i>The town whose walls are tall</i> |
| sunt,                        |                                      |
| 4. Lēgātus Rōmānus cūius cō- | <i>The Roman ambassador whose</i>    |
| piāe Gallōs superābant,      | <i>forces overcame the Gauls</i>     |

### 99.

#### EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Silvae in Galliā multae sunt (there are many, etc.).*  
 2. *Mūrus oppidī altus est.* 3. *Sumus amīcī populī Rōmānī.*  
 4. *Nostri tēlis et armīs vicum cūius mūrī nōn māgnī sunt expūgnābunt.* 5. *Caesar lēgātō cūius cōpiaē ad Belgās auxilium nōn portābant pīla multa dabat.* 6. *Nostri frūmentō Belgās quōrum oppida in prōvinciā sunt iuvābant (were aiding).*

II.—1. *The walls are high.* 2. *Galba's camp is new.*  
 3. *The Roman forces are fresh.* 4. *Caesar will give help to the Remi whose fields are in farthest Gaul.* 5. *Our friends will carry corn into the town whose walls the fierce Belgians*

are preparing to storm. 6. The forces whose ambassadors Galba summons out of winter-quarters will renew the battle, so that they may rout the Germans.

## LESSON XX.

### PORTŌ, CONTINUED. PERFECT STEM.

**100.** Perfect indicative of *portō*, *I carried, have carried, did carry.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. portāvī	1. portāvimus
2. portāvistī	2. portāvistis
3. portāvit	3. portāvērunt (ēre)

### Personal endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-ī	-imus
-istī	-istis
-it	-ērunt (ēre)

**101.** Portāv, the stem of this tense, called the *perfect stem*, is found by dropping *final ī* from the first person singular of the *perfect indicative*.

Conjugate, with meanings, vitō, parō, and occupō in the *perfect indicative*.

**102.** Meanings of the perfect and imperfect indicative.—The *perfect* tense has *two* uses, denoting (1) an action completed just now (*Definite perfect*), or (2) one completed at some point of *past time* (*Indefinite* or *Historical perfect*): as, (*definite perfect*) pater pervēnit, *father has (already) arrived*; (*indefinite perfect*) Caesar omnem Galliam vicit, *Caesar conquered all Gaul*.

The *imperfect* tense represents an action as *continued* in

the *past*. The action may be (1) *continuous* in the past; as, *oppidānī oppidum aedificābant*, *the townsmen were building a town*;—(2) *customary* or *usual* action; as, *Germānī Rhēnum trānsībant*, *the Germans used to cross (kept crossing) the Rhine*;—(3) *attempted* action (*Conative imperfect*); as, *hostēs pontem incendēbant*, *the enemy tried to burn the bridge*.

## 103.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 21–30 (448).

104. Use of *quod*,<sup>1</sup> *because*.—*Quod* introduces a subordinate clause to show ‘reason why,’ and such a clause is called a *causal clause*.

Causal clauses do not usually stand last.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Quod nostrī ad pūgnandum</i><br>( <i>gerund</i> ) <i>parātī sunt</i> , <i>Galba</i><br><i>sīgnum dat</i> , | <i>Galba gives the signal, because</i><br><i>our men are ready for fight-</i><br><i>ing</i>     |
| 2. <i>Quod Belgae coniūrāvērunt</i> ,<br><i>Galba oppida oppūgnāre</i><br><i>parāvit</i> ,                       | <i>Because the Belgians conspired,</i><br><i>Galba prepared to attack their</i><br><i>towns</i> |

In (1) above *quod* introduces *sunt parātī*, giving the *cause of* and modifying the *principal verb*, *dat*. So in (2) *quod . . . coniūrāvērunt* limits *parāvit*, stating the *reason* for the action.

## 105.

## EXERCISES.

- I.—1. *Servī fugae causā lēgātīs equōs parāvērunt*.  
2. *Quod Germānī quōs fugāvit ex Galliā mātūrābant*,  
*Caesar in hībernīs cōpiās conlocāvit*. 3. *Caesar lēgātōs*  
*incūsābat, quod contrā Belgās proeliō nōn sustentāvērunt*  
(*did not hold out*) *sed in castra properāvērunt*. 4.  
*Belgārum cōpiae quās nostrī initiō proelī superāvērunt*

---

<sup>1</sup> *Quod, quia, quoniam*, discussed in (276).

equōs parābant (*were making ready*), ut trāns Rhēnum properārent. 5. Galba, lēgātus Rōmānōrum, quod Germānī multōs populī Rōmānī agrōs vāstābant, proelium redintegrāre parāvit.

II.—1. The Romans in Galba's camp routed the remaining Belgians with the forces<sup>1</sup> which the Remi gave (*dedē-runt*) to the Roman people. 2. The ambassador to whom Caesar gave fresh forces will easily storm the redoubt of the Belgians. 3. The townsmen to whom Caesar gives corn and weapons are friends of the Roman people. 4. The Germans will hasten out of the village, in which they are wintering, to lay waste the fields of the Belgians.

## LESSON XXI.

### PORTŌ AND SUM, CONTINUED.

**106. Pluperfect indicative of *portō*. Future perfect indicative.**

<i>had carried.</i>	<i>shall have carried.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. portāveram	portāverō
2. portāverās	portāveris
3. portāverat	portāverit
PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. portāverāmus	portāverimus
2. portāverātis	portāveritis
3. portāverant	portāverint

**107.** These two tenses *complete* the indicative mood of *portō* in the active voice. See indicative mood, active, (*six tenses*), of *amō* (474). Conjugate the entire indicative mood of *sustentō*, *convocō*, and *dō*. Distinguish the indicative tenses with respect to *stems*.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of means (43 b) 'ablative without *cum*.'

108. Present subjunctive of *sum*. Imperfect subjunctive.

<i>may be.</i>		<i>might be.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>sim</i>	<i>sīmus</i>	<i>essem</i>	<i>essēmus</i>
2. <i>sīs</i>	<i>sītis</i>	<i>essēs</i>	<i>essētis</i>
3. <i>sit</i>	<i>sint</i>	<i>esset</i>	<i>essent</i>

## 109.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 31–40 (448).

110. Subordinate clauses.—Three kinds of *subordinate clauses* have thus far been used, viz.: the *ut clause*, the *relative*, and the *quod clause*. What can be said of the *ut clause*? of the agreement and position of the *relative*? of the meaning of the *quod clause*?

## 111.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Germānī prō oppidī mūrīs vallum altum conlocandō praesidia parāverant. 2. Quod perīcula proelī māgna sunt, Caesar in silvīs altīs pūgnam nōn redintegrābit. 3. Lēgātus Belgārum nostrīs equōs et arma dedit, ut ad Rēmōs, amīcōs, subsidium portārent. 4. Germānī propter māgnum nostrōrum numerum vīcum novum in quem liberōs et impedīmenta portāre parābant aedificāvērunt. 5. Lēgātus Rōmānōrum oppidānōs, quod amīcīs populī Rōmānī subsidium nōn dederant, incūsābat.

II.—1. Because the Germans gave aid to the Belgians who were not friends of the Roman people, Caesar<sup>1</sup> hastened<sup>2</sup> to attack with many forces the redoubt which they had placed in front of their camp. 2. With the help<sup>3</sup> of the slaves whom Galba had summoned into Gaul, our forces<sup>1</sup> built<sup>2</sup> a large camp in which they placed weapons for fighting.

<sup>1</sup> Place *first* in sentence.<sup>2</sup> *properāvit*. See vocabulary, *proper*.<sup>3</sup> Ablative of means (43 b) ‘ablative without *cum*.’

## LESSON XXII.

## THIRD DECLENSION. SUM, CONTINUED.

## 112. Miles, soldier, mas.

## Case-endings.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	mīles	mīlitēs	—	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	mīlitis	mīlitum	-is	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	mīlitī	mīlitibus	-ī	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	mīlitem	mīlitēs	-em	-ēs
<i>Voc.</i>	mīles	mīlitēs	—	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	mīlite	mīlitibus	-e	-ibus

113. The stem<sup>1</sup> of mīles may be found by dropping is from the *genitive singular*: mīlitis, stem mīlit.

The *nominative* and *vocative* singular are alike, differing somewhat from the *stem*; the remaining cases of the *singular* and *all* the cases of the *plural* are formed by annexing the *case-endings* to the *stem*. The *nominative*, *accusative*, and *vocative plural* end in ēs, the *dative* and *ablative plural* in ibus.

## 114.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 41-46 (448).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
pedes	peditis, mas.	footman, plural infantry
eques	equitis, mas.	horseman, plural cavalry
obses	obsidis, mas.	hostage
bellum	-ī, neut.	war
Sēquanī	-ōrum, mas.	the Sequani
inimīcus	-a -um, adj.	unfriendly
bonus	-a -um, adj.	good
armō	(give principal parts)	to arm
dēcertō	“ “ “	to contend
exercitō	“ “ “	to train

Decline pedes, eques, and obses.

<sup>1</sup> For the classification of stems see Third Declension (455).

115. Notice carefully the *agreement* of *adjective* and *noun* in the following:

1. *servī bonī*, of a good slave
2. *mīlitis bonī*, of a good soldier

Notice that the adjective does not necessarily agree with the noun in *ending*, but only in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

### 116. Imperative of *sum*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. [wanting]	1. [wanting]
2. { es, be thou estō, thou shalt be	2. { este, be ye estōte, ye shall be
3. estō, he shall be	3. suntō, they shall be

### Present infinitive.

*esse*, to be.

This completes the *present system* of tenses of the verb *sum*.

### 117. Synopsis of *sum* (present stem *es*):

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	<i>sum</i>
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	<i>eram</i>
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	<i>erō</i>
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	<i>sim</i>
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	<i>essem</i>
6. <i>Imperative</i>	<i>es</i>
7. <i>Present participle</i>	[lacking]
8. <i>Present infinitive</i>	<i>esse</i>
9. <i>Gerund</i>	[lacking]

### 118.

#### EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Galbae milites ad pugnandum parati sunt.*  
 2. *Legatus noster militibus Romanis galeas quas Germani in castris praesidi causam celaverant dedit.* 3. *Muri quos Galli praesidi causam pro oppidis aedificaverunt alti et lati erant.* 4. *Legati nostri Gallos incusaverunt et oppida*

quae sine praesidiō erant oppūgnāvērunt, quod populō Rōmānō liberōs obsidēs<sup>1</sup> nōn dederant.

II.—1. Caesar will have given a new shield to the good soldier. 2. Galba was summoning the fresh infantry out of camp. 3. Caesar was blaming the ambassador to whom he had given the signal, because he hesitated to renew the battle with<sup>2</sup> the cavalry of the Sequani. 4. The Germans gave their children to Galba as hostages, so that they might establish friendship with<sup>2</sup> the Roman people.

## LESSON XXIII.

### FIRST CONJUGATION AND THIRD DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

#### 119. Perfect subjunctive of *portō*. Pluperfect subjunctive.

*may have carried.*

##### SINGULAR.

1. portāverim

2. portāveris

3. portāverit

##### PLURAL.

1. portāverimus

2. portāveritis

3. portāverint

*might have carried.*

##### SINGULAR.

portāvissem

portāvissēs

portāvisset

##### PLURAL.

portāvissēmus

portāvissētis

portāvissent

#### Perfect infinitive.

portāvisse, *to have carried*

This completes the *perfect system of tenses* formed upon the perfect stem *portāv*.

<sup>1</sup> Appositive, as *hostages* (53).

<sup>2</sup> Use prep. *cum*. Why? (43 a.)

### 120. Synopsis of the perfect system of *portō* (*six tenses*):

1. <i>Perfect indicative</i>	portāvī
2. <i>Pluperfect indicative</i>	portāveram
3. <i>Future perfect indicative</i>	portāverō
4. <i>Perfect subjunctive</i>	portāverim
5. <i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>	portāvissem
6. <i>Perfect infinitive</i>	portāvisse

### 121.

#### VOCABULARY.

#### Verbs 47-52 (448).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
imperātum	-ī, <i>neut.</i>	order or command
levitās	levitātis, <i>fem.</i>	fickleness
facultās	-tātis, “	opportunity
aestās	-tātis, “	summer
potestās	-tātis, “	power
auctōritās	-tātis, “	influence
flūmen	flūminis, <i>neut.</i>	river
homō	hominis, <i>mas.</i>	man
rūmor	rūmōris, <i>mas.</i>	report
celeritas	-tātis, <i>fem.</i>	swiftness, speed

### 122. Declension of nouns.

*Civitās*, *state*, *fem.*    *Agmen*, *line (of march)*, *neut.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	civitās	civitatēs	agmen	agmina
<i>Gen.</i>	civitātis	civitātum	agminis	agminum
<i>Dat.</i>	civitātī	civitātibus	agminī	agminibus
<i>Acc.</i>	civitātem	civitātēs	agmen	agmina
<i>Voc.</i>	civitās	civitātēs	agmen	agmina
<i>Abl.</i>	civitāte	civitātibus	agmine	agminibus

Nouns in *ās*, *gen. ātis*, are *feminine*. Nouns in *men*, *gen. minis*, are *neuter*.

*Lapis*, *stone*, *mas.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	lapis	lapidēs	<i>Acc.</i> lapidem	lapidēs
<i>Gen.</i>	lapis	lapidum	<i>Voc.</i> lapis	lapidēs
<i>Dat.</i>	lapidī	lapidibus	<i>Abl.</i> lapide	lapidibus

Nouns in *is*, *gen. idis*, and *es*, *gen. itis* or *idis*, are *masculine*.

Combined declension of **miles ferus** (**miles**, third-declension noun; **ferus**, an adjective with the second-declension endings):

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>miles ferus</b>	<b>militēs ferī</b>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>militis ferī</b>	<b>militum ferōrum</b>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>militī ferō</b>	<b>militibus ferīs</b>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>militem ferum</b>	<b>militēs ferōs</b>	
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>miles fere</b>	<b>militēs ferī</b>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>militē ferō</b>	<b>militibus ferīs</b>	

## 123.

## EXERCISE.

1. Lēgātus cui Caesar proelium redintegrandī signum dat Germānōrum peditēs facile fugābit. 2. Noster lēgātus in Galliam cum peditibus integrīs quōs in hibernīs in prōvinciā Rōmānā conlocāverat properāvit et obsidēs multōs postulāvit. 3. Belgae lēgātō nostrō liberōs obsidēs dabant, ut in potestāte populī Rōmānī essent. 4. Caesar multīs cum cīvitatibus quae in armīs nōn erant et contrā populum Rōmānum nōn coniūrāverant amicitiam cōfirmāvit. 5. Quod Germānī obsidēs quōs postulāverat nōn dedērunt,<sup>1</sup> Caesar oppida trāns flūmen Rhēnum oppūgnāvit.

## LESSON XXIV.

## THIRD DECLENSION. SUM, CONTINUED.

124. *Pater, father, mas.**Rūmor, report, mas.*

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Nom.</i>	<b>pater</b>	<b>patrēs</b>		<b>rūmor</b>	<b>rūmorēs</b>		
<i>Gen.</i>	<b>patris</b>	<b>patrum</b>		<b>rūmoris</b>	<b>rūmorum</b>		
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>patrī</b>	<b>patribus</b>		<b>rūmorī</b>	<b>rūmoribus</b>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>patrem</b>	<b>patrēs</b>		<b>rūmorem</b>	<b>rūmorēs</b>		
<i>Voc.</i>	<b>pater</b>	<b>patrēs</b>		<b>rūmor</b>	<b>rūmorēs</b>		
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>patre</b>	<b>patribus</b>		<b>rūmore</b>	<b>rūmoribus</b>		

Nouns in **er** and **or** are *masculine*.

<sup>1</sup> Would not give.

**Latus**, *side or flank*, neut.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	latus	latera
<i>Gen.</i>	lateris	laterum
<i>Dat.</i>	laterī	lateribus
<i>Acc.</i>	latus	latera
<i>Voc.</i>	latus	latera
<i>Abl.</i>	latere	lateribus

**Corpus**, *body*, neut.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
	corpus	corpora
<i>Gen.</i>	corporis	corporum
<i>Dat.</i>	corporī	corporibus
<i>Acc.</i>	corpus	corpora
<i>Voc.</i>	corpus	corpora
<i>Abl.</i>	corpore	corporibus

Nouns in **us**, gen. **eris** or **oris**, are *neuter*.

**Legiō**, *legion*, fem.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	legiō	legiōnēs
<i>Gen.</i>	legiōnis	legiōnum
<i>Dat.</i>	legiōnī	legiōnibus
<i>Acc.</i>	legiōnem	legiōnēs
<i>Voc.</i>	legiō	legiōnēs
<i>Abl.</i>	legiōne	legiōnibus

Nouns in **ō** are *masculine*, save those in **dō**, **gō**, and **iō**, which are *feminine*.

## 125.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 53-66 (448).

**126. Dative with adjectives.** — Adjectives of *likeness*, *fitness*, *nearness*, and the like with their opposites take the *dative*; as,

**Belgae sunt proximī Germānīs**, *The Belgians are next to the Germans*

**127. Sum in the perfect tenses.** — Principal parts: **sum**, **esse**, **fuī**, *no supine*. Upon the *perfect stem fu* are formed *six tenses*. For synopsis of the *present system*, see (117).

Synopsis of the *perfect system* of **sum** (*stem fu*), see (484):

<i>Perfect indicative</i>	<b>fuī</b> , <i>I have been—was</i>
<i>Pluperfect indicative</i>	<b>fueram</b>
<i>Future perfect indicative</i>	<b>fuerō</b>
<i>Perfect subjunctive</i>	<b>fuerim</b>
<i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>	<b>fuissem</b>
<i>Perfect infinitive</i>	<b>fuisse</b>

**128. Use of *cum* + subjunctive.**—*Cum*,<sup>1</sup> *when*, is followed by a verb in the *imperfect* or *pluperfect subjunctive*. *Cum* + *imperfect subjunctive* means ‘*when*’ in the sense of *while*, denoting action *unfinished*; *cum* + *pluperfect subjunctive* means ‘*when*’ in the sense of *after*, denoting action *finished*. If the verb depending on *cum* is in the *imperfect subjunctive*, then *cum* = *while* (*when*), not *with*, and the verb is translated *as if it were imperfect indicative*; as, *cum Caesar in Galliā esset, while Caesar was in Gaul*.

**129.****EXERCISES.**

I.—1. *Cum Caesar equitēs integrōs expectāret, peditēs oppidum cuius mūrī nōn altī fuērunt expūgnāverunt.* 2. *Lēgātī tubīs militibus integrīs sīgnum dedērunt et ē castrīs celeritāte magnā mātūrāverunt, ut Germānōrum hiberna quae in Galliā erant occupārent.* 3. *Cum reliquae cīvitatēs quae Galbae amīcae<sup>2</sup> erant ad castra Rōmāna auxilium portārent, Caesar trāns Rhēnum cum peditibus et equitibus mātūrāvit et Germānōrum castella, quod populō Rōmānō obsidēs novōs nōn dederant, oppūgnāvit.* 4. *Caesar auctōritātem amplificandī causā cum cīvitatibus multīs in Galliā amīcitiam cōfīrmāvit.*

II.—1. The state in which Caesar placed his camp will give much corn to the Roman infantry. 2. While our soldiers were preparing to attack the walls of the town, the townsmen hastened out of the town, so that they might avoid (to avoid) the dangers of battle. 3. While the Sequani were awaiting the forces of the neighbouring Belgians, the Roman legions hastened with great swiftness through the province and seized the camp which the Sequani had prepared for the sake of defence.

<sup>1</sup> For treatment of *historical cum* see (203).

<sup>2</sup> Adjective, *friendly*.

## LESSON XXV.

THIRD DECLENSION AND FIRST CONJUGATION,  
CONTINUED.130. *Collis, hill, mas.**Rēx, king, mas.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>collis</i>	<i>collēs</i>	<i>rēx</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>collis</i>	<i>collium</i>	<i>rēgis</i>	<i>rēgum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>collī</i>	<i>collibus</i>	<i>rēgī</i>	<i>rēgibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>collem</i>	<i>collēs -īs</i>	<i>rēgem</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>collis</i>	<i>collēs</i>	<i>rēx</i>	<i>rēgēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>colle</i>	<i>collibus</i>	<i>rēge</i>	<i>rēgibus</i>

*Flūmen lātum, a wide river, neut.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>flūmen lātum</i>	<i>flūmina lāta</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>flūminis lātī</i>	<i>flūminum lātōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>flūminī lātō</i>	<i>flūminibus lātīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>flūmen lātum</i>	<i>flūmina lāta</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>flūmen lātum</i>	<i>flūmina lāta</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>flūmine lātō</i>	<i>flūminibus lātīs</i>

131. Nouns ending in *es* and *is* *not* increasing the number of syllables in the *genitive* are called “*vowel-stems in i*” (*collis, collis, stem colli; nubes, nubis, stem nubi*). They have *ium* in the *genitive plural* and *ēs* or *is* in the *accusative plural*. Some have the *ablative* in *ī* (457). They are mostly *masculine*, sometimes *feminine*. The stem of nouns in *es* or *is* *increasing* the number of syllables in the *genitive* is found by dropping *is* from the *genitive*: *lapis, lapidis, stem lapid; miles, militis, stem milit*.

---

<sup>1</sup> For summary of the *genitive plural* in *um* and *ium* see (460).

132.

VOCABULARY.

Verbs 67-80 (448).

**133. Supine system of *portō*.**—The *supine stem*, upon which *four* forms are based, is found by dropping *um* from the first supine: *portātum*, supine stem *portāt*.

The following, formed upon the stem *portāt*, complete the active voice of *portō*:

1. *First supine*      *portātum*, joined to verbs,      *to carry*
2. *Second supine*    *portātū*,      “      “      adjectives,      *to carry*
3. *Future participle* *portātūrus, -a, -um*, being about to carry
4. *Future infinitive* *portātūrum, -am, -um esse*, to be about to carry

Write a complete synopsis of *superō* in the active voice in order of stems, giving name of tense and meaning, with nine forms upon *superā* (75), six upon *superāv* (120), and four upon *superāt*.

**134. Dative with *imperō* and *mandō*.**—*Imperō*, *I command*, and *mandō*, *I direct*, take their object, the person commanded, in the dative; thus:

*Caesar legiōnibus imperat*,      *Caesar commands the legions*  
*Galba lēgātīs mandāvit*,      *Galba directed the ambassadors*

**135. Rule of sequence of tenses.**—When the verb in the principal clause denotes present or future time, the verb in the dependent clause is present or perfect subjunctive.

When the verb in the principal clause denotes past time, the verb in the dependent clause is imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

**136. Table of sequence.**

Present	} are fol- lowed by	{	present subjunctive to show con- temporaneous or subsequent action (unfinished);
Future			
Future-perfect			
			{ perfect subjunctive to show an- tecedent action (finished).

Imperfect	} are follow- ed by	{ imperfect subjunctive to show <i>contemporaneous</i> or <i>subsequent</i> <i>action (unfinished)</i> ;
Perfect		
Pluperfect		{ pluperfect subjunctive to show <i>antecedent action (finished)</i> .

### 137. Application of the rule of sequence in the *ut* clause.

Caesar obsidēs postulat ut auctōritātem amplificet,	Caesar demands hostages so that he may increase his power
Caesar obsidēs postulābit ut auctōritātem amplificet,	Caesar will demand hostages so that he may increase his power
Caesar obsidēs postulāverit ut auctōritātem amplificet,	Caesar will have demanded hostages so that he may in- crease his power
Caesar obsidēs postulābat ut auctōritātem amplificāret,	Caesar kept demanding hostages so that he might increase his power
Caesar obsidēs postulāvit ut auctōritātem amplificāret,	Caesar demanded hostages so that he might increase his power
Caesar obsidēs postulāverat ut auctōritātem amplificāret,	Caesar had demanded hostages so that he might increase his power

## LESSON XXVI.

### THIRD DECLENSION, CONTINUED.

#### 138. Multitūdō, *multitude*, fem.

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	multitūdō	multitūdīnēs
<i>Gen.</i>	multitūdīnis	multitūdīnum
<i>Dat.</i>	multitūdīnī	multitūdīnibus
<i>Acc.</i>	multitūdīnem	multitūdīnēs
<i>Voc.</i>	multitūdō	multitūdīnēs
<i>Abl.</i>	multitūdīne	multitūdīnibus

**Vīs, force, vigor, fem.****Iter, march, neut.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	vīs	vīrēs	iter	itinerā
<i>Gen.</i>	vīs	vīrium	itineris	itinerum
<i>Dat.</i>	—	vīribus	itinerī	itineribus
<i>Acc.</i>	vim	vīrēs	iter	itinerā
<i>Voc.</i>	—	vīrēs	iter	itinerā
<i>Abl.</i>	vī	vīribus	itinere	itineribus

For 'general rules of gender' in the *third declension* see (458).

**139.** Review declension of all the *nouns* in the third declension (458, 459). Give synopsis in the entire active voice of *imperō* in order of 'tense-name,' 'stem,' and 'meaning.' Give synopsis, active voice, of *amō*, by *moods, etc.* (474). What can be said of the *relative clause* and of subordinate clauses introduced by *ut, quod, and cum*? Give the *rule of sequence of tenses*.

**140.****VOCABULARY.**

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
hostis	hostis, <i>mas.</i>	<i>enemy</i> (usually plural in Caesar)
ignis	ignis, <i>mas.</i>	<i>fire</i>
finis	fīnis, <i>mas.</i>	<i>end</i> (in the plural, <i>territory</i> )
turris	turris, <i>fem.</i>	<i>tower</i>
calamitās	-tātis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>calamity</i>
pāx	pācis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>peace</i>
pars	partis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>part</i>
subitō, <i>adv.</i>		<i>suddenly</i>
fortiter, <i>adv.</i>		<i>bravely</i>
ōrātiō	-ōnis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>speech</i>
profectiō	-ōnis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>departure</i>
dēditiō	-ōnis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>surrender</i>
mūnitiō	-ōnis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>fortification</i>

*ignis* has the ablative *īgne* or *īgnī*.

**141.****EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Cum Caesar in Galliā esset, lēgātī multārum cīvītātum ad castra quae in hostium fīnibus parābat mātū-

rāvērunt. 2. Equitēs Rōmānī auxiliō Rēmōrum castellum in quō arma multa erant expūgnāvērunt et agmina hostium facile prōflīgāvērunt. 3. Quod hostēs proeliō cum Caesaris legiōnibus nōn dēcertābant sed in oppidō cōpiās cēlābant, milītēs nostrī altās turrēs quibus oppidī mūrōs facile expūgnāvērunt aedificāvērunt. 4. Germānī in quōrum finibus nostrī praesidia parant ad Caesaris castra liberōs obsidēs, ut pācem impetrent, portābunt. 5. Galba in finēs hostium cum peditibus et māgnā equitum parte mātūrāvīt, ut māgnū obsidum numerum postulāret.

II.—1. Caesar blamed the soldiers of the first and second legion, because they did not renew the battle with the enemy's infantry. 2. While Caesar was preparing on the hill a place for his camp, the enemy's forces suddenly hastened out of the woods towards our men. 3. The Remi whose soldiers routed the Sequani will hasten into the territory of the Belgians to prepare<sup>1</sup> new fortifications. 4. While Galba was contending in the boundaries<sup>2</sup> of the Belgians, Caesar's legions easily routed the infantry of the Sequani and gave to the rest of<sup>3</sup> the enemy an opportunity of establishing peace with the Roman people.

## LESSON XXVII.

### USE OF IMPERŌ AND MANDŌ.

142. Review **sum**—*present system* (117), *perfect system* (127). Also conjugate with meanings all of **sum** in the order given in (484); observe carefully the *future participle* and *future infinitive*. What forms of **sum** are lacking?

143. Decline the nouns of the *first* and *second declensions*

<sup>1</sup> How is *purpose* expressed in Latin? (54.)

<sup>2</sup> 'boundaries' = territory.

<sup>3</sup> 'rest of': *dative of reliquus*.

(453, 454), and also *altus* and *crēber* (466). What is the case of the *predicate noun* or *adjective* after finite forms of *sum*? After *esse* the predicate noun is *acc.* Give example, both English and Latin, illustrating the *agreement* of the *relative* with its *antecedent*, and explain.

## 144.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 81–92 (448).

**145. Use of *imperŏ* and *mandŏ*.**—*Imperŏ* and *mandŏ* take the person commanded in the *dative* and an *ut* clause to denote what is commanded to be done. This *ut* clause is translated by the *present infinitive*.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Caesar servŏ ut mātūret imperat,                    | <i>Caesar commands the slave to hasten</i>                          |
| 2. Galba lēgātīs ut frūmentum impetrent mandābit,      | <i>Galba will direct the ambassadors to obtain corn</i>             |
| 3. Lēgātus nostrīs ut mūnitiōnēs expūgnārent imperāvit | <i>The ambassador commanded our men to storm the fortifications</i> |

Notice very carefully the *sequence of tenses* in the *ut* clauses when the *English infinitive verb* is turned into the *subjunctive* in *Latin*. In (1) and (2) the *present subjunctive* is used because the *time* of the *leading verb* is in (1) *present* and in (2) *future*; see ‘*table of sequence*’ (first part) (136). In (3) the *imperfect subjunctive* is used because the *principal verb* denotes *past time* (‘*table of sequence*,’ second part).

## 146.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar Germānīs quī in finibus nostrīs hiemant imperābit ut in prŏvinciam Rŏmānam liberŏs obsidēs portent. 2. Caesar lēgātŏ equitum mandat ut in hostium finēs mātūret et cōpiās prŏfliget. 3. Galba lēgātŏ cūius milītēs mūnitiōnēs novās aedificābant mandāvit ut in hībernīs peditēs et equitēs conlocāret (*sequence*). 4. Cum Rēmī, amīcī nostrī (*adj.*), contrā Germānŏrum et Belgārum

cōpiās fortiter sustentārent, Caesar Galbae imperāvit ut in Galliam cum mīlitibus primāe et secundae legiōnis mātūrāret et ad Rēmōs subsidium portāret.

II.—1. Because the fortifications in the enemy's territory were large, Galba directed (*past time*) his soldiers to build a high tower. 2. The Remi direct their ambassadors to obtain peace for their state which had given aid to the Roman legions in many battles. 3. While Caesar was preparing to attack a large town, messengers hastened into our camp to announce' the departure of the enemy out of the town. 4. The soldiers whom Caesar commanded to attack the new fortifications will seize the enemy's baggage.

## LESSON XXVIII.

### SECOND-CONJUGATION VERB.

147. Present indicative of *dēleō*, *I destroy*. Meanings of persons as in *portō*.

*I destroy.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. dēleō	dēlēmus
2. dēlēs	dēlētis
3. dēlet	dēlent

The *present infinitive* of second-conjugation verbs ends in *ēre*. Hence the present stem ends in *ē*. Stem of *dēleō*, *dēlē* (57).

148.

### VOCABULARY.

videō,	<i>I see</i>
habeō,	<i>I have</i>
teneō,	<i>I hold</i>
moveō,	<i>I move</i>
contineō,	<i>I keep</i>
prohibeō,	<i>I prevent or cut off</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> Infinitive to express purpose. Do not render by the *Latin infinitive*.

149. Notice carefully the endings of the *present subjunctive* in the *first* conjugation and those of the *present indicative* in the *second* conjugation. Note the loss of a syllable in the second person singular of *dēleō*: not *dē-le-ēs*, but *dē-lēs*.

**First conjugation—present subjunctive.**

*Table of endings.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-em	-ēmus
-ēs	-ētis
-et	-ent

**Second conjugation—present indicative.**

*Table of endings.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-eō	-ēmus
-ēs	-ētis
-et	-ent

150. Thus if a verb ends in *et* or *ent*, for instance, it is *present subjunctive* when the verb is of the *first* conjugation; *present indicative* when the verb is of the *second* conjugation.

Conjugate the *present subjunctive* of *postulō* and *imperō*; *present indicative* of *habeō*, *moveō*, and *teneō*.

151.

**EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Lēgātus Rōmānus, quod hostium profectiōnem videt, cum legiōne primā ad collem in quō<sup>1</sup> Galbae castra sunt mātūrat. 2. Nostri Germānōrum profectiōnem prohibent, ut Caesarī obsidēs novōs impetrent. 3. Peditēs Caesaris gladiis et pilis mūnitiōnēs quās Sēquanī praesidī causā aedificāvērunt facile dēlent. 4. Quod Belgae ferī<sup>2</sup> in Galliā finēs lātōs<sup>2</sup> habent, Caesar castra movet et in Galliam mātūrat, ut agrōs vāstet. 5. Cum hostēs trāns flūmen impedīmenta portārent, Galba in colle proximō flūminī cōpiās conlocāvit et Caesaris imperāta exspectāvit.

II.—1. The soldiers of the second legion easily routed

<sup>1</sup> on which.

<sup>2</sup> Explain agreement of *ferī* and *lātōs*.

the enemy's infantry and obtained the baggage which the enemy had concealed in their fortifications. 2. Because Caesar sees the enemy's forces on the hill in front of the town whose walls he is preparing to attack, he keeps his infantry and cavalry in camp. 3. Galba commands the cavalry and infantry to hasten across the river and await the departure of the enemy.

## LESSON XXIX.

### SECOND CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

**152. Imperfect indicative of *dēleō*. Future indicative. Present subjunctive.**

<i>was destroying.</i>		<i>shall destroy.</i>		<i>may destroy.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>dēlēbam</i>	<i>dēlēbāmus</i>	<i>dēlēbō</i>	<i>dēlēbimus</i>	<i>dēleam</i>	<i>dēleāmus</i>
2. <i>dēlēbās</i>	<i>dēlēbātis</i>	<i>dēlēbis</i>	<i>dēlēbitis</i>	<i>dēleās</i>	<i>dēleātis</i>
3. <i>dēlēbat</i>	<i>dēlēbant</i>	<i>dēlēbit</i>	<i>dēlēbunt</i>	<i>dēleat</i>	<i>dēleant</i>

**153.** The stem in the above tenses is *dēlē* (147). The endings of the *imperfect* and *future* indicative are the same as in *portō*. Compare the endings of the *present subjunctive* of *dēleō* with the *present indicative* endings of *portō* (11). Therefore when the verb ends in *at* or *ant*, it is *present indicative* if it belongs to the *first conjugation*; *present subjunctive* if it belongs to the *second conjugation*.

## 154.

## VOCABULARY.

<b>habeō</b>	<b>habēre</b>	<i>to have</i>
<b>prohibeō</b>	<b>prohibēre</b>	<i>to prevent</i>
<b>valeō</b>	<b>valēre</b>	<i>to be strong</i>
<b>distineō</b>	<b>distinēre</b>	<i>to divide</i>
<b>sustineō</b>	<b>sustinēre</b>	<i>to withstand</i>
<b>iubeō</b>	<b>iubēre</b>	<i>to order</i>

**155. Use of *iubeō*, *I order*.**—*Iubeō* is followed by the *accusative (subject) + infinitive*; as,

**Caesar militēs hostium profectiōnem prohibēre iubēbit,** *Caesar will order his soldiers to prevent the enemies' departure*

In this sentence *militēs* is in the *accusative case*, *subject* of the infinitive *prohibēre*, which, being a transitive verb, takes its *direct object*, *profectiōnem*, in the *accusative* also.

## 156.

## EXERCISES.

In the following sentences distinguish carefully the verb-forms in *et*, *at*; *ent*, *ant*.

**I.—1.** Quod cīvītās auctōritāte et numerō militum valēbat, Caesar lēgātīs ut obsidēs multōs postulārent imperāvit. **2.** Lēgātī nostrī peditēs distinēbunt, ut in Galliā populī Rōmānī imperium amplificent et hostium cōpiās superent. **3.** Galba militēs integrōs trāns flūmen ad collem in quō hostēs mūnitiōnēs novās aedificant prope-rāre iubēbit. **4.** Lēgātus peditum numerum amplificat et fīnitimōs in castra frūmentum portāre iubet, ut in Galliā hiemet et hostium profectiōnem prohibeat. **5.** Galli turrēs novās quās nostrī ad oppidum oppūgnandum aedificāvērunt ignī dēlēbunt.

**II.—1.** Our infantry will obtain corn and arms from many states which are preparing to give hostages to Caesar,

so that they may have peace. 2. While the states next to the Roman province were preparing a plan of surrender, Caesar was keeping his new legions in camp. 3. Galba commands<sup>1</sup> his soldiers to place the baggage in camp and with javelins and swords to withstand the infantry of the enemy. 4. Write sentence (3) again, substituting 'orders' for 'commands': Galba *orders*<sup>2</sup> his soldiers, etc.

### LESSON XXX.

#### SECOND CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

##### 157. Imperfect subjunctive of *dēlēō*, *might destroy*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>dēlērem</i>	<i>dēlēremus</i>
2. <i>dēlērēs</i>	<i>dēlērētis</i>
3. <i>dēlēret</i>	<i>dēlērent</i>

#### Imperative.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. [wanting]	[wanting]
2. <i>dēlē</i> , <i>destroy thou</i>	<i>dēlēte</i> , <i>destroy ye</i>
2. <i>dēlētō</i> , <i>thou shalt destroy</i>	<i>dēlētōte</i> , <i>ye shall destroy</i>
3. <i>dēlētō</i> , <i>he shall destroy</i>	<i>dēlentō</i> , <i>they shall destroy</i>

#### Present participle.

*dēlēns*, *destroying*

#### Gerund.

*Gen.* *dēlendī*  
*Dat.* *dēlendō*  
*Acc.* *dēlendum*  
*Abl.* *dēlendō*

#### Present infinitive.

*dēlēre*, *to destroy*

158. This completes the *present system* of forms belonging to the *present stem*, *dēlē*, as is seen in the following synopsis:

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	<i>dēlēō</i>
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	<i>dēlēbam</i>

<sup>1</sup> Use *imperō*.

<sup>2</sup> Use *iubeō*.

3. <i>Future indicative</i>	dēlēbō
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	dēleam
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	dēlērem
6. <i>Imperative</i>	dēlē
7. <i>Present participle</i>	dēlēns
8. <i>Present infinitive</i>	dēlēre
9. <i>Gerund</i>	dēlendi

## 159.

## VOCABULARY.

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
frāter	-tris, <i>mas.</i>	brother
imperātor	-tōris, <i>mas.</i>	commander
lēx	lēgis, <i>fem.</i>	law
nox	noctis, <i>fem.</i>	night
virtūs	-tūtis, <i>fem.</i>	courage
compleō	-plēre, <i>second conj.</i>	to fill
obtineō	-nēre, “ “	to hold

160. Principal parts of second-conjugation verbs.—Only a few verbs of the second conjugation have the *perfect indicative* in *vī*; *dēleō* is given for better comparison with *portō*. Most verbs of this conjugation have *uī* in the *perfect*.

The ending of the *present infinitive* is *ēre* (147).

dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētum
compleō	complēre	complēvī	complētum
habeō	habēre	habuī	habutum
valeō	valēre	valuī	valitum
sustineō	sustinēre	sustinuī	sustentum

## 161. Review of subordinate clause—order of words.

Cum nostrī prō oppidō fossās complērent, hostium cōpiae in mūrō pīla et lapidēs con- locābant,	While our men were filling the ditches in front of the town, the enemies' forces were plac- ing javelins and stones upon the wall
---	---

The **cum** clause, ending with **complērent**, modifies and marks the *time* of the action in the principal verb, **conlocābant**; **prō oppidō**, adverbial phrase (*within the cum clause*), modifies **complērent**; in the principal clause **hostium** (*genitive*) limits the subject, **cōpiae**; **in mūrō** modifies **conlocābant** and denotes *place where*; the direct objects precede their verbs.

## 162.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar imperatōrī legiōnis prīmae ut vigiliā secundā castra moveat imperat. 2. Galba partem legiōnis oppidum subitō oppūgnāre et partem profectiōnem hostium prohibēre iubet. 3. Caesar mīlitibus quōs in hibernīs in prōvinciā conlocāvit imperābit ut castra moveant et in Galliā praesidia et mūnitiōnēs aedificent. 4. Cum Galba cōpiās distinēret et mūrōs prō oppidō expūgnāre parāret, oppidānī ex oppidō properāvērunt et māgnā virtūte nostrōs fugāvērunt.

II.—1. Galba directed the commanders of the new legions to renew the battle with great courage. 2. The enemy build many fortifications, so that they may overcome the great multitude of our men. 3. Our commanders divide their forces in the first watch, that they may storm the enemy's redoubts in many places. 4. Galba demands the surrender of many hostages, because the Gauls have great influence and hold command in many states.

## LESSON XXXI.

## SECOND CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

163. *Dēleō* in the *perfect system* ; stem *dēlēv*.

Perfect indicative.	Pluperfect indicative.	Future-perfect indicative.	Perfect subjunctive.
<i>destroyed.</i>	<i>had destroyed.</i>	<i>shall have destroyed.</i>	<i>may have destroyed.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. <i>dēlēvī</i>	<i>dēlēveram</i>	<i>dēlēverō</i>	<i>dēlēverim</i>
2. <i>dēlēvistī</i>	<i>dēlēverās</i>	<i>dēlēveris</i>	<i>dēlēveris</i>
3. <i>dēlēvit</i>	<i>dēlēverat</i>	<i>dēlēverit</i>	<i>dēlēverit</i>
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. <i>dēlēvimus</i>	<i>dēlēverāmus</i>	<i>dēlēverimus</i>	<i>dēlēverimus</i>
2. <i>dēlēvistis</i>	<i>dēlēverātis</i>	<i>dēlēveritis</i>	<i>dēlēveritis</i>
3. <i>dēlēvērunt (ēre)</i>	<i>dēlēverant</i>	<i>dēlēverint</i>	<i>dēlēverint</i>

## Pluperfect subjunctive.

*might have destroyed.*

SINGULAR.

1. *dēlēvissem*
2. *dēlēvissēs*
3. *dēlēvisset*

PLURAL.

1. *dēlēvissēmus*
2. *dēlēvissētis*
3. *dēlēvissent*

## Perfect infinitive.

*dēlēvisse, to have destroyed*Synopsis of the *perfect system* :

- |                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. <i>dēlēvī</i>    | 4. <i>dēlēverim</i>  |
| 2. <i>dēlēveram</i> | 5. <i>dēlēvissem</i> |
| 3. <i>dēlēverō</i>  | 6. <i>dēlēvisse</i>  |

## 164. Compare the personal endings of the following :

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

*Present indicative.*

1. *portō portāmus*
2. *portās portātis*
3. *portat portant*

*Present subjunctive.*

1. *portem portēmus*
2. *portēs portētis*
3. *portet portent*

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

*Present indicative.*

- dēleō dēlēmus*
- dēlēś dēlētis*
- dēlet dēlent*

*Present subjunctive.*

- dēleam dēleāmus*
- dēleās dēleātis*
- dēleat dēleant*

## 165.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 1-10 (449).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
nōmen	-minis, <i>neut.</i>	<i>name</i>
prīnceps	-cipis, <i>mas.</i>	<i>chief</i>
cohors	-hortis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>cohort</i>
altitūdō	-dinis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>height</i>
ibi, <i>adv.</i>		<i>there</i>
salūs	-ūtis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>safety</i>

## 166. Points to remember.

1. **Ut**, *so that*, introduces a *purpose clause* with the *verb* in the *subjunctive*. This **ut** + *subjunctive* is often translated by the *infinitive*.

2. **Cum**, *while*, takes the *imperfect subjunctive*, translated like the *imperfect indicative*.

3. **Quod**, *because*, introduces a *causal clause* whose *verb* is often in the *indicative*.

4. The *relative quī*, etc., usually follows its *antecedent* and stands *first* in its clause, the *verb* of which is often in the *indicative*.

5. **Imperō** and **mandō** take the *dative* and an **ut** clause; the verb in the **ut** clause is in the *subjunctive*.

6. **Iubeō** is used with the *accusative* + *infinitive*.

## 167.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Quod cīvitās auctōritāte<sup>1</sup> māgnā est, Caesar Belgīs ut imperātōribus Rōmānīs liberōs prīncipum obsidēs dent mandat. 2. Hostēs quī nostrōrum virtūtem et multitudinem māgnam vidēbant (*saw*) cum liberīs et fīnitimīs trāns flūmen in Galliam properāvērunt et ibi castra conlocāvērunt. 3. Cum cohortēs legiōnis prīmae

<sup>1</sup> auctōritāte māgnā = *of great influence*; 'ablative of quality' (376). Translate, 'because their state is one of great influence,' etc.

in castris essent, cohortes reliquae ut muros oppugnarent magnae altitudinis turris (*acc.*) altas aedificabant. 4. Quod hostes in castris milites continebant et nostris facultatem pugnandi non dabant, Caesar militibus ut agros hostium vastarent imperavit.

II.—1. On account of the great courage of our men the enemy did not attack the town in which the Roman legions were wintering. 2. Caesar will hasten out of camp with the remaining cohorts to destroy<sup>1</sup> the redoubt which the enemy are building for the sake of safety. 3. Our commanders gave aid to many states of Gaul and called the Gauls friends of the Roman people, because they had many fields and villages and much influence. 4. Caesar commanded Galba to keep<sup>1</sup> his cavalry ready upon the hill and to prevent the flight of the enemy.

## LESSON XXXII.

### SECOND CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

#### 168. Perfect system of *sustineo*; perfect stem *sustinu*.

Principal parts: *sustineo sustinere sustinui sustentum*

*From sustinui is derived the stem sustinu.*

- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. sustinuī    | 4. sustinuerim  |
| 2. sustinueram | 5. sustinuissem |
| 3. sustinuerō  | 6. sustinuisse  |

#### 169. Supine system of *dēleo* (four forms).

*Supine, dēlētum; supine stem, dēlēt.*

<i>First supine</i>	<i>dēlētum, to destroy</i>
<i>Second supine</i>	<i>dēlētū, to destroy</i>
<i>Future participle</i>	<i>dēlētūrus, -a, -um, being about to destroy</i>
<i>Future infinitive</i>	<i>dēlētūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to destroy</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> Be careful about choice of tense—'rule of sequence' (135).

**170.** The ending of the *future participle* is *ūrus, -a, -um*; that of the *future infinitive* *ūrum, -am, -um esse*. To form these, strike off *um* from the *supine* and *annex* the above endings; as, *parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum*; *supine stem, parāt*; *future participle, parātūrus*; *future infinitive, parātūrum esse*. *videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsum*; *supine stem, vīs*; *future participle, vīsūrus*; *future infinitive, vīsūrum esse*.

**171.****VOCABULARY.**

## Verbs 11–22 (449).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
tempus	-poris, <i>neut.</i>	time
eōdem tempore,	<i>adverbial phrase</i>	at the same time
explōrātor	-tōris, <i>mas.</i>	scout
pēs	pedis, <i>mas.</i>	foot
pōns	pontis, <i>mas.</i>	bridge
undique, <i>adv.</i>		from (on) all sides
tum, <i>adv.</i>		then

**172.** Repeat the rule of sequence. What adjectives govern the dative? What is the *case* of the *predicate* word with *sum*, etc.? Give rules for the agreement of *adjective* and *relative*. Name four kinds of *ablatives*. Decline the nouns of the first, second, and third declensions (453, 454, 458, 459), and *altus* and *crēber* (466).

**173.****EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Caesar Gallīs ut in castra Rōmāna liberōs prīncipum obsidēs portārent imperāvit. 2. Quod Caesar explōrātōrēs pontem dēlēre iusserat, hostēs prīmā vigiliā cum liberīs et impedimentīs trāns flūmen mātūrāvērunt. 3. Nostri quibus Caesar tēla nova dedit peditēs hostium,

quod virtūte et numerō hominum nōn valēbant, facile prōflīgāvērunt. 4. Militēs legiōnis prīmae hominēs virtūtis māgnae erant et nōn fugā sed fortiter dīmīcandō salūtem impetrāvērunt. 5. Quod Gallī mūnitiōnēs novās nostrās oppugnābant, Caesar imperātōrem cūius cōpiaē tēla multa et bona habēbant in Galliam properāre, ut Gallōrum castella et vāllum dēlērent, iussit.

II.—1. Caesar ordered the infantry of the second legion to attack the town whose walls were not high. 2. With great swiftmess and courage our cavalry hastened out of the redoubts and easily routed the enemy's lines. 3. Galba commanded scouts to destroy the new bridge and prevent the departure of the Belgians who had not given hostages to Caesar. 4. While the Belgians were awaiting the aid of their neighbours, Caesar suddenly attacked their town on all sides with his infantry<sup>1</sup> and destroyed the new fortifications.

### LESSON XXXIII.

#### THIRD CONJUGATION.

#### 174. Present indicative of *pōnō*, *I place*.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. pōnō	pōnimus
2. pōnis	pōnitis
3. pōnit	pōnunt

#### Personal endings.

-ō	-imus
-is	-itis
-it	-unt

---

<sup>1</sup> 'Ablative of means' (43 b).

Like *pōnō*, conjugate *mittō*, to send, *dūcō*, to lead, and *cōgō*, to collect.

## 175.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 23-32 (449).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<i>fertilitās</i>	<i>-tātis, fem.</i>	<i>fertility</i>
<i>ab latere</i> , adverbial phrase		<i>on the flank</i>
<i>ac</i> , conj.		<i>and</i>
<i>parātus</i> -a, -um, adj.		<i>prepared</i>
<i>inīquus</i> -a, -um, adj.		<i>unfavourable</i>
<i>inter</i> , prep. with the acc.		<i>among or between</i>
<i>cis</i> , “ “ “ “		<i>on this side of</i>
<i>tam</i> , adv.		<i>so</i>

**176. Order of words.**—Though the *subject* usually tends to stand first and the *verb* last in the Latin sentence, this arrangement of words is frequently greatly varied. Often the *most prominent* word in the speaker's mind comes *first* and other words follow in order of prominence. For position of forms of *sum*, for example, see the first line in “*Caesar's Gallic War*,” Book II, Chapter I: “*cum esset Caesar in Galliā*”; again in Chapter IX: “*palūs erat nōn māgna*.” Then we find the *verb first* in the sentence, as in Chapter II, third paragraph: “*dat negōtium Senonibus*,” *he employs the Senones*; and in Chapter XVII. line 12: “*adiuvābat etiam . . . cōnsilium*,” *it was of advantage, too, to the plan*.

**177.** Review the entire verb *sum* (484), and *all* of the active voice of *amō* and *moneō* (474, 476).

## 178.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar incūsāvit imperātōrem cui sīgnum dedit, quod ad mūrū oppidī turrēs nōn prōmōvit. 2. Eōdem

tempore hostēs in multīs Galliae cīvitātibus cōpiās māgnās cōgunt ut legiōnēs Rōmānās superent. 3. Imperātor Rōmānus, quod profectiōnem hostium videt, trāns flūmen ad collem in quō sunt Galbae castra peditēs prīmae legiōnis mittit ut fugam prohibeant. 4. Lēgātī hostium, quod virtūtem ac numerum nostrōrum peditum vidēbant, in castrīs cōpiās continēbant neque<sup>1</sup> nostrīs facultātem pūgnandī dabant. 5. Galba nōmine populī Rōmānī obsidēs multōs cōgit (*collects*) et in hibernīs inter cīvitātēs quārum auctōritās est nōn māgna legiōnēs novās pōnit.

II.—1. Caesar places (*pōnō*) in winter-quarters among the Remi the new cavalry which Galba is collecting from all sides. 2. Because the courage of the Roman legions is so great, the enemy send to Galba the children of their chiefs as hostages. 3. Caesar leads his new legions into the boundaries of farthest Gaul and commands the Gauls,<sup>2</sup> who are unfriendly to the Roman people, to prepare<sup>3</sup> winter-quarters for our men and to carry corn into our camp.

## LESSON XXXIV.

### THIRD CONJUGATION, CONTINUED. FOURTH DECLENSION.

#### 179. Imperfect indicative of *pōnō*. Future indicative.

*was placing.*

*shall place.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. pōnēbam	pōnēbāmus	pōnam	pōnēmus
2. pōnēbās	pōnēbātis	pōnēs	pōnētis
3. pōnēbat	pōnēbant	pōnet	pōnent

180. The *present stem* (*verb-stem*), pōnē, ending in *short e*, is found by dropping *re* from the *present infinitive active* (57). The stem vowel ē is lost before ō, is changed to u before nt,

<sup>1</sup> neque = et . . . nōn ; see vocab. (202).

<sup>2</sup> Case after imperō ?

<sup>3</sup> Mood with imperō ?

to *ī* before the other endings of the *indicative* and *imperative*; in the *imperfect* and *future indicative* it becomes *ē*, and in the *present subjunctive* *ā*.

## 181.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 33-42 (449).

<b>exercitus</b> -ūs, <i>mas.</i>			<i>army</i>
<b>incendō</b> ,	<i>third conjugation</i>		<i>to burn</i>
<b>relinquō</b> ,	"	"	<i>to leave</i>
<b>cōnscrībō</b> ,	"	"	<i>to enroll</i>
<b>expellō</b> ,	"	"	<i>to drive out</i>
<b>incolō</b> ,	"	"	<i>to inhabit</i>
<b>permittō</b> ,	"	"	<i>to entrust</i>

Verbs of the third conjugation have *short e* in the *penult* of the *present infinitive*, the accent falling upon the *antepenult*: **pōnō**, **pōnēre**; **mittō**, **mittēre**.

## 182. Fourth declension.

Cāsus, *fate*, *mas.*Cornū, *horn or wing*, *neut.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	cāsus	cāsūs		cornū	cornua
<i>Gen.</i>	cāsūs	cāsum		cornūs	cornuum
<i>Dat.</i>	cāsui(ū)	cāsibus		cornū	cornibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cāsum	cāsūs		cornū	cornua
<i>Voc.</i>	cāsus	cāsūs		cornū	cornua
<i>Abl.</i>	cāsū	cāsibus		cornū	cornibus

The stem ends in *u*. Nouns in *us* are *masculine* with a few *feminine* exceptions; those in *ū* are *neuter*.

## 183. Comparison of tenses having similar endings.

Present subjunctive.		Present indicative.		Future indicative.	
<i>(First conjugation.)</i>		<i>(Second conjugation.)</i>		<i>(Third conjugation.)</i>	
1. portem	portēmus	dēleō	dēlēmus	pōnam	pōnēmus
2. portēs	portētis	dēlēs	dēlētis	pōnēs	pōnētis
3. portet	portent	dēlet	dēlent	pōnet	pōnent

Thus it is seen that a verb ending in **et** or **ent** is *present subjunctive* if *first* conjugation; *present indicative* if *second* conjugation; *future indicative* if *third* conjugation.

## 184.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Imperatōrēs Rōmānī extrēmā in Galliā ut potestatem amplificent legiōnēs novās cōscribent. 2. Lēgātus quī māgnam hostium multitudinem videt trāns flūmen Rhēnum mīlitēs nōn dūcet. 3. Caesar in fīnibus Germānōrum exercitum māgnū relinquet ut nōmen et auctōritātem populī Rōmānī amplificet. 4. Cīvitātēs Galliae quae virtūte et auctōritāte et numerō hominum valent nōn facile ē fīnibus Galliae legiōnēs nostrās expellent. 5. Nostrī in cīvitātibus proximīs Galliae (*dative*) māgnās cōpiās cōgent ac peditēs eōdem tempore cōscribent ut hostēs superent.

II.—1. The townsmen will burn their towns and carry their children and baggage into the boundaries of their neighbours. 2. The Gauls place their states under the power<sup>1</sup> of the Roman army and drive out the Germans who are in arms and are not friendly to Caesar. 3. The Roman commander leaves the cavalry among the Sequani, because they inhabit places next to our province, and hastens across the river with his infantry. 4. In the second watch our men will burn the bridge which the enemy built and will prevent their departure.

---

<sup>1</sup> Place under the power of, **permittō in + accusative**.

## LESSON XXXV.

THIRD CONJUGATION, CONTINUED ADJECTIVES  
OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.185. Present subjunctive of *pōnō*. Imperfect subjunctive.*may place.**might place.*

## SINGULAR.

## SINGULAR.

1. pōnam

pōnerem

2. pōnās

pōnerēs

3. pōnat

pōneret

## PLURAL.

## PLURAL.

1. pōnāmus

pōnerēmus

2. pōnātis

pōnerētis

3. pōnant

pōnerent

186. As in the *second conjugation*, the *present subjunctive* ends in *am*, *ās*, *at*, etc. If a verb ends in *at*, for example, it is *present indicative* in the *first conjugation*, *present subjunctive* in *any other conjugation*. Conjugate *incendō* and *expellō* in the present, imperfect, and future indicative, and present and imperfect subjunctive.

## 187.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 1-6 (450).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
dux	ducis, <i>mas.</i>	leader
adventus	-ūs, <i>mas.</i>	arrival
equitātus	-ūs, <i>mas.</i>	cavalry
impetus	-ūs, <i>mas.</i>	attack
omnis -nis, -ne, <i>adj.</i>		all
facilis -lis, -le, <i>adj.</i>		easy

## 188. Adjective of the third declension.

## Fortis, brave.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	fortis	-is	-e	fortēs	-ēs	-ia
Gen.	fortis	-is	-is	fortium	-ium	ium
Dat.	fortī	-ī	-ī	fortibus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	fortem	-em	-e	fortēs (-īs)	-ēs (-īs)	-ia
Voc.	fortis	-is	-e	fortēs	-ēs	-ia
Abl.	fortī	-ī	-ī	fortibus	-ibus	-ibus

**Fortis**, stem *forti* (vowel-stem in *i*), has *one* form for both *masculine* and *feminine*, and one for the *neuter* (*e*). Adjectives of *two* terminations, being *i*-stems, have *ī* in the *ablative singular*, *ia* in the *nominative*, *accusative*, and *vocative neuter plural*, *ium* in the *genitive plural*, and *is* often in the *accusative plural masculine and feminine*.

**189. Use of *suus*, 'his,' 'hers,' or 'theirs.'**—*Suus, sua, suum* is a possessive *reflexive* pronoun of the third person, denoting *possession* and referring to the *subject* of a sentence or clause (214). It is declined like *altus*, -a, -um, and agrees in *gender*, *number*, and *case* with the *noun limited*, that is, the *thing possessed*, not the *possessor*. It means *his*, *hers*, or *theirs* according to the *number* of the *possessor*.

**Caesar ē castrīs suōs militēs**      *Caesar leads his soldiers out*  
*dūcit,*      *of camp*  
**Hostēs suum oppidum incendunt,**      *The enemy burn their town*

## 190.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar, cum in prōvinciā legiōnēs reliquās cōscriberet, ducibus equitātūs imperāvit ut hostium oppidum in quō erant multa impedimenta incenderent. 2. Caesar undique exercitum cōget ut Germānōs quī inter multās cīvitatēs valent ac multa oppida incolunt ē finibus Gallōrum expellat. 3. Caesar, ut Sēquanōs quī nostris sunt

inimicī expellat et ad fortēs Rēmōs auxilium portet, in Galliam sine morā suās cōpiās dūcet. 4. Quod imperātor hostium ē castrīs ad proelium exercitum nōn dūcēbat, Galba ut castra hostium expūgnāret mīlitēs aedificāre turrīs (*accus.*) altitūdinis māgnae iussit. 5. Quod explōrātōrēs adventum Caesaris exercitūs nūntiāvērunt, Belgae trāns Rhēnum sua castra movēbunt et cum Germānīs coniūrābunt ut mīlitum nostrōrum (*adj.*) impetum sustineant.

II.—1. On account of the enemy's arrival Caesar will leave his infantry in winter-quarters among the Remi and will enroll new legions. 2. With the aid of the soldiers whom he will enroll in farthest Gaul Caesar will overcome and drive out the remaining enemy. 3. Galba directs his commanders to lead the cavalry of the second legion into the territories next to the Roman province and to attack the new fortifications of the enemy.

## LESSON XXXVI.

### THIRD CONJUGATION, CONTINUED

#### 191. Imperative of *pōnō*, *place* (*thou*).

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
2.	{ <i>pōne</i> <i>pōnitō</i>	{ <i>pōnite</i> <i>pōnitōte</i>
3.	<i>pōnitō</i>	<i>pōnuntō</i>

#### Present participle.

*pōnēns, placing*

#### Present infinitive.

*pōnēre, to place*

#### Gerund.

*of placing, etc.*

*Gen. pōnendī*

*Acc. pōnendum*

*Dat. pōnendō*

*Abl. pōnendō*

This completes the *nine* forms composing the *present system* of *pōnō*, based upon the *present stem pōne*.

192. Synopsis—present system—of *pōnō*.

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	<i>pōnō</i>
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	<i>pōnēbam</i>
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	<i>pōnam (-ēs)</i>
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	<i>pōnam (-ās)</i>
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	<i>pōnerem</i>
6. <i>Imperative</i>	<i>pōne</i>
7. <i>Present participle</i>	<i>pōnēns</i>
8. <i>Present infinitive</i>	<i>pōnere</i>
9. <i>Gerund</i>	<i>pōnendī</i>

Give synopsis in the *present system* of *mittō* and *relinquō*. Conjugate the *present subjunctive* of *dubitō*, *present indicative* of *habeō*, *future indicative* of *dūcō*.

## 193.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 7-14 (450).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
<i>aditus</i>	<i>-ūs, mas.</i>	<i>access or approach</i>
<i>commeātus</i>	<i>-ūs, mas.</i>	<i>supplies</i>
<i>mōns</i>	<i>montis, mas.</i>	<i>mountain</i>
<i>statim, adv.</i>		<i>at once</i>
<i>manus</i>	<i>-ūs, fem.</i>	<i>band (hand)</i>

194. Decline *duplex* and *equester* (467). Observe that *equester* has *three* terminations in the *nominative*: *ter, tris, tre*; being a vowel-stem in *i (ri)*, it takes *ī* in the *ablative*, etc., as in *fortis*. *Duplex*, increasing the number of syllables in the genitive, is a consonant-stem (*duplic*), and takes the form of *i-stems* in the cases pointed out in (188), except that the *ablative (singular)* often ends in *e*.

## 195.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar *prō oppidō cūius mūrī sunt nōn altī castra pōnet, quod aditum facilem habet*. 2. *Adventū equitātūs Caesar ē castrīs omnēs cōpiās dūcit et ab latere inīquō in locō hostium agmen exagitāre parat*. 3. *Germānī quī trāns Rhēnum agrōs multōs habent et māgna oppida in-*

colunt ex hibernīs omnēs nostrōs militēs expellent. 4. Eōdem tempore Galba in extrēmōs Galliae finīs (*acc. plur.*) lēgātōs mittit ut legiōnēs novās cōscribant et frūmentum et commeātūs impetrent. 5. Caesar in hostium finēs, ut agrōs vāstent et mūnitiōnēs dēleant et exercituī Rōmānō commeātūs cōgant, fortēs lēgātōs mittet.

II.—1. Because the brave messengers had announced the approach of the enemy's cavalry, Galba ordered his commanders to prepare all the forces for renewing the battle. 2. Caesar commands the brave forces to collect an abundance of corn for the army whose camp he will place (*pōnō*) in Gaul. 3. While Galba was enrolling infantry and cavalry for the sake of overcoming the Gauls, ambassadors from a large part of Gaul hastened to Caesar's winter-quarters to give hostages and obtain peace. 4. Because the town has an easy access, Caesar at once prepares to lead all the forces out of camp and storm the walls from all sides.

## LESSON XXXVII.

### THIRD CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

#### 196. Perfect system of *pōnō*. — *Perfect stem posu.*

Perfect indicative. <i>placed.</i>	Pluperfect indicative. <i>had placed.</i>	Perfect subjunctive. <i>may have placed.</i>
SINGULAR.	posueram	posuerim
1. posuī	posuerās, etc.	posueris, etc.
2. posuistī		
3. posuit	Future-perfect indicative.	Pluperfect subjunctive.
PLURAL.	<i>shall have placed.</i>	<i>might have placed.</i>
1. posuimus	posuerō	posuissem
2. posuistis	posueris, etc.	posuissēs, etc.
3. posuērunt (-ēre)		

## Perfect infinitive.

posuisse, *to have placed*

197. *Supine system of pōnō (four forms); supine stem posit.*

- |                             |                     |                                   |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>First supine</i>      | positum,            | <i>to place</i>                   |
| 2. <i>Second supine</i>     | positū,             | <i>to place</i>                   |
| 3. <i>Future participle</i> | positūrus, -a, -um, | <i>being about to place</i>       |
| 4. <i>Future infinitive</i> | positūrum, -am, -um | esse, <i>to be about to place</i> |

198.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 15–18 (450).

Nom.	Gen.	Meaning.
mōs	mōris, <i>mas.</i>	<i>custom or habit</i>
servitūs	-tūtis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>slavery</i>
dēdō	(see principal parts in the general vocabulary)	<i>to surrender</i>
ēdūcō		<i>to lead out</i>
petō		<i>to seek or ask for</i>
timeō		<i>to fear</i>
novissimum agmen,	<i>neut.</i>	<i>the rear</i>

Petō, with the meaning ‘ask for,’ takes a direct object, not the *dative*; as, pācem petunt, *they ask for peace*.

199. Decline pūgnāns (467). Give full synopsis, *entire active voice*, by stems, of imperō, iubeō, and cōgō. First repeat the *principal parts* of the verb and point out the *three stems*, stating the *number* of forms derived from *each stem*. Give the *name* of the form, next the *form itself*, and then the *meaning*.

200.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar in (*upon*) altum collem suās cōpiās dūxit et ibi castella ac mūnitiōnēs posuit ut primum hostium impetum sustinēret. 2. Dux Rōmānus in castris milites continuit, quod hostēs liberōs principum obsidēs dēdiderant ac potestātī Caesaris oppida omnia permiserant. 3. Cum ducēs quōs Caesar in Galliam lēgātōs miserat ut exercitū

Rōmānō commeātum cōgerent frūmentum postulārent, Sēquanī castra nostra oppūgnāvērunt et incendērunt. 4. Quod explōrātōrēs quōs trāns Rhēnum commeātūs causā mīserat hostium adventum nūntiāvērunt, Caesar fortibus lēgātīs ut statim in proximum montem omnem equitātum dūcerent mandāvit.

II.—1. While the cohorts of the first legion with great courage were withstanding the enemy's brave attack, Galba directed the cavalry to await his commands upon the nearest hill. 2. Upon the arrival of the Roman infantry which Caesar had trained in many battles, the townsmen will send into our camp suitable men so that they may surrender hostages and ask for peace. 3. Caesar hastened at once with his armed infantry into the farthest boundaries of Gaul, and many states that feared the power of our army sought peace.

## LESSON XXXVIII.

### THE IRREGULAR VERB POSSUM, I AM ABLE.

201. Learn the indicative mood of *possum* (485).—Principal parts, *possum, posse, potuī*—*no supīne*.

*Decline altior* (467) and the fourth-declension nouns (461).

### 202.

#### VOCABULARY.

Verbs 19–23 (450).

<i>tantus, -a, -um, adj.</i>	<i>so great</i>
<i>ubi, conj.</i>	<i>when</i>
<i>dē, prep. with the abl.</i>	<i>with respect to, about</i>
<i>discēdō</i>	<i>to depart</i>
<i>redigō</i>	<i>to reduce</i>
<i>nec (neque)</i> { conjunction, used in the second of two connected ideas }	<i>and . . . not</i>

203. Use of *cum* and *ubi*.—*Cum, when*, is used with the imperfect subjunctive to denote contemporaneous action

(*when* in the sense of '*while*'); with the *pluperfect subjunctive* to denote *antecedent* action (*when* in the sense of '*after*'). This is called *Historical cum* and describes the *circumstances* under which an action took place.

**Ubi**, *when*, commonly takes the *perfect indicative*, or the *Historical present indicative* (*the present as a vivid representation of the past*). The **ubi** clause defines the time during which an action took place. When to use **cum** or **ubi**, in writing English in Latin, is often difficult to determine.

#### 204. Analysis of a complex sentence.

<b>Cum</b> militēs quōs Caesar in Galliam ut exercituī Rōmānō commeātūs cōgerent mīserat frūmentum postulārent, Sēquanī castra nostra incendērunt,	<i>While the soldiers whom Caesar had sent into Gaul to collect supplies for the Roman army were demanding corn, the Sequani set fire to our camp</i>
--	---

A complex declarative sentence, of which **Sēquanī . . . incendērunt** is the *main clause*. Since the *subject*, **Sēquanī**, is unmodified, the remainder of the sentence limits the *predicate* **incendērunt**. Hence it is seen that the *subordinate* part of the sentence, **cum . . . postulārent**, has *three* component parts, viz., a **cum**, a *relative*, and an **ut** clause.

Begin with **cum**: looking for the verb introduced by **cum**, there appears a *relative clause* which is in turn divided in two by an intermediate **ut** clause, and the *latter* standing undivided ends with **cōgerent**. Since the **ut . . . cōgerent** clause *stands within* the *relative clause*, the *next verb* in order should complete the *relative clause*, beginning with **quōs** and ending with **mīserat**; here bear in mind that **ut . . . cōgerent** shows *affirmative purpose* of, and gets its *sequence* from, **mīserat**, and that **quōs . . . mīserat** describes **militēs**. Thus it is seen that **cum** introduces

*postulārent*, and that this entire clause modifies the *principal verb incendērunt*, describing the *circumstances* of the action of the latter and denoting *time contemporaneous*.

## 205.

## EXERCISE.

1. Caesar ubi tantam hostium multitudinem vīdit, ē castrīs omnēs legiōnēs ēdūxit et mandāvit militibus ut impetum hostium exspectārent. 2. Quod militum nostrōrum impetum sustinēre nōn poterant, oppidānī proximīs cum finitimīs in extrēmōs Galliae finēs discessērunt. 3. Quod Gallī nōn possunt contrā legiōnēs fortēs nostrās sustentāre, Caesar in servitūtem omnēs cīvitātēs quae arma et obsidēs nōn dēdidērunt rediget. 4. Hostēs reliquī quī armīs ac hominum numerō nōn valēbant ad Caesarem principēs cīvitātum lēgātōs ut pācem peterent mīsērunt. 5. Adventū hostium Galba suō mōre in castrīs partem equitum reliquit, partem in montem dūxit. 6. Castra Caesaris quae hostēs expūgnāre non potuerant proxima erant collī altō nec aditum facilem habēbant.

## LESSON XXXIX.

## POSSUM, CONTINUED. PERSONAL PRONOUN.

206. Learn the subjunctive and infinitive moods of *possum* (485).

*Decline all the nouns of the third declension (458, 459).*

207. Personal pronoun, first person.

Ego, I.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
Nom.	ego, I	nōs, we	
Gen.	meī, of me	{ nostrum, } { nostrī, }	{ of us
Dat.	mihi, to or for me	nōbīs, to or for us	
Acc.	mē, me	nōs, us	
Abl.	mē, { with, from, by } me, etc.	{ nōbīs, from us, etc.	

208. **Demonstrative pronoun** (sometimes used for the personal pronoun, *third person*).

is, ea, id, *this or that, he, etc.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	eī or iī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs

## 209.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 24–33 (450).

nōndum, <i>adv.</i>	<i>not yet</i>
nē, <i>conj.</i>	<i>in order that . . . not</i>
trādō	<i>to hand over</i>
circumdō	<i>to surround</i>

Nē in negative commands, prohibitions, etc., will be given later.

210. **How cause and manner are expressed.**—*Cause* is expressed by the simple ablative.

Virtūte nostrōrum hostēs sustentāre nōn poterant,	<i>On account of (because of) the courage of our men the enemy could not hold out</i>
---	---

The *manner* of an action is expressed by the ablative usually with **cum**, unless a limiting adjective accompanies the noun. But even with the adjective **cum** may be used. Sometimes it is almost impossible to distinguish *means* and *manner*.

Hostēs cum celeritāte discesserunt,	<i>The enemy departed with speed</i>
-------------------------------------	--------------------------------------

211. **Use of nē.**—Nē, *in order that . . . not*, introduces a subordinate clause of *negative purpose* with the verb in the *subjunctive*, the choice of *tense* being determined by the *rule of sequence*.

Dant obsidēs nē Caesar oppi-    *They give hostages in order that*  
 dum dēleat,                            *Caesar may not destroy their*  
    *town*

## 212.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar māgnō equitātūs numerō oppidum circum-  
 dedit nē hostēs noctū<sup>1</sup> discēderent. 2. Hostēs quī militum  
 nostrōrum impetum sustinēre possunt ad Caesarem dē  
 pāce lēgātōs nōn mittent. 3. Rēmī quī proximī Belgīs  
 et hominēs virtūtis māgnae erant ex suis finibus Germānōs  
 facile expulērunt. 4. Ubi trāns flūmen hostium agmen  
 vīdit, Caesar in collem proximum cōpiās omnēs suās ēdūxit  
 ac militibus fortibus ut proelī sīgnū expectārent im-  
 perāvit. 5. Rēmī quī Caesaris exercitūs adventum timent  
 Belgās reliquōs, quod populō Rōmānō obsidēs trādiderant  
 et pācem petīverant, incūsant.

II.—1. Because they were not able to overcome the  
 Roman infantry, the Sequani burned all their towns and  
 departed out of Gaul. 2. Upon the arrival of the cavalry  
 (*singular of equitātus*) which our leaders had collected  
 from (*ex*) many states the Gauls sent ambassadors to Caesar  
 with respect to a surrender. 3. While our men were  
 preparing to storm the walls of the town with weapons and  
 stones, the townsmen suddenly departed and placed (*pōnō*)  
 safety in flight. 4. When the enemy saw upon the hill our  
 cavalry whose approach (*adventus*) scouts had announced,  
 they did not await an attack but<sup>2</sup> departed at once into the  
 nearest (*proximus*) villages.

---

<sup>1</sup> An old ablative used adverbially, *by night*.

<sup>2</sup> Use *ac*.

## LESSON XL.

## THE IŌ VERB OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

213. Learn *capiō*,<sup>1</sup> *I take*, in the entire active voice (480).  
—Principal parts, *capiō*, *capere*, *cēpī*, *captum*.

214. Reflexive (personal) pronoun of the third person.—  
*Suī*, of himself, herself, themselves.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i> —	—
<i>Gen.</i> <i>suī</i> , of himself	<i>suī</i> , of themselves
<i>Dat.</i> <i>sibi</i> , to or for himself	<i>sibi</i> , to or for themselves
<i>Acc.</i> <i>sē</i> , himself	<i>sē</i> , themselves
<i>Abl.</i> <i>sē</i> , from, etc., himself	<i>sē</i> , from, etc., themselves

The reflexive (personal) pronoun *sē*, etc., like its corresponding possessive *suus*, etc., (189), refers to the *subject of the sentence or clause*: hence it is distinguished by the term ‘reflexive’ (from *reflectō*, bend or turn back).

*Cum Caesar in Galliā esset*, While Caesar was in Gaul, am-  
*lēgātī ad eum* (not reflexive) *bassadors came to him*  
*vērēerunt*,  
*Caesar lēgātōs ad sē* (reflexive) *Caesar ordered ambassadors to*  
*venīre iussit*, *come to him*

## 215. VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 34–41 (450).

<i>ā</i> or <i>ab</i> , prep. with the abl.	from
<i>ācritēr</i> , adv.	fiercely
<i>faciō</i> ,	to do or make
<i>impetum faciō</i> ,	to make an attack
<i>accipiō</i> ,	to receive
<i>que</i> , conj.	and

<sup>1</sup> Verbs in *iō* retain *i* in all the tenses formed from the present stem, except the imperfect subjunctive.

**Que** is always *enclitic*, being attached to the *second* of two words connected: **ferrō ignique**, *with fire and sword*. When **que** joins clauses, it is attached to the *first* word of the *second* clause.

**Caesar vīcōs incendit agrōsque vāstāvit,** *Caesar burnt the villages and laid waste the fields*

**216. Use of *impetum facere*.**—**Impetum facere**, *to make an attack*, usually takes in + *accusative*.

**Hostēs in nostrōs impetum ācriter fēcērunt,** *The enemy made a fierce attack upon our men*

An *adverb* is often used in *Latin* where the English makes use of an *adjective*, as with **ācriter** in the above sentence.

**217. Review of important points.**—Define *meaning* and *use* of **suus** (189); distinguish **cum** and **ubi** clauses (203); explain use of **ut** and **quod**, and of **imperō** and **iubeō** (166); **nē** + *subjunctive* (211); predicate nominative with **sum**, etc.; position and agreement of the *relative*; rule of sequence; name *six* kinds of *ablatives*.

## 218.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Dux noster in deditiōnem Rēmōs accipiet et cōpiīs omnibus in Sēquanōrum finēs, ut in hostēs impetum ācriter faciat, mātūrābit. 2. Caesar imperat Galbae ut cōpiīs quās ab Rēmīs, finitimīs, accēperat in oppidānōs impetum faciat. 3. Adventū equitātūs nostrī Caesar commeātibus hostēs prohibuit et magnā hominum multitudine oppidum circumdedit, nē oppidānī fugā salūtem peterent. 4. Caesar mūnitiōnibus mūrisque altis ea castra in quibus omnēs suās legiōnēs posuerat circumdedit ut exercitus noster ad hiemandum salūtis locum habēret. 5. Tum Rēmī ac Belgae quī civitatēs Galliae proximae prōvinciae sunt ad Caesaris castra dē deditiōne hominēs idōneōs mīsērunt.

II.—1. While our infantry in an unfavourable place were

withstanding the javelins of the enemy with courage, Caesar directed his commanders to lead out the cavalry and make an attack upon the enemy's rear. 2. Because Caesar ordered the Remi to inhabit a part of the territories which he had received from (ab) the Gauls, many states next to Gaul blamed Caesar and prepared to attack our camp. 3. While the cavalry were making an attack upon the Gauls, Caesar ordered his scouts to destroy the bridge, which the enemy had built, in order that they might not be able to depart out of Gaul without a surrender.

## 219. REVIEW VOCABULARY.

### LESSONS XXII—XL.

1. possum, posse, potuī, [no supine], *to be able*
2. cōpia, cōpiae (fem.), *abundance*
3. aditus, aditūs (mas.), *access*
4. omnis, omnis, omne (adj.), *all*
5. inter (prep. with the acc.), *among*
6. ac (conj.), *and*
7. nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātum, *announce*
8. adventus, adventūs (mas.), *approach*
9. armō, armāre, armāvī, armātum, *arm*
10. arma, armōrum (neut.), *arms*
11. exercitus, exercitūs (mas.), *army*
12. petō, petere, petīvī, petitum, *ask for or seek*
13. impetus, impetūs (mas.), *attack*
14. eōdem tempore, *at the same time*
15. statim (adv.), *at once*
16. exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātum, *await*
17. manus, manūs (fem.), *band*
18. corpus, corporis (neut.), *body*
19. finis, finis (mas.), *end*, (plural) *boundary or territories*
20. fortis, fortis, forte (adj.), *brave*
21. fortiter (adv.), *bravely*
22. pōns, pontis (mas.), *bridge*

23. frāter, frātris (mas.), *brother*
24. incendō, incendere, incendi, incēsum, *burn*
25. Caesar, Caesaris (mas.), *Caesar*
26. calamitās, calamitātis (fem.), *calamity*
27. eques, equitis (mas.), *horseman*, (plur.) *Roman cavalry*
28. equitātus, equitātūs (mas.), *cavalry*
29. prīnceps, prīncipis (mas.), *chief*
30. cohors, cohortis (fem.), *cohort*
31. cōgō, cōgere, cōgē, cōactum, *collect*
32. imperātor, imperātōris (mas.), *commander*
33. contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum, *contend*
34. virtūs, virtūtis (fem.), *courage*
35. mōs, mōris (mas.), *custom or habit*
36. pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *defeat*
37. postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātum, *demand*
38. discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum, *depart*
39. profectiō, profectiōnis (fem.), *departure*
40. dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēlētum, *destroy*
41. distineō, distinēre, distinuī, distentum, *divide*
42. faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, *do or make*
43. expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsum, *drive out*
44. facilis, facilis, facile (adj.), *easy*
45. hostis, hostis (mas.), *enemy*
46. cōscribō, cōscribere, cōscripsī, cōscriptum, *enroll*
47. permittō, permittere, permīsī, permissum, *entrust*
48. pater, patris (mas.), *father*
49. fertilitās, fertilitātis (fem.), *fertility*
50. timeō, timēre, timuī, [no supine], *fear*
51. levitās, levitātis (fem.), *fickleness*
52. ācriter (adv.), *fiercely*
53. compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētum, *fill*
54. ignis, ignis (mas.), *fire*
55. pēs, pedis (mas.), *foot*
56. mūnitiō, mūnitiōnis (fem.), *fortification*
57. undique (adv.), *from or on all sides*
58. bonus, bona, bonum (adj.), *good*
59. trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum, *hand over*
60. habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, *have*

61. altitūdō, altitūdinis (fem.), *height*
62. collis, collis (mas.), *hill*
63. suus, sua, suum (possessive adj. pron.), *his or their*
64. teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, *hold*
65. cornū, cornūs (neut.), *horn*
66. obses, obsidis (mas.), *hostage*
67. amplificō, amplificāre, amplificāvī, amplificātum, *increase*
68. pedes, peditis (mas.), *footman*, (plur.) *infantry*
69. auctōritās, auctōritātis (fem.), *influence*
70. incolō, incolere, incoluī, [no supine], *inhabit*
71. nē (conj.), *in order that . . . not*
72. contineō, continēre, continuī, contentum, *keep*
73. rēx, rēgis (mas.), *king*
74. lēx, lēgis (fem.), *law*
75. dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead*
76. dux, ducis (mas.), *leader*
77. ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum, *lead out*
78. relinquo, relinquere, reliquī, relictum, *leave*
79. legiō, legiōnis (fem.), *legion*
80. agmen, agminis (neut.), *line of march* (marching column)
81. homō, hominis (mas.), *man*
82. impetum facere, *make an attack*
83. mōns, montis (mas.), *mountain*
84. moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move*
85. multitūdō, multitūdinis (fem.), *multitude*
86. nōmen, nōminis (neut.), *name*
87. nox, noctis (fem.), *night*
88. nōndum (adv.), *not yet*
89. ab latere, *on the flank*
90. facultās, facultātis (fem.), *opportunity*
91. iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *order*
92. pars, partis (fem.), *part*
93. pāx, pācis (fem.), *peace*
94. pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place*
95. potestās, potestātis (fem.), *power*
96. parātus, parāta, parātum (adj.), *prepared or ready*
97. prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum, *prevent*

98. novissimum agmen, novissimī agminis (neut.), *rear*
99. accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum, *receive*
100. redigō, redigere, redēgī, redāctum, *reduce*
101. rūmor, rūmōris (mas.), *report*
102. flūmen, flūminis (neut.), *river*
103. salūs, salūtis (fem.), *safety*
104. explorātor, explorātōris (mas.), *scout*
105. videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see*
106. mittō, mittere, mīsī, mīssum, *send*
107. Sēquanī, Sēquanōrum (mas.), *Sequani*
108. gravis, gravis, grave (adj.), *severe*
109. latus, lateris (neut.), *side or flank*
110. servitūs, servitūtis (fem.), *slavery*
111. tam (adv.), *so*
112. tantus, tanta, tantum (adj.), *so great*
113. mīles, mīlitis (mas.), *soldier*
114. ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis (fem.), *speech*
115. cīvītās, cīvītātis (fem.), *state*
116. lapis, lapidis (mas.), *stone*
117. valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum, *to be strong*
118. subitō (adv.), *suddenly*
119. aestās, aestātis (fem.), *summer*
120. commeātus, commeātūs (mas.), *supplies*
121. dēditiō, dēditiōnis (fem.), *surrender*
122. dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum, *surrender*
123. circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatum, *surround*
124. celeritās, celeritātis (fem.), *swiftness*
125. tum, inde (adverbs), *then*
126. ibi (adv.), *there*
127. cis (prep. with the acc.), *on this side of*
128. tempus, temporis (neut.), *time*
129. turris, turris (fem.), *tower*
130. inīquus, inīqua, inīquum (adj.), *unfavourable*
131. inimīcus, inimīca, inimīcum (adj.), *unfriendly*
132. bellum, bellī (neut.), *war*
133. vigilia, vigiliae (fem.), *watch* (division of the night)
134. ubi (adv.), *when*

135. *cum* (conj.), *while*

136. *quī, quae, quod* (rel. pron.), *who, which, what, that*

137. *sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentum, withstand*

138. *dē* (prep. with the *abl.*), *with respect to*

## LESSON XLI.

### FIFTH DECLENSION.

220. *Rēs, thing, fem.*

*Diēs, day, mas.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.		SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>		<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>rērum</i>		<i>diēī</i>	<i>diērum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>rēbus</i>		<i>diēī</i>	<i>diēbus</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>		<i>diem</i>	<i>diēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>		<i>diēs</i>	<i>diēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>		<i>diē</i>	<i>diēbus</i>

The stem of nouns in the fifth declension ends in *ē*. Nouns of the fifth declension are *feminine*, except *diēs*, which is generally *masculine*.

*Rēs* and *diēs* alone have the entire plural; others occur usually in the nominative and accusative plural—many have no plural.

221. *Ablative of separation*.—Separation is expressed by the ablative with or without a preposition; as,

*Caesar armīs hostēs dēspoliāt, Caesar deprives the enemy of their arms*

222.

### VOCABULARY.

<i>spēs</i>	<i>speī, fem.</i>	<i>hope</i>
<i>fidēs</i>	<i>fideī, fem.</i>	<i>confidence</i>
<i>propīnquitās</i>	<i>-tātis, fem.</i>	<i>nearness</i>
<i>exiguitās</i>	<i>-tātis, fem.</i>	<i>shortness</i>
<i>vulnus</i>	<i>-neris, neut.</i>	<i>wound</i>
<i>summus -a -um, adj.</i>		<i>top of</i>
<i>in summō colle</i>		<i>on the top of the hill</i>
<i>sī, conj.</i>		<i>if</i>
<i>nisi, conj.</i>		<i>unless</i>
<i>proelium committō</i>		<i>to begin battle</i>
<i>fugiō</i>		<i>to flee</i>

**223. Use of *sī* and *nisi* in conditions (335).—***Sī* and *nisi* introduce conditional sentences. In a conditional sentence the *dependent* clause, *containing the condition*, is called the *protasis*; the clause containing the *conclusion* is called the *apodosis*.

**The more vivid future condition.**—(a) In the *more vivid* future condition the *future indicative* is used in both *protasis* and *apodosis*; as,

Caesar pācem faciet, sī hostēs      Caesar will make peace, if the  
obsidēs dēdent,                              enemy surrender hostages

(b) If the conditional act is considered as *completed* before that of the *apodosis*, the *future perfect* is used in the *protasis*; as,

Nisi hostēs omnia arma trādi-      Unless the enemy hand over all  
derint, Galba proelium com-      their arms, Galba will begin  
mittet,                                      battle

(‘Hand over’ = *shall have handed over*, representing action *completed* in the *future*, before another *future* action begins.)

## 224.

## EXERCISE.

1. Caesar in servitūtem eās cīvitatēs quae cum nostrīs peditibus in Rēmōrum fīnibus proelium commīsērunt facile redēgit. 2. Militēs quī commeātūs petendī causā ē castrīs discesserant adventum hostium nōn cōspēxērunt. 3. Nostrī propter propīnquitātem celeritātemque hostium capere oppidum in quō erant commeātūs et multa arma nōn potuērunt. 4. Cum Caesar in colle adventum hostium exspectāret, ducibus equitum mandāvit ut statim ē castrīs omnēs cōpiās ēdūcerent et ad proelium committendum parārent. 5. Noster imperātor in suam fidem<sup>1</sup> Rēmōs fīnitimōsque accipiet, sī eae cīvitatēs quae sine causā in

<sup>1</sup> In suam fidem = *under his protection*.

nostrōs impetum fēcērunt ad Caesarem dē dēditionē lēgātōs mīserint. 6. Caesar in Belgās omnibus cōpiīs impetum faciet, nisi Belgae lēgātōs mīserint ut obsidēs dēdant pācemque petant. 7. Peditēs Rōmānī propter temporis exiguitātem celeritātemque hostium imperātum Caesaris nōn exspectāvērunt sed in hostēs impetum ācriter fēcērunt, nē pūgnandī facultātem āmitterent.

## LESSON XLII.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

**225. Mūniō, I fortify.** Principal parts **mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvi, mūnītum.** The present system is as follows. The *present stem, mūnī*, is found by striking off *re* from the *present infinitive active, mūnīre*.

Present indicative.	Imperfect indicative.	Present subjunctive.
<i>I fortify.</i>	<i>was fortifying.</i>	<i>may fortify.</i>
SINGULAR.	mūniēbam	mūniam
1. mūniō	mūniēbās, etc.	mūniās, etc.
2. mūnīs		
3. mūnit	Future indicative.	Imperfect subjunctive.
PLURAL.	<i>shall fortify.</i>	<i>might fortify.</i>
1. mūnīmus	mūniam	mūnīrem
2. mūnītis	mūniēs, etc.	mūnīrēs, etc.
3. mūniunt		

**Imperative.**  
mūnī, *fortify thou*  
mūnīte, *fortify ye, etc.*

**Present participle.**  
mūniēns, *fortifying*

**Present infinitive.**  
mūnīre, *to fortify*

**Gerund.**  
mūniendī, *of fortifying*

## 226.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 1-9 (451).

audiō	<i>to hear</i>
impediō	<i>to hinder</i>
veniō	<i>to come</i>
cōsentiō	<i>to conspire</i>
quis, <i>interrogative pronoun</i>	<i>who ?</i>
aliquis, <i>indefinite pronoun,</i>	<i>any one, some one</i>
quis is used for aliquis after sī, nisi, nē, num.	

227. Demonstrative pronoun *hīc, this.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hīc</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

228. Use of *nē (not)* in negative commands.—*Imperō, mandō*, and many verbs of *commanding* take *ut + subjunctive* in affirmative commands, and *nē + subjunctive* in negative commands.

Caesar imperat militibus *nē* *Caesar commands his soldiers*  
 oppidum incendant, *not to burn the town*

## 229.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Hīs in locīs sunt nōn multa oppida idōnea tantae hominum multitudinī.* 2. *Germānī spē expūgnandī oppida multa trāns Rhēnum in Galliam suās cōpiās dūxerant.* 3. *Belgae omnibus cōpiīs in prōvinciam nostram ut in fidem populī Rōmānī liberōs obsidēs trādant veniunt.* 4. *Nisi Caesar in hās cīvitātēs quās Galba proeliīs multīs in servitūtem redēgit contenderit, hostēs manūs novās cōgent ut mūnitiōnēs Rōmānās incendant.* 5. *Sēquanī*

cum Belgis, finitimis, cōsentiunt et oppida sua fossis mūrisque mūniunt nē Caesar in potestatem populī Rōmānī cīvitatēs redigat.

II.—1. Because the enemy fear the approach of the Roman legions, they will depart out of these fortifications and leave in camp a large part of their baggage. 2. While Caesar's soldiers were fortifying that town which the Sequani had left, the Belgians made an attack upon Galba's infantry who were coming towards the town with all the baggage. 3. When Caesar saw the large number of ambassadors whom the enemy had sent into our camp, he commanded his leaders not to make (nē + *imperf. subj.*) an attack upon the enemies' forces. 4. Unless the chiefs of these states which are strong in courage and in number of men come<sup>1</sup> into our camp and ask for<sup>1</sup> peace, Caesar will lead out his infantry and lay waste their towns and fields.

### LESSON XLIII.

#### FOURTH CONJUGATION, CONTINUED.

#### 230. Perfect system of *mūniō*.—*Stem* mūnīv.

Perfect indicative. <i>I fortified.</i>	Pluperfect indicative. <i>had fortified.</i>	Perfect subjunctive. <i>may have fortified.</i> mūnīverim, etc.
SINGULAR.	mūnīveram, mūnīverās, etc.	Pluperfect subjunctive. <i>might have fortified.</i> mūnīvissem, etc.
1. mūnīvī		
2. mūnīvistī		
3. mūnīvit	Future-perfect indicative. <i>shall have fortified.</i>	Perfect infinitive. <i>to have fortified.</i> mūnīvisse
PLURAL.	mūnīverō mūnīveris, etc.	
1. mūnīvimus		
2. mūnīvistis		
3. mūnīvērunt (-ēre)		

<sup>1</sup> Future or future-perfect indicative.

Give synopsis, *by stems*, in entire active voice of **audiō** and **cōsentiō**.

Give synopsis in active voice of **mūniō**, *by moods*, etc., in the order given in (482).

**231. Supine system of *mūniō*.—Stem *mūnīt*.**

1. <i>First supine</i>	<i>mūnītum</i> ,	<i>to fortify</i>
2. <i>Second supine</i>	<i>mūnītū</i> ,	<i>to fortify</i>
3. <i>Future participle</i>	<i>mūnītūrus -a, -um</i> ,	<i>being about to fortify</i>
4. <i>Future infinitive</i>	{ <i>mūnītūrum</i> , <i>-am, -um esse</i> , }	<i>to be about to fortify</i>

**232.**

**VOCABULARY.**

Verbs 10–19 (451).

**233. Demonstrative pronoun *ille*, *that*, *he*.**

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illīus</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>

**234.**

**EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Nisi illae civitatēs reliquīs cum Belgīs cōsentient ac suis amicīs auxilium dabunt, Gallī Caesaris exercitūs adventum impedire nōn poterunt. 2. Exercitus noster vicōs omnēs incendit (*perf.*) et agrōs per quōs vēnerant vāstāvit, nē hostēs illa loca incolere possent. 3. Cum Rēmī in castra sua cum impedimentīs exercitūs venīrent, nostrī in novissimum agmen impetum fēcērunt et milītēs perturbāverunt. 4. Caesar hōc proeliō in servitūtem omnēs eās civitatēs quārum principēs cum Germānīs cōsēnsērunt et obsidēs nōn dederant redēgit. 5. Quod hostēs, in castrīs suās manūs retinendō, nostrīs facultātem pūgnandī nōn

dedērunt, Caesar ducibus prīmae legiōnis ut omnibus cum cohortibus eius legiōnis ē castrīs contenderent et in mūrum oppidī impetum facerent imperāvit.

II.—1. When the enemy had lost hope with respect to withstanding the attack of our infantry, Caesar directed their chiefs to bring (**addūcō**) hostages into his camp and to surrender the town without delay. 2. At the same time ambassadors come to Caesar from all sides and bring corn and (**que**) supplies for our men, because Caesar had announced the approach of his army. 3. While the enemy were fortifying their (*omit*) camp on the top of the hill, our commanders surrounded the hill with infantry and (**que**) cavalry and began battle on all sides. 4. The Sequani into whose territories Caesar is preparing to lead a large army will ask for (**petō**) peace, in order that the Roman legions may not lay waste their fields, destroy their fortifications, and burn their towns.

## LESSON XLIV.

### FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE.

#### 235. Present indicative passive of **portō**.

##### SINGULAR.

1. portor, *I am (being) carried*
2. portāris (-re), *you are carried*
3. portātur, *he is carried*

##### PLURAL.

1. portāmur, *we are carried*
2. portāminī, *you are carried*
3. portantur, *they are carried*

The *present stem* is **portā** as in the *active*, to which are annexed the following endings.

#### Table of endings.

##### SINGULAR.

-or  
-ris (-re)  
-tur

##### PLURAL.

-mur  
-minī  
-ntur

Conjugate **postulō** and **cōservō** in the *present indicative passive*.

236.

## VOCABULARY.

Review verbs 1-19 (451).

Decline **idem**, *the same* (464).

**237. Personal agent**—how expressed.—The agent or doer with a passive verb is put in the *ablative with ā or ab*. Distinguish carefully *means* or *instrument* from *agent*; thus,

(a) **Galli ā Rōmānīs superantur**, *the Gauls are overcome by the Romans: by the Romans = persons by whom, hence ā or ab + ablative, to denote personal agent*.

(b) **agrī ignī vāstantur**, *the fields are laid waste by fire: by fire = thing by which, hence ablative of means or instrument without a preposition*.

238.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Eae cīvitatēs quae arma commeātūsque trādiderunt ā nostrīs cōservantur. 2. Proelium in summō colle ab imperātōre fortī redintegrātur. 3. Fīnēs per quōs Caesar suum exercitum dūxit ā peditibus nostrīs vāstantur. 4. Dēditiō omnium armōrum ā Caesare postulātur, quod Sēquanī in Rēmōs, fīnitimōs amīcōsque populī Rōmānī, impetum ācriter fēcērant. 5. Hostēs ad Caesarem liberōs princīpum obsidēs mīsērunt nē facultātem faciendī pācem āmitterent.

II.—1. New fortifications are being built by those soldiers whom Caesar placed in camp. 2. Those states into which the Roman commanders came to enroll new legions are spared by Caesar. 3. The number of soldiers is being increased by the Roman commanders in order that the enemy may not be able to defeat our army. 4. Unless

Caesar surrounds<sup>1</sup> the town on all sides, the enemy will depart by night<sup>2</sup> and seek safety in flight. 5. The enemies' forces which made an attack upon Caesar's infantry while they were fortifying their camp, are easily routed by Galba's soldiers.

## LESSON XLV.

### FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE, CONTINUED.

#### 239. *Portō* continued in the indicative passive.

##### Imperfect indicative.

*was (being) carried.*

##### SINGULAR.

1. *portābar*

2. *portābāris (-re)*

3. *portābātur*

##### PLURAL.

1. *portābāmur*

2. *portābāminī*

3. *portābantur*

##### Future indicative.

*shall be carried.*

##### SINGULAR.

*portābor*

*portāberis (-re)*

*portābitur*

##### PLURAL.

*portābimur*

*portābiminī*

*portābuntur*

#### Table of endings.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
-bar	-bāmur	-bor	-bimur
-bāris (-re)	-bāminī	-beris (-re)	-biminī
-bātur	-bantur	-bitur	-buntur

240. Use of *ā* or *ab*.—*Ā* or *ab* means *from* (denoting origin or source) when the adverbial phrase (*preposition* + *noun*) limits a verb in the *active voice*; but if the phrase limits a passive verb it may mean either *from* or *by* according as the verb which it modifies signifies origin or agency:

1. *Arma ā mūrīs portāta sunt*, *Arms were brought from the walls*
2. *Hostēs ab Gallīs auxilium accipiunt*, *The enemy receive aid from the Gauls*
3. *Auxilium hostibus (dat.) ab Gallīs datur*, *Aid is given to the enemy by the Gauls*

<sup>1</sup> Fut. perf. indic.; see (223 b).

<sup>2</sup> *noctū*.

## 241.

## VOCABULARY.

Review words 1-46 in the 'review vocabulary' (219).

<i>auxilia</i>	<i>-ōrum, neut.</i>	<i>auxiliaries</i>
<i>medius</i>	<i>-a, -um, adj.</i>	<i>middle of</i>
<i>dē mediā nocte</i>		<i>about the middle of the night</i>
<i>eō, adv.</i>		<i>thither</i>
<i>ad eum, ad eōs</i>		<i>to him, to them</i>

242. Decline *quis, who?* (465).

Sometimes *is, ea, id, he, she, it*, is used as the personal pronoun of the third person ; thus,

1. *Cum Caesar esset in Galliā, lēgātī ad eum vēnērunt,* While Caesar was in Gaul, ambassadors came to him
2. *Nisi Belgae pācem petent (petiverint), Caesar statim in eōs impetum faciet,* Unless the Belgians ask for peace, Caesar will make an attack upon them at once

## 243.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. *Causa coniūrandī erat haec, quod multīs in locīs oppida Gallōrum ā militibus nostrīs vāstābantur.* 2. *Signum ad proelium committendum ab imperātōre cūius cōpiae in silvīs cēlantur<sup>1</sup> subitō dabitur hostēsque ā legiōnibus fortibus prōflīgābuntur.* 3. *Cum exercitus noster in extrēmā Galliā esset, obsidēs nōmine populī Rōmānī ā ducibus nostrīs postulābantur et in castra Rōmāna sine morā ab hostibus portābantur.* 4. *Potestās populī Rōmānī inter eās cīvitatēs quārum virtūs māgna est ā Caesare amplificābitur, nē hostēs commeātibus nostrīs prohibeant.* 5. *Eōdem tempore oppida Sēquanōrum ab hīs cōpiīs quibus Galba tēla nova dedit occupantur, quod ad Caesarem de pāce lēgātōs nōn mīsērunt.*

II.—1. The enemy fled with all their baggage out of the territories through which our men were coming, because

<sup>1</sup> The present indicative passive denotes the *continuance* of an action in the present; *cēlantur* = 'are being concealed.'

they feared the power of our army. 2. The brave soldiers of the second legion were overcome by many wounds, which they received when they made an attack upon the Germans. 3. While Caesar was wintering among the Remi whose fields are next to the Roman province, corn and supplies were carried to him by many states. 4. When the enemy saw the high towers which were being built by our men so that they might storm the walls of the town, they at once surrendered to Caesar the children of their chiefs as hostages and asked for peace.

## LESSON XLVI.

### FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE, CONTINUED.

#### 244. *Portō* continued in the present system passive.

##### Present subjunctive.

*may be carried.*

##### SINGULAR.

1. *porter*

##### PLURAL.

*portēmur*

2. *portēris (-re)*

*portēminī*

3. *portētur*

*portentur*

##### Imperfect subjunctive.

*might be carried.*

##### SINGULAR.

*portārer*

##### PLURAL.

*portārēmur*

*portārēris (-re)*

*portārēminī*

*portārētur*

*portārentur*

##### Imperative.

##### SINGULAR.

2. { *portāre*, *be thou carried*  
       { *portātor*, *thou shalt be carried*  
 3. *portātor*, *he shall be carried*

##### PLURAL.

2. *portāminī*, *be ye carried*  
 3. *portantor*, *they shall be carried*

##### Present infinitive.

##### Gerundive.

*portārī*, *to be carried*    *portandus, -a, -um*, (*worthy*) *to be carried*

245. This completes the *eight* forms in the *passive*, based upon the *present stem portā*. The *present stem portā* undergoes a change in the *present subjunctive* where final *ā*

becomes ē. Compare the *ending* of the *present infinitive active* (āre) with that of the *present infinitive passive* (ārī).

**246. Synopsis of *portō* in the present system passive.—**  
*Stem portā.*

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	portor,	<i>I am being carried</i>
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	portābar,	<i>I was being carried</i>
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	portābor,	<i>I shall be carried</i>
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	porter,	<i>I may be carried</i>
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	portārer,	<i>I might be carried</i>
6. <i>Imperative</i>	portāre,	<i>be thou carried</i>
7. <i>Present infinitive</i>	portārī,	<i>to be carried</i>
8. <i>Gerundive</i>	portandus -a -um,	<i>(worthy) to be carried</i>

**247.****VOCABULARY.**

Review words 47–92, in ‘review vocabulary’ (219).

vadum, -ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>ford</i>
concilium, -ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>council of war</i>
post, <i>prep. with the acc.</i>	<i>behind or after</i>
prōtinus, <i>adv.</i>	<i>immediately</i>
atque, <i>conj.</i>	<i>and also</i>

**248.****EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Proximō diē Caesar fortibus equitātūs ducibus ut in Sēquanōrum fīnēs cōpiās omnēs dūcerent imperāvit. nē auxilia ā Sēquanīs ad Aeduōs portārentur. 2. Belgae, quod nostrī exercitūs quem timēbant adventum audīverant (*had heard of*), ad Germānōs, finitimōs, lēgātōs mīsērunt ut ab eīs cīvitatibus quae populō Rōmānō sē nōndum dēdiderant auxilia impetrārent. 3. Nisi Galba suōs milītēs in novissimum agmen Belgārum impetum facere iusserit commeātibusque eōs prohibuerit, Belgae ex Ītaliā contendēt et cum Germānīs coniūrābunt. 4. Cum Caesar castra mūnīret, lēgātī ex māgnā parte Galliae ad eum vērunt atque ut in dēditiōnem eōs acciperet petīvērunt.

II.—1. Because the Belgians burned our fortifications in the territories of Gaul, a large number of hostages was demanded by Caesar according to his custom. 2. Galba will enroll new legions and hasten (*properō*) into the boundaries of the Gauls whose fields are being laid waste by the Germans; so that aid may be given to his friends<sup>1</sup> and the enemy may be overcome. 3. A camp will be placed (*conlocō*) on the top of the hill and the battle will be renewed by those commanders whose brave forces have defeated (*pellō*) the enemy in many battles.

## LESSON XLVII.

### FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE, PERFECT SYSTEM.

#### 249. Principal parts of *portō* in the passive :

Present indicative. Present infinitive. Perfect indicative.

portor

portārī

portātus sum

The perfect stem *portāv* does not occur in the passive voice.

The remaining *eight forms* of the passive are based upon the *supine stem* *portāt* which is seen in the *perfect passive participle*, *portātus*; these compose the *perfect system* of the passive.

#### 250. Perfect system of *portō* in the passive.—*Stem portāt.*

Perfect indicative.

*have been—was carried.*

Perfect subjunctive.

*may have been carried.*

##### SINGULAR.

1. portātus, -a, -um sum

2. “ “ “ es

3. “ “ “ est

##### SINGULAR.

portātus, -a, -um sim

“ “ “ sīs

“ “ “ sīt

##### PLURAL.

1. portātī, -ae, -a sumus

2. “ “ “ estis

3. “ “ “ sunt

##### PLURAL.

portātī, -ae, -a sīmus

“ “ “ sītis

“ “ “ sint

---

<sup>1</sup> *Suis amīcīs.*

**Pluperfect indicative.***had been carried.*

## SINGULAR.

- |    |                   |      |
|----|-------------------|------|
| 1. | portātus, -a, -um | eram |
| 2. | “ “ “             | erās |
| 3. | “ “ “             | erat |

## PLURAL.

- |    |                  |        |
|----|------------------|--------|
| 1. | portātī, -ae, -a | erāmus |
| 2. | “ “ “            | erātis |
| 3. | “ “ “            | erant  |

**Future-perfect indicative.***shall have been carried.*

## SINGULAR.

- |    |                   |      |
|----|-------------------|------|
| 1. | portātus, -a, -um | erō  |
| 2. | “ “ “             | eris |
| 3. | “ “ “             | erit |

## PLURAL.

- |    |                  |        |
|----|------------------|--------|
| 1. | portātī, -ae, -a | erimus |
| 2. | “ “ “            | eritis |
| 3. | “ “ “            | erunt  |

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***might have been carried.*

## SINGULAR.

- |                   |       |
|-------------------|-------|
| portātus, -a, -um | essem |
| “ “ “             | essēs |
| “ “ “             | esset |

## PLURAL.

- |                  |         |
|------------------|---------|
| portātī, -ae, -a | essēmus |
| “ “ “            | essētis |
| “ “ “            | essent  |

**Perfect infinitive.**

portātum, -am, -um esse  
*to have been carried.*

**Future infinitive.**

portātum irī  
*to be about to be carried*

**Perfect participle.**

portātus, -a, -um  
*having been carried.*

**251.** The above compound tenses are formed by annexing parts of the verb **sum** to the perfect passive participle, **portātus, -a, -um.**

The participial parts of these tenses, such as **portātus, -a, -um**, **portātī, -ae, -a**, **portātum, -am, -um**, etc., are made to agree in *gender, number, and case* with the *subject* of the verb.

**252.****VOCABULARY.**

Review words 93–138 in ‘review vocabulary’ (219).

**253. The gerundive construction.**—Instead of the accusative-object with the gerund (noun), put the *object* in the *case* in which the gerund would stand (*were it used*), and place the *gerundive* (adjective) in agreement with this noun in the *same gender, number, and case*. When the verb is followed by an object, the gerundive rather than the gerund is almost always used.

1. By drawing up a line of battle: the gerund construction is *instruendō aciēm*; change *aciēm* to the *ablative aciē* (the case indicated by *instruendō*); place the gerundive *instruendus* in the *ablative, singular, feminine* to agree with *aciē* and the phrase is correctly written *aciē instruendā*.

2. By destroying the fortifications: the gerund construction is *dēlendō mūnitiōnēs*; gerundive, *mūnitiōnibus dēlendīs*.

#### 254. Commit to memory the following :

1. Imperātor amātus est, *The commander has been or was loved*
2. Virtus amāta est, *Courage has been or was loved*
3. Nōmen amātum est, *The name was loved*
4. Militēs amātī sunt, *The soldiers were loved*
5. Cīvitātēs amātae sunt, *The states were loved*
6. Castra amāta sunt, *The camp has been loved*

### LESSON XLVIII.

#### FIRST CONJUGATION PASSIVE. ADJECTIVES USED AS SUBSTANTIVES.

#### 255. Synopsis of the passive—first conjugation—by stems.

##### *Present system, stem portā.*

- |                                 |           |
|---------------------------------|-----------|
| 1. <i>Present indicative</i>    | portor    |
| 2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>  | portābar  |
| 3. <i>Future indicative</i>     | portābor  |
| 4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>   | porter    |
| 5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i> | portārer  |
| 6. <i>Imperative</i>            | portāre   |
| 7. <i>Present infinitive</i>    | portārī   |
| 8. <i>Gerundive</i>             | portandus |

##### *Perfect system, stem portāt.*

- |                                 |                                   |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Perfect indicative</i>    | portātus -a, -um sum <sup>1</sup> |
| 2. <i>Pluperfect indicative</i> | portātus -a, -um eram             |

<sup>1</sup> The perfect indicative passive (*indefinite perfect*) represents the action as *past*, without reference to its *duration*, merely as *something ended*.

3. <i>Future-perfect indicative</i>	portātus, -a, -um erō
4. <i>Perfect subjunctive</i>	portātus, -a, -um sim
5. <i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>	portātus, -a, -um essem
6. <i>Perfect infinitive</i>	portātum, -am, -um esse
7. <i>Future infinitive</i>	portātum irī
8. <i>Perfect participle</i>	portātus, -a, -um

Conjugate the entire verb *amō*, *active* and *passive*, as given in (474, 475).

## 256.

## VOCABULARY.

Review verbs 1-41 (450).

**257. Perfect passive participle.**—The perfect passive participle (p. p. p.) is found by changing final *m* of the *first supine* to *s*: *moveō*, *movēre*, *mōvī*, *mōtum*; supine *mōtum*, p. p. p. *mōtus*, -a, -um, *having been moved*. *cōgnōscō*, *cōgnōscere*, *cōgnōvī*, *cōgnitum*; supine *cōgnitum*, p. p. p. *cōgnitus*, *having been found out*.

**258. Adjectives used as substantives.**—The *adjective* in the *masculine plural* is often used as a noun, meaning *men*, *soldiers*, *friends*, etc.; as, *ad eōs*, *to those (men)*; *primōrum*, *of the foremost (men)*; *reliquī*, *the rest*; *ad suōs*, *to his or their own (friends)*;—so *noster* in the *masculine plural*: *nostrī*, *our men*.

The *adjective* in the *neuter plural*, as a substantive, means *things* or *possessions*; as, *ea*, *those (things)*; *haec*, *these (things)*; *sua omnia*, *all his or their (possessions)*.

## 259.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Multa Gallōrum castella ā nostrīs quī conlocātī erant in hibernīs in Galliā occupāta sunt. 2. Proelium ab eīs quōs Caesar in Sēquanōrum fīnīs mīsīt redintegrātum est. 3. Lēgātī Rōmānī in extrēmās Galliae partēs vērunt ut ea quae hostēs facerent<sup>1</sup> cōgnōscerent.

<sup>1</sup> *were doing*: for mood of *facerent* see (276)—‘subjunctive by attraction.’

4. Omnia quae erant idōnea bellō ā Belgīs comparāta erant, quod adventum nostrī exercitūs exspectābant. 5. Eī quibus Galba loca in Galliā ad hiemandum dedit ā Gallīs fortibus facile prōturbātī sunt. 6. Gallī spē<sup>1</sup> pācis faciendae obsidēs dēdent.

II.—1. All who handed over arms and (que) gave hostages were spared by our leaders and called friends of the Roman people. 2. About the middle of the night Caesar will send scouts into those territories, in which the camp of the Germans has been placed, to find out those things which the enemy are doing.<sup>2</sup> 3. The rest of the Gauls (*nom.*) from whom Caesar had received hostages were incited by the enemies of the Roman people. 4. When (*ubi*) the ambassador of the Belgians came into our camp, Caesar ordered him to surrender to the Roman people all the fields on this side of the river Rhine. 5. The Gauls surround their towns with high walls that they may not be overcome by the Romans.

### LESSON XLIX.

#### SECOND CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF DĒLEŌ.

260. The present system of *dēleō* continued in the passive.

Present indicative.	Imperfect indicative.	Future indicative.
<i>am being destroyed.</i>	<i>was being destroyed.</i>	<i>shall be destroyed.</i>
SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. dēleor	dēlēbar	dēlēbor
2. dēlēris (-re)	dēlēbāris (-re)	dēlēberis (-re)
3. dēlētur	dēlēbātur	dēlēbitur
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. dēlēmur	dēlēbāmur	dēlēbimur
2. dēlēminī	dēlēbāminī	dēlēbiminī
3. dēlentur	dēlēbantur	dēlēbuntur

<sup>1</sup> Abl. of cause: *because of their hope.*

<sup>2</sup> *faciant*; see (276).

The *present stem* is **dēlē**, as in the *active*. The *personal endings* are the *same* as in the *corresponding* tenses of the *first-conjugation verb*. Avoid putting in an extra syllable in the second person singular, present indicative; it is **dē-lē-ris**, not **dē-lē-e-ris**.

261. Compare carefully the following tenses:

First conjugation, present subjunctive.		Second conjugation, present indicative.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. porter	portēmur	dēleor	dēlēmur
2. portēris (-re)	portēminī	dēlēris (-re)	dēlēminī
3. portētur	portentur	dēlētur	dēlentur

When the verb ends in **ētur**, **entur**, etc., it is *present subjunctive* in the *first* conjugation, *present indicative* in the *second* conjugation.

262.

#### VOCABULARY.

Verbs 42-48 (450).

sagittārius, sagittārī, <i>mas.</i>	bowman
funditor, funditōris, <i>mas.</i>	slinger
quīnque, <i>indecl. num. adj.</i>	five
circiter, <i>adv.</i>	about
cum, <i>conj.</i>	after
trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductum,	to lead across
pervenīō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum,	to arrive at
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum,	to drive
tum, <i>adv.</i>	then

263. *Cum* + pluperfect subjunctive (203, 359).—*Cum*, *when*, in the sense of ‘*after*,’ takes the pluperfect subjunctive, translated like the *pluperfect indicative*; as,

Cum Caesar in Galliam iter	After Caesar had marched into
fēcisset, multae cīvitātēs ad	Gaul, many states sent am-
eum lēgātōs dē pāce mīsē-	bassadors to him with respect
runt,	to peace

264.

#### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Exercitus noster in Galliā distinētur, nē rēgnūm ā Caesaris hostibus occupētur. 2. Fossae quae oppidum

circumdant corporibus eōrum quī peditum Rōmānōrum impetum nōn sustinuērunt complentur. 3. Cum Caesar eō vēnisset, Rēmī quōrum cīvitātēs proximae Belgīs sunt ad eum principēs lēgātōs, ut eī<sup>1</sup> sua omnia trādant, mittunt. 4. Caesar māgnō numerō cōpiārum fortium collem in quō hostēs sua castra mūniēbant circumdedit lēgātisque, ut in eōs māgnā cum virtūte impetum ācriter facerent, imperāvit.

II.—1. Unless Caesar leads<sup>2</sup> the bowmen and (que) slingers across the bridge and prevents<sup>2</sup> the departure of the enemy, he will not receive the hostages which he had demanded. 2. That state, from (ā) which auxiliaries came so that they might aid our army, will not be attacked by the Roman soldiers. 3. Because the Remi are ready to give hostages and receive him in their towns, Caesar will command the Belgians not to lead the army through that state. 4. After the Remi had surrendered all their (possessions), Caesar ordered them to inhabit that part of Gaul from which he had driven (*expellō*) the bands of the enemy.

## LESSON L.

### SECOND CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF *DĒLEŌ*, CONTINUED.

265. The present system of *dēleō* completed in the passive.

Decline *ūnus*, *duo*, and *trēs* (468).

#### Present subjunctive.

*may be destroyed.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>dēlear</i>	<i>dēleāmur</i>
2. <i>dēleāris (-re)</i>	<i>dēleāminī</i>
3. <i>dēleātur</i>	<i>dēleantur</i>

#### Imperfect subjunctive.

*might be destroyed.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>dēlērer</i>	<i>dēlērēmur</i>
<i>dēlērēris (-re)</i>	<i>dēlērēminī</i>
<i>dēlērētur</i>	<i>dēlērentur</i>

<sup>1</sup> Dative.

<sup>2</sup> Future or future-perfect indicative.

**Imperative.***be thou destroyed, etc.*

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
2. {	dēlēre	dēlēminī
	dēlētor	
3.	dēlētor	dēlentor

**Present infinitive.***dēlēri, to be destroyed***Gerundive.**

dēlendus, -a, -um, (*worthy*) *to be destroyed*

The *stem* is **dēlē**: this completes the *present system* of eight forms based upon **dēlē**.

**266.** Compare carefully the following tenses :

**First conjugation, present indicative, stem *portā*.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1.	portor	portāmur
2.	portāris (-re)	portāminī
3.	portātur	portantur

**Second conjugation, present subjunctive, stem *dēlē*.**

	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
	dēlear	dēleāmur
	dēleāris (-re)	dēleāminī
	dēleātur	dēleantur

Thus when a verb ends in **ātur, antur, etc.**, it is *present indicative* in the *first* conjugation, *present subjunctive* in the *second* conjugation.

**267.****VOCABULARY.****Verbs 49-55 (450).**

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, <i>num. adj.</i>	<i>one</i>
quantus, quanta, quantum, <i>adj.</i>	<i>how great</i>
neque . . . neque, <i>conj.</i>	<i>neither . . . nor</i>
celeriter, <i>adv.</i>	<i>quickly</i>
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, <i>emphatic pron.</i>	<i>he, self</i>
quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum,	<i>to inquire</i>
palūs, palūdis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>swamp</i>
coniungo, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūctum,	<i>to join</i>

**268.****EXERCISES.**

I.—1. Omnēs reliquī Belgae in armīs sunt Germānique quī eis Rhēnum incolunt sē cum hīs coniūnxērunt, nē sua oppida ā nostrīs dēleantur. 2. Cum Germānī suās cōpiās trāns Rhēnum trādūxissent, ibi cōnsēdērunt Gallōsque quī ea loca incolēbant armīs expulērunt. 3. Cum ab hīs

Caesar quaereret quantae cīvitātēs in armīs essent<sup>1</sup> atque quantum exercitum hostēs cōgere possent,<sup>2</sup> haec reperiēbat.

4. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum et hostēs trāns hanc suās cōpiās trādūcere parābant. 5. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est contendērunt.

II.—1. Caesar leads out all the army and prepares to storm the walls so that the town may be destroyed and many weapons may be seized. 2. After Caesar had come into those parts in which he had placed (pōnō) his camp, many states joined themselves with our army so that their children might not be carried into slavery. 3. While Caesar was inquiring of (ab) the scouts with respect to the number of the enemy, ambassadors of the Germans came into our camp and surrendered themselves and (que) all their (possessions) to Caesar (*dative*). 4. After Caesar had driven the enemy out of these boundaries and had received a suitable number of hostages, he led his soldiers back into camp.

## LESSON LI.

### SECOND CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF *DĒLEŌ*, CONTINUED.

**269.** Principal parts of *dēleō* in the passive: *dēleor*, *dēlērī*, *dēlētus sum*.

*For the tense names of these forms, see (249).*

**Perfect system of *dēleō* in the passive.**—*Stem dēlēt.*

#### Perfect indicative.

*have been—was—destroyed.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
1.	dēlētus,	-a,	-um	sum	dēlētī.	ae, -a	sumus
2.	“	“	“	es	“	“	estis
3.	“	“	“	est	“	“	sunt

<sup>1</sup> were.

<sup>2</sup> were able ; for mood in both, see (313), ‘indirect question.’

**Pluperfect indicative.***had been destroyed.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
1.	dēlētus,	-a,	-um	eram	dēlētī,	-ae, -a	erāmus
2.	"	"	"	erās	"	" "	erātis
3.	"	"	"	erat	"	" "	erant

**Future-perfect indicative.***shall have been destroyed.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
1.	dēlētus,	-a,	-um	erō	dēlētī,	-ae, -a	erimus
2.	"	"	"	eris	"	" "	eritis
3.	"	"	"	erit	"	" "	erunt

**Perfect subjunctive.***may have been destroyed.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
1.	dēlētus,	-a,	-um	sim	dēlētī,	-ae, -a	sīmus
2.	"	"	"	sīs	"	" "	sītis
3.	"	"	"	sit	"	" "	sint

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***might have been destroyed.*

SINGULAR.				PLURAL.			
1.	dēlētus,	-a,	-um	essem	dēlētī,	-ae, -a	essēmus
2.	"	"	"	essēs	"	" "	essētis
3.	"	"	"	esset	"	" "	essent

**Perfect infinitive.***dēlētum, -am, -um esse, to have been destroyed***Future infinitive.***dēlētum irī, to be about to be destroyed***Perfect participle.***dēlētus, -a, -um, having been destroyed*

270. Synopsis, present system, passive.—*Present stem* dēlē.

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	dēleor
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	dēlēbar
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	dēlēbor
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	dēlear
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	dēlērer
6. <i>Imperative</i>	dēlēre
7. <i>Present infinitive</i>	dēlērī
8. <i>Gerundive</i>	dēlendus

**Perfect system, passive.**—*Stem* dēlēt, *seen in the perfect participle*, dēlētus.

1. <i>Perfect indicative</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um sum
2. <i>Pluperfect indicative</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um eram
3. <i>Future-perfect indicative</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um erō
4. <i>Perfect subjunctive</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um sim
5. <i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um essem
6. <i>Perfect infinitive</i>	dēlētum, -am, -um esse
7. <i>Future infinitive</i>	dēlētum irī
8. <i>Perfect participle</i>	dēlētus, -a, -um

## 271.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 56–64 (450).

## 272.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Cīvitātēs multae, quod cōpiae superātae erant atque sua oppida ā nostrīs occupāta et dēlēta erant, in fidem Caesaris sē suaque omnia permīsērunt. 2. Caesar, ubi eae cōpiae quās Germānī trāns Rhēnum trādūxerant in summō monte ā nostrīs vīsae sunt, militibus legiōnis primae ut in eās impetum facerent imperāvit. 3. Nisi legiōnēs novae comparābuntur<sup>1</sup> ac castra nostra ex eō locō movēbuntur,<sup>2</sup> imperātōrēs Rōmānī neque in Galliā agrōs lātōs possidēre neque nōmen populī Rōmānī amplificāre poterunt. 4. Caesar suīs peditibus nē inīquō locō proelium

<sup>1</sup> comparābuntur or comparātae erunt; see (223 a, b).

<sup>2</sup> What other form may be used ?

committant mandat. 5. Galba in servitūtem Belgās quōrum oppida frūmentō commeātibusque complentur rediget.

II.—1. While Caesar was enrolling a new legion in that state which had been overcome, the Germans were preparing to make an attack upon him with a large army. 2. After the Aedui had entrusted themselves and (que) all their (possessions) to (in + acc.) the power and protection of the Roman people, Caesar ordered them to settle in farthest Gaul. 3. By preparing<sup>1</sup> a large army and surrounding<sup>1</sup> their towns with new ramparts the enemy were able to cut off (prohibeō) our men from<sup>2</sup> their supplies and withstand the attacks of the Roman legions. 4. Caesar directs his commanders to separate their forces and drive the enemy out of the boundaries of Gaul. 5. When (ubi) the first baggage of our army was seen by those who were concealed in the forests, the leaders of the enemy ordered all their forces to rush forth.

## LESSON LII.

### THIRD CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF PŌNŌ.

#### 273. The present system of *pōnō* in the passive.

Decline *vīs*, *mīlia*, and *īnsigne* (458, 459).

#### Present indicative. Imperfect indicative. Future indicative.

*am being placed.                      was being placed.                      shall be placed.*

SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.	SINGULAR.
1. pōnor	pōnēbar	pōnar
2. pōneris (-re)	pōnēbāris (-re)	pōnēris (-re)
3. pōnitur	pōnēbātur	pōnētur
PLURAL.	PLURAL.	PLURAL.
1. pōnimur	pōnēbāmur	pōnēmur
2. pōniminī	pōnēbāminī	pōnēminī
3. pōnuntur	pōnēbantur	pōnentur

<sup>1</sup> 'Gerundive construction'; see (253).

<sup>2</sup> Abl. without prep. to denote separation; see (221).

Conjugate *mittō*, *cōgō*, and *expellō* in the above tenses. The *present stem* is *pōne*; for change in *stem-vowel*, see (180).

### 274. Table of endings.

PRESENT INDICATIVE.		FUTURE INDICATIVE.	
-or	-imur	-ar	-ēmur
-eris (-re)	-imini	-ēris (-re)	-ēmini
-itur	-untur	-ētur	-entur

A verb ending in *ētur*, *entur*, etc., is *present subjunctive* in the first conjugation, *present indicative* in the second conjugation, *future indicative* in the third conjugation.

### 275.

#### VOCABULARY.

#### Verbs 65-70 (450).

<i>iter facere</i> ,	<i>to march</i>
<i>sēcum</i> = ( <i>cum sē</i> ),	<i>with himself or themselves</i>
<i>poscō</i> (see vocab. for princ. parts),	<i>to demand</i>
<i>repellō</i> “ “ “ “ “	<i>to drive back</i>
<i>aut</i> , <i>conj.</i>	<i>or</i>

**276. Intermediate clauses—mood.**—*Quī* clause: a simple *relative clause*, introducing only a descriptive fact, has its verb in the *indicative*. *Quod* clause: *causal* clauses introduced by *quod*, *quia*, and *quoniam* have the verb in the *indicative*, when the reason given is vouched for by the writer or speaker; *subjunctive*, when the reason is given on the authority of another. These clauses take the verb in the *subjunctive by attraction*, when they form a necessary part of a *subjunctive clause* upon which they depend.

Example of a *relative clause* the verb of which is in the *subjunctive by attraction*:

<i>Nostri in Galliam contendunt</i>	<i>Our men hasten into Gaul to</i>
<i>ut oppidum quod commeātibus armisque compleātur</i>	<i>attack a town which is being</i>
<i>oppūgnent</i> ,	<i>filled with arms and supplies</i>

Here the *verb* in the *relative clause*, *quod . . . compleātur*, which is within an *ut clause* and forms an essential part of it, is *drawn into the subjunctive*.

## 277.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Sī obsidēs Caesarī dabuntur (datī erunt) ā Gallīs, omnēs Germānī ex fīnibus Galliae expellentur. 2. Germānī, cum in prōvinciam nostram et Ītaliā iter facerent, ea impedīmenta quae sēcum nōn portāre poterant cis Rhēnum flūmen reliquērunt. 3. Caesar Sēquanīs finitimisque imperābit nē Rēmōs ā quibus auxilium multum accēperit<sup>1</sup> exagitent. 4. Belgae, ā quibus proelium redintegrātum est cum nostrī sua castra mūnīrent, facile celeriterque ab equitātū fugātī sunt. 5. Spē imperī dēlendī populī Rōmānī, māgnus exercitus ab eīs cīvitatibus quae adventū legiōnum Rōmānārum perterritae sunt cōgitur.

II.—1. Caesar will make peace with those from whom he has received corn and supplies. 2. Because of the courage<sup>2</sup> of our infantry the enemy were alarmed and fled into the nearest fortifications. 3. The Aedui whose forces joined themselves with the rest of the enemy will be quickly defeated (*prōturbō*) and reduced to<sup>3</sup> subjection by Caesar's brave generals. 4. Scouts will be sent forward by Caesar to find out those (things) which are being prepared<sup>4</sup> in the enemy's camp.

<sup>1</sup> Subjunctive by attraction (276); perfect by 'rule of sequence' (135).

<sup>2</sup> Because of the courage: *virtūte*, *abl. of cause*.

<sup>3</sup> in + *acc.*

<sup>4</sup> Why subjunctive? What tense?

## LESSON LIII.

THIRD CONJUGATION. PASSIVE OF PŌNŌ, CONTINUED.

278. The present system of *pōnō* completed in the passive.—*Stem pōne.*

**Present subjunctive.***may be placed.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. pōnar	pōnāmur
2. pōnāris (-re)	pōnāminī
3. pōnātur	pōnantur

**Imperfect subjunctive.***might be placed.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
pōnerer	pōnerēmur
pōnerēris (-re)	pōnerēminī
pōnerētur	pōnerentur

**Imperative.***be thou placed, etc.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
2. { pōnere	pōniminī
{ pōnitor	
3. pōnitor	pōnuntor

**Present infinitive.***pōnī, to be placed***Gerundive.***pōnendus, (worthy) to be placed*

279. To form the *present infinitive passive* of a verb of the *third conjugation*, change *ere* of the present infinitive active to *ī*. *cōgō*: present infinitive *active* *cōgere*, present infinitive *passive* *cōgī*. *mittō*: present infinitive *active* *mittere*, present infinitive *passive* *mittī*. *gerō*: present infinitive *active* *gerere*, present infinitive *passive* *gerī*. When a verb ends in *ātur*, *antur*, etc., it is *present indicative* in the *first conjugation*, *present subjunctive* in the *other conjugations*.

## 280.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 71-75 (450).

dexter, dextra, dextrum, <i>adj.</i>	<i>right</i>
ā dextrō cornū,	<i>on the right wing</i>
paene, <i>adv.</i>	<i>almost</i>
aut . . . aut, <i>conj.</i>	<i>either . . . or</i>
tōtus, tōta, tōtum, <i>adj.</i>	<i>entire</i> [to retreat
sē recipere,	<i>to betake one's self or</i>

## 281. Synopsis of the present system, passive, of pōnō.—

*Present stem pōne.*

1. <i>Present indicative</i>	pōnor
2. <i>Imperfect indicative</i>	pōnēbar
3. <i>Future indicative</i>	pōnar
4. <i>Present subjunctive</i>	pōnar
5. <i>Imperfect subjunctive</i>	pōnerer
6. <i>Imperative</i>	pōnere
7. <i>Present infinitive</i>	pōnī
8. <i>Gerundive</i>	pōnendus

Give synopsis, *present system, passive*, of dūcō, mittō, dēdō, and incendō.

## 282. Comparative table of endings.

*First and second conjugations.*

## FUTURE INDICATIVE.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. -bō	-bimus	-bor	-bimur
2. -bis	-bitis	-beris (-re)	-biminī
3. -bit	-bunt	-bitur	-buntur

*Third and fourth conjugations.*

## FUTURE INDICATIVE.

<i>Active.</i>		<i>Passive.</i>	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. -am	-ēmus	-ar	-ēmur
2. -ēs	-ētis	-ēris (-re)	-ēminī
3. -et	-ent	-ētur	-entur

## 283.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Cum Caesar hōc bellum cōnfēcisset, inter eās cīvitātēs quās pepulerat (*pellō*) in hibernīs omnīs cohortēs prīmae atque secundae legiōnis posuit. 2. Cum imperātōrēs hostium aut vulnerātī aut superātī essent, omnēs mīlitēs perterritī sunt et ad Germānōs, finitimōs, sē recēpērunt. 3. Caesar cum omnibus cōpiīs in Belgārum finīs iter facit ut hostēs expellantur aut in servitūtem redigantur; adventū hōrum hostēs in oppidum māgnū quod mūrō altō mūnīverant sē recipiunt. 4. Mūnitiōnēs multae ā Gallīs in suīs finibus exstruentur nē sua castella aedificiaque adventū (*upon the arrival*) exercitūs nostrī incendantur.

II.—1. After all the cavalry had been summoned out of camp, Caesar's forces surrounded the enemy's winter-quarters on all sides in order that they might not be able to depart in the night. 2. Brave soldiers are placed (*pōnō*) in the foremost line,<sup>1</sup> because the enemy have a great multitude of men and will make a fierce<sup>2</sup> attack upon our men. 3. While Caesar was marching thither, scouts were sent forward by the Gauls to find out the plans of our commanders and to cut off our men from supplies.

## LESSON LIV.

## PASSIVE OF PŌNŌ, CONTINUED. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

284. Principal parts of *pōnō*.

<i>Active,</i>	<i>pōnō</i>	<i>pōnere</i>	<i>posuī</i>	<i>positum</i>
<i>Passive,</i>	<i>pōnor</i>	<i>pōnī</i>	<i>positus</i>	<i>sum</i>

<sup>1</sup> in prīmā acie.<sup>2</sup> Adverb.

**Synopsis of the perfect system, passive, of *pōnō*.—Stem *posit*, seen in the perfect passive participle, *positus*.**

1. Perfect indicative	<i>positus</i> , -a, -um <i>sum</i>
2. Pluperfect indicative	<i>positus</i> , -a, -um <i>eram</i>
3. Future-perfect indicative	<i>positus</i> , -a, -um <i>erō</i>
4. Perfect subjunctive	<i>positus</i> , -a, -um <i>sim</i>
5. Pluperfect subjunctive	<i>positus</i> , -a, -um <i>essem</i>
6. Perfect infinitive	<i>positum</i> , -am, -um <i>esse</i>
7. Future infinitive	<i>positum</i> <i>īrī</i>
8. Perfect participle	<i>positus</i> , -a, -um

Conjugate the entire verb *pōnō* in both voices, as given in (478, 479).

285.

# VOCABULARY.

Verbs 76–86 (450).

<i>inde</i> , adv.	<i>thence</i> or <i>then</i>
<i>nam</i> , conj.	<i>for</i>
<i>proximē</i> , adv.	<i>lately</i>
<i>expeditus</i> , -a, -um, adj.	<i>light-armed</i>
<i>cōnsuetūdō</i> , -dinis, fem.	<i>custom</i> or <i>habit</i>

286. Adjectives with the genitive in *īus* and the dative in *ī*.—The following adjectives (o-stems) have the *genitive* singular in *īus* and the *dative* in *ī*:

<i>ūnus</i> , one	<i>alius</i> , other or another
<i>ūllus</i> , any	<i>uter</i> , which (of two)
<i>nūllus</i> , no, none	<i>neuter</i> , neither
<i>sōlus</i> , alone, only	<i>alter</i> , the other (of two)
<i>tōtus</i> , whole, entire	

These words are declined regularly in the plural, like *altus*. The vocative is lacking in all save *sōlus* and *ūnus*.

The *i* of the genitive singular ending *īus* is long except in *alterius*.

*Tōtus* is thus declined in the singular:

	Mas.	Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	<i>tōtus</i>	<i>tōta</i>	<i>tōtum</i>
Gen.	<i>tōtīus</i>	<i>tōtīus</i>	<i>tōtīus</i>
Dat.	<i>tōtī</i>	<i>tōtī</i>	<i>tōtī</i>
Acc.	<i>tōtum</i>	<i>tōtam</i>	<i>tōtum</i>
Abbl.	<i>tōtō</i>	<i>tōtā</i>	<i>tōtō</i>

**287. Ablative absolute.**—A noun or pronoun in the *ablative* may be used with a *participle* in agreement to define the *time* or *circumstances* of an action; such a phrase is called an *ablative absolute* and serves in the place of a *subordinate clause*.

*Examples of the ablative absolute:*

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Pāce factā,   | <i>Peace having been made</i>   |
| 2. Obsidibus datīs,  | <i>Hostages having been given</i>   |
| 3. Obsidibus acceptīs Caesar<br>suum exercitum ex hos-<br>tium fīnibus ēdūxit, | <i>Hostages having been received,<br/>Caesar led his army out of<br/>the enemies' territories</i> |

**288.** The noun and participle in the *ablative absolute* may each have one or more modifiers; as,

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| Tōtō exercitū in aciē instrūc-<br>tō, Caesar signum proeliī<br>dedit, | <i>The whole army having been<br/>drawn up in line of battle,<br/>Caesar gave the signal for<br/>battle</i> |
|---|---|

**Tōtō**, the adjective, limits **exercitū** in the *ablative singular masculine*; the adverbial phrase **in aciē** modifies **instrūctō**; the *ablative absolute* **tōtō . . . instrūctō** represents a subordinate clause *defining the time of the action of the verb dedit*.

In the above *ablative absolute* **exercitū**, the *basis* or *principal word*, takes the participle **instrūctō** into agreement with it; in rendering the *ablative absolute* by a *subordinate clause* the *basis* (noun or pronoun in the *ablative*) becomes the *subject*, and the *participle* a *finite verb*; thus, **exercitū instrūctō**, *when or after the army had been or was drawn up*.

## 289.

## EXERCISE.

1. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs ad cohortandōs milītēs dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. 2. Nostrī propter propīnquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil

<sup>1</sup> That is, *after, when, because* hostages had been received.

iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē<sup>1</sup> quae<sup>2</sup> vidēbantur administrābant. 3. Temporis brevitas et successus hostium magnam hārum rērum partem impediēbat; sed nostrī, quod superiōribus (*former*) proeliis exercitātī erant, nōn minus (*less*) commodē sibi<sup>3</sup> praescribere quam (*than*) ab aliīs docērī poterant.

## LESSON LV.

### THIRD CONJUGATION PASSIVE, THE 'IŌ' VERB— ACCIPIŌ.

**290.** Principal parts of *accipiō* in the passive: *accipior, accipī, acceptus sum.*

Passive voice of *accipiō*, *I receive*.—The present stem *accipe* is found by dropping *re* from the present infinitive active, *accipere*. The perfect stem *accēp* is not used in the passive. In the passive of *accipiō* eight forms are based upon the present stem *accipe*, eight upon the supine stem *accept* (*seen in the perfect passive participle, acceptus*). For the occurrence and omission of *i* in the 'iō' verbs, see (213) and foot-note.

The second person singular of the present indicative is pronounced, *not ac-ci-pi-e-ris*, but *ac-ci'-pe-ris*.

**291.** Present system, passive, of *accipiō*.—*Stem accipe.*

Present indicative.		Imperfect indicative.
<i>am being received.</i>		<i>was being received.</i>
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.
1. accipior	accipimur	accipiēbar
2. acciperis (-re)	accipiminī	accipiēbāris (-re)
3. accipitur	accipiuntur	accipiēbātur, etc.

<sup>1</sup> *Of themselves.*

<sup>2</sup> Nominative plural neuter, subject of *vidēbantur*, *seemed best*; the antecedent of *quae* = *ea*, understood object of *administrābant*.

<sup>3</sup> Dative with the compound verb *praescribere*; see (337).

**Future indicative.***shall be received.*

## SINGULAR.

1. accipiar
2. accipiēris (-re)
3. accipiētur, etc.

**Present subjunctive.***may be received.*

## SINGULAR.

- accipiar
- accipiāris (-re)
- accipiātur, etc.

**Imperfect subjunctive.***might be received.*

## SINGULAR.

1. acciperer
2. acciperēris (-re)
3. acciperētur, etc.

**Imperative.***be thou received, etc.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

- |      |           |             |
|------|-----------|-------------|
| 2. { | accipere  | accipimī    |
| 2. { | accipitor |             |
| 3.   | accipitor | accipiuntor |

**Present infinitive.***accipī, to be received***Gerundive.***accipiendus, -a, -um, (worthy) to be received*

**292. Synopsis of the perfect system.**—*Stem accept, seen in the perfect passive participle, acceptus.*

- |                           |                            |
|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. acceptus, -a, -um sum  | 5. acceptus, -a, -um essem |
| 2. acceptus, -a, -um eram | 6. acceptum, -am, -um esse |
| 3. acceptus, -a, -um erō  | 7. acceptum īrī            |
| 4. acceptus, -a, -um sim  | 8. acceptus, -a, -um       |

**293.****VOCABULARY.****Verbs 87-96 (450).***ubi, adv.**aciēs, aciēī, fem.**sub, prep. with abl. and acc.**sub monte,**equester, equestris, equestre, adj.**proeliō equestrī,**summus mōns,**where**line of battle, army**under**at the foot of the mountain**of cavalry**in a cavalry skirmish**the top of the mountain*

## 294.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Hōc bellō factō hostēs castra prēmōvērunt ac sub monte in Rēmōrum fīnibus eis Rhēnum cōnsēdērunt (*encamped*, from *consido*). 2. Omnibus aedificiīs vicīsque in Galliā incēnsīs Caesar trāns flūmen contendit ut hostium cōpiās frūmentō commeātibusque prohibēret. 3. Fortēs peditēs legiōnis primāe in Galliam ā Caesare missī sunt ut exercitum cōgerent et castra in eīs cīvitatibus quae Caesarī sē suaque omnia dēdidissent pōnerent. 4. Cohortibus reliquīs ē castrīs ēductīs Galba suis ducibus ut aciem triplicem instruerent atque ā dextrō cornū in hostēs impetum facerent, imperāvit. 5. Triplicī aciē factā imperātōrēs nostrī ē castrīs suōs peditēs ēdūxērunt atque at eum locum, ubi hostium explorātōrēs viderant, properāvērunt. 6. Quod hostēs in castrīs quae sub monte salutis causā posuerant sē continēbant neque peditēs ad proelium ēdūcēbant, Caesar Galbae ut in aciē equitātum omnem instrueret mandāvit et ipse suō mōre ad portās hostium castrōrum peditēs fortīs dūxit.

II.—1. After their fields had been laid waste,<sup>1</sup> the enemy sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask for peace. 2. When the camp had been surrounded<sup>2</sup> on all sides, Caesar commanded the Remi to give his (men) corn and supplies. 3. If the enemy surrender<sup>3</sup> hostages, Caesar will command his leaders not to destroy the town into which they carried<sup>4</sup> all their arms.

<sup>1</sup> Two ways : by *ablative absolute* and by a *cum clause*.

<sup>2</sup> By *ablative absolute* and the *ubi clause*.

<sup>3</sup> See (223).

<sup>4</sup> Mood ? (276), 'intermediate clauses.' Tense ? (135).

## LESSON LVI.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION PASSIVE. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

295. Principal parts of *mūniō*, *I fortify*.

<i>Active,</i>	<b>mūniō</b>	<b>mūnīre</b>	<b>mūnīvī</b>	<b>mūnītum</b>
<i>Passive,</i>	<b>mūnior</b>	<b>mūnīrī</b>	<b>mūnītus</b>	<b>sum</b>

In the *passive two stems* are used: **mūnī** and **mūnīt**, upon each of which eight forms are based.

**Present system of *mūniō* in the passive.**—*Present stem mūnī.* For the tense forms complete, see (483).

**Present indicative.***am being fortified.*

## SINGULAR.

1. **mūnior**2. **mūnīris (-re)**3. **mūnītur**

## PLURAL.

**mūnīmur****mūnīminī****mūniuntur****Present subjunctive.***may be fortified.*

## SINGULAR.

**mūniar****mūniāris (-re)****mūniātur, etc.****Imperfect indicative.***was being fortified.*

## SINGULAR.

1. **mūniēbar**2. **mūniēbāris (-re), etc.****Imperfect subjunctive.***might be fortified.*

## SINGULAR.

**mūnīrer****mūnīrēris (-re), etc.****Future indicative.***shall be fortified.*

## SINGULAR.

1. **mūniar**2. **mūniēris (-re)**3. **mūniētur, etc.****Imperative.****mūnīre**, *be thou fortified***mūnītor**, *thou shalt be fortified,**etc.***Present infinitive.****mūnīrī**, *to be fortified*

## Gerundive.

mūniendus, -a, -um, (*worthy*) to be fortified

296. Synopsis of the perfect system, passive.—*Stem mūnīt.*

1. <i>Perfect indicative</i>	mūnītus, -a, -um sum
2. <i>Pluperfect indicative</i>	mūnītus, -a, -um eram
3. <i>Future-perfect indicative</i>	mūnītus, -a, -um erō
4. <i>Perfect subjunctive</i>	mūnītus, -a, -um sim
5. <i>Pluperfect subjunctive</i>	mūnītus, -a, -um essem
6. <i>Perfect infinitive</i>	mūnītum, -am, -um esse
7. <i>Future infinitive</i>	mūnītum irī
8. <i>Perfect participle</i>	mūnītus, -a, -um

Conjugate *each tense* of cōnsentiō in both voices; repeat mūniō entire as given in (482, 483).

## 297.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 97–106 (450).

tumultus, -ūs, <i>mas.</i>	<i>uproar</i>
īnsīdiae, -ārum, <i>fem.</i>	<i>ambush</i>
lūx, lūcis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>light</i>
prīmā lūce,	<i>at early dawn</i>
lēgātus, -ī, <i>mas.</i>	<i>lieutenant</i>
prīmō, <i>adv.</i>	<i>at first</i>

298. Comparison of adjectives.—There are three degrees of comparison: the *positive*, *comparative*, and *superlative*. The *comparative* is regularly formed by adding *ior* (*masculine* and *feminine*) and *ius* (*neuter*) to the *stem* of the positive, which loses its final vowel; the *superlative* is formed by adding *issimus*, -a, -um, to the *stem* of the positive. Adjectives of the *first* and *second* declensions, like nouns, form the *stem* in *o* or *a*. For the stem of *altus*, *altum* (*alto*), see (18); for the stem of *alta* (*alta*), see (2). Third-declension adjectives, like nouns, are *vowel* or *consonant stems*; *fortis* (*stem forti*), see *collis* (131); *potēns* (*stem potent*), see *miles* (113) and *pūgnāns* (467).

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
altus, -a, -um	altior, -ior, -ius	altissimus, -a, -um
fortis, -is, -e	fortior, -ior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
potēns, -ēns, -ēns	potentior, -ior, -ius	potentissimus, -a, -um

The meanings of the above are:

altus, <i>tall</i>	altior, <i>taller</i>	altissimus, <i>tallest or very tall</i>
fortis, <i>brave</i>	fortior, <i>braver</i>	fortissimus, <i>bravest or very brave</i>
potēns, <i>powerful</i>	potentior, <i>more powerful</i>	potentissimus, <i>most or very powerful</i>

## 299.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Eā rē cōstitutā hostēs secundā vigiliā tumultū māgnō ē castrīs contendērunt et in extrēmās Galliae partēs, ubi exercitūs nostrī adventum nōn timuērunt, fūgērunt. 2. Hāc rē ab explōrātōribus cōgnitā Caesar primā lūce equitātum omnem ut in novissimum agmen hostium impetum faceret praemisit. 3. Quod vicī omnēs ā nostrīs incēnsī erant, Sēquanī in Aeduōrum fīnis sē recēpērunt, ubi in amīcitiam acceptī sunt agrōsque multōs possēdērunt. 4. Castra sub monte ab hostibus posita sunt ac prō mūnitiōnibus aciēs instrūcta est, nē nostrī in eōs impetum facere possent, cum fīnitimōrum lēgātōs acciperent. 5. Caesar, ubi hostium fugam audīvit (*heard of*), in castra peditēs equitātumque redūxit et, quod insidiās timēbat, iussit suōs nōn eō diē hostēs subsequī.

II.—1. The enemy at first fought (*contendō*) in a cavalry skirmish; then (*inde*), after our cavalry had been driven back, they suddenly led out their infantry which had been concealed in the forests next to the river. 2. After Caesar had determined (*cōstituō*) to spare the rest of the enemy, towns were given to them in Gaul and their neighbours were ordered not to make an attack upon them. 3. A triple line of battle having been drawn up, Caesar directs his lieutenants to begin battle on the

right wing and to fight bravely for the sake of their commander.

## LESSON LVII.

### ŌRĀTIŌ OBLĪQUA, OR INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

**300. Irregular verb *eō*, *I go*. Principal parts: *eō*, *īre*, *īvī* (*īv*), *itum*.**

*Learn the indicative mood of *eō* (six tenses), (486).*

**301. Direct and indirect discourse.**—In *direct discourse* (*Ōrātiō rēcta*) the exact words of the speaker or writer are given. In *indirect discourse* (*Ōrātiō oblīqua*) certain forms of words may be altered to suit the point of view of the new speaker, viz.: moods, tenses, persons. The more regular of such changes will be stated. *Indirect discourse* depends upon some verb of *saying, knowing, thinking, perceiving*, etc., the verb of the *main (declarative) clause* being put in the *infinitive* with its *subject* in the *accusative*, the verb of the *subordinate clause* becoming *subjunctive*.

**302. Statement in indirect discourse.**—In the following sentences, this much of the principle of ‘indirect discourse’ is employed, viz.: *verbs of saying, thinking*, etc., are followed by the *accusative + infinitive*, to describe a *fact*. [See (392), ‘mood in indirect discourse.’]

The *infinitive* in *indirect discourse*, though representing a *finite verb* of *direct discourse*, does not admit of *number* and *person*.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Caesar dīcit lēgātum discēdere,      | <i>Caesar says that the ambassador is departing [the ambassador to depart]</i> |
| 2. Labiēnus existimat hostīs discēdere, | <i>Labiēnus thinks that the enemy are departing [the enemy to depart]</i>      |

The infinitive *discēdere*, with no form to distinguish *number*, has a *singular subject* in (1) and a *plural subject* in (2): before the accusative and infinitive supply (in translation) '*that*,' for which the Latin *has no word* in the sense of the English idiom, and change the *accusative subject* to the *nominative*, making the *infinitive a finite (declarative) verb*.

3. Caesar vīdit lēgātōs pācem    Caesar saw that the ambassa-  
petere,                                    dors were seeking peace

*Were seeking* = *petere*, *present infinitive*. The *time* of the action of the verb *petere* is *present* relative to the *time* of the action of the verb *vīdit*; that is, the action (of seeking) *was going on* at the *time* when Caesar *saw* the ambassadors, hence the *present infinitive petere* represents time *relatively present* with respect to the time of the verb of seeing (*vīdit*) upon which it depends.

## 303.

## VOCABULARY.

opus, operis, <i>neut.</i>	<i>work</i>
interim, <i>adv.</i>	<i>meanwhile</i>
item, <i>adv.</i>	<i>likewise</i>
cursus, -ūs, <i>mas.</i>	<i>speed</i>
inter sē,	<i>to one another</i>
inter sē dare,	<i>to exchange</i>
opportūnus, -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>convenient</i>
Labiēnus, -ī, <i>mas.</i>	<i>Labienus</i>
citerior, -ior, -ius, <i>adj.</i>	<i>hither, nearer</i>
superior, -ior, -ius, <i>adj.</i>	<i>former, higher</i>
ex superiōre locō,	<i>from a higher place</i>

## 304.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Primā legiōne quam proximē cōscripserat in castrīs relictā Caesar prō castrīs in aciē quīnque legiōnēs reliquās instrūxit. 2. Caesar Belgās contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare audit. 3. Caesar, ubi hostēs in legiōnem primam impetum facere vīdit, ex castrīs exercitum omnem cōdūxit. 4. Galba, cum Belgās in fidem potestātemque populī Rōmānī sē suaque

omnia permittere vīdisset, iussit Gallōs (*accusative subject*) frūmentō commeātibusque Belgās invāre et in Ītaliā exercitum tōtū redūxit. 5. Caesar sub monte altissimō proeliō locum dēlēgit, nē hostēs, cum aciem suam īstrūxisset, ab latere in legiōnēs Rōmānās impetum facere possent.

II.—1. The commander sees that the enemy are collecting all their bands into one place and are fortifying a camp. 2. When Caesar saw that the Germans were joining (*present*) themselves with these and were cutting off Galba's soldiers from supplies, he himself at once led his army thither. 3. While Caesar was collecting corn and supplies for the entire army, he saw that the Germans were leading (*present*) cavalry across the river. 4. When peace had been made, Caesar placed the legions in winter-quarters among the Belgians who were the bravest of all the Gauls.

## LESSON LVIII.

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE, CONTINUED.

305. Learn the remainder of the verb *eō* (486).

The perfect infinitive in indirect discourse.—The *perfect infinitive* shows time *absolutely past*, that is, time *completed* in the past.

The *present infinitive* denotes time *contemporaneous*, the *perfect infinitive* time *antecedent*.

1. Caesar cōgnōscit lēgātum iisse, Caesar finds out that the ambassador has gone (action finished before he finds it out)

2. Caesar cōgnōvit hostīs dis- Caesar found out that the  
cessisse, enemy had departed (action  
completed before he found it  
out)

**306. Subordinate clause in indirect discourse.**—After verbs of *saying, thinking, hearing, etc.*, the verb of the principal clause is put in the infinitive, *that of the subordinate clause in the subjunctive.*

1. Caesar intellegit Germānōs Caesar learns that the Germans  
exagitāre Belgās quī cis are harassing the Belgians  
Rhēnum incolant, who live on this side of the  
Rhine
2. Explōrātōrēs nūntiāvērunt Scouts announced that the  
Sēquanōs quōs nostrī Sequani whom our men had  
pepulissent cum omnibus defeated were departing with  
impedimentīs discēdere, all their baggage

In (1) *incolant* is *present* subjunctive, denoting time *contemporaneous* relative to the *time (tense)* of *intellegit*; see 'rule of sequence' (135). In (2) *pepulissent* (from *pellō*), the *pluperfect*, denotes time *antecedent (completed)* with reference to the *time (tense)* of *nūntiāvērunt*.

## 307.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 107–116 (450).

sinister, -tra, -trum, <i>adj.</i>	left
ab sinistrā parte,	on the left side
ipse, -a, -um, <i>emphatic pron.</i>	he, self
trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum,	to cross
senātus, -ūs, <i>mas.</i>	senate
septimus, -a, -um, <i>num. adj.</i>	seventh

**308. Adjectives ending in *er*.**—Adjectives in *er* form the *superlative* by adding *rimus* to the nominative singular masculine of the *positive*. The comparative is *regular*.

miser, -era, -erum,	miserior, -ior, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um
<i>wretched</i>		
ācer, ācris, ācre,	ācrior, -ior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
<i>sharp</i>		

## 309.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Hostēs, ubi nostrōs proeliō equestri ā dextrō cornū contendere vident, celeritāte māgnā in oppidum sē recipiunt atque oppidō undique mūnītō ad<sup>1</sup> impetum nostrōrum sustinendum parant. 2. Hīs rēbus ab explōrātōribus cōgnītīs aciēs triplex prō castrīs instrūcta est et omnēs cōpiæ nostræ ēductæ sunt; sed, quod hostēs flūmen trānsire et in suōs finīs revertī (*were returning*) vīdit, Caesar in eōs impetum nōn fēcīt ac cōpiās in castra redūxit. 3. Legiōne novā in citeriōre Galliā cōnscriptā locō idōneō castrīs dēlectō Caesar ipse cum secundā legiōne per agrōs Aedūōrum contendit et prō oppidō hostium cōpiās triplici aciē instrūxit.

II.—1. The chiefs of the Aedui will go into the territories of the Sequani to exchange hostages and cut off our men from supplies which<sup>2</sup> are being sent into our camp by the Remi. 2. After Caesar had seen (that) the enemy were leading a part of their forces across the bridge and were leaving a part on this side of the river, he determined to attack that part which had not yet crossed the river. 3. On account of the large number and the courage of the enemy the bravest soldiers are drawn up in the foremost (*prīmus*) line of battle by Caesar, in order that the enemy may not surround and take (*capiō*) our camp.

<sup>1</sup> Ad + gerundive, 'to withstand.'

<sup>2</sup> Intermediate clause, subjunctive by *attraction*; see (276).

## LESSON LIX.

## RELATIVE OF PURPOSE. INDIRECT QUESTION.

310. Learn the entire passive of *faciō*, *I do or make* (493).

Principal parts :

Active,	faciō	facere	fēcī	factum
Passive,	fīō	fieri	factus	sum

311. Relative clause of purpose.—When *quī* = *ut* is (*so that he*, etc.) or *ut eī* (*so that they*, etc.), the verb in the relative clause is put in the *subjunctive* to denote *affirmative purpose*. The antecedent of the relative is expressed or implied in the main clause.

1. Mittunt lēgātum quī pācem    They send an ambassador to  
petat,<sup>1</sup>    ask for peace
2. Lēgātī vērērunt quī obsidēs    Ambassadors came to surrender  
dēderent,    hostages

Apply ‘rule of sequence’ (135).

## 312. VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 117–124 (450).

cōspectus, -ūs, <i>mas.</i>	sight
littera, -ae, <i>fem.</i>	letter (of the alphabet)
litterae, -ārum, <i>fem.</i>	a letter, an epistle
tribūnus, -ī, <i>mas.</i>	tribune
dīversus, -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	different, separate
commūnis, -is, -e, <i>adj.</i>	common
et . . . et, <i>conj.</i>	both . . . and
interior, -ior, -ius, <i>adj.</i>	interior

---

<sup>1</sup> Who may—*so that he may*—ask for peace.

**313. Indirect question.**—See declension of *quis* (465). A *direct question* takes the *indicative*; as,

*Quid (quae) hostēs gerunt?*      *What are the enemy doing?*

An *indirect question*, giving the interrogative (inquiry) in a dependent form, takes the *subjunctive*; as,

Caesar reperit quid (quae)	Caesar finds out what the enemy
hostēs gerant ( <i>sequence</i> ),	are doing
Caesar repperit quid (quae)	Caesar found out what the
hostēs gererent ( <i>sequence</i> ),	enemy were doing
Caesar reperiet quid (quae)	Caesar will find out what the
hostēs gesserint ( <i>sequence</i> ),	enemy did (have done)
Caesar repperit quid (quae)	Caesar found out what the
hostēs gessissent ( <i>sequence</i> ),	enemy did (had done)

**314. Adjectives in *ilis*.**—Six adjectives in *ilis* form the *superlative* by adding *limus* to the stem stripped of its final vowel; they are: *facilis*, *easy*; *difficilis*, *hard*; *similis* and *dissimilis*, *like* and *unlike*; *gracilis*, *slender*; *humilis*, *low*. *Facilis* is thus compared:

*facilis*, -is, -e      *facilior*, -ior, -ius      *facillimus*, -a, -um

### 315.

### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Caesar hīs litterīs nūntiisque commōtus est et in citeriōre Galliā legiōnēs duās novās cōscripsit atque Pedium lēgātum, quī eās dēdūceret in interiōrem Galliam, mīsīt. 2. Cum Caesar eō vēnisset, Rēmī quī proximī Belgīs sunt ad eum lēgātōs primōs cīvitatīs mīsērunt, quī sē suaque omnia in fidem populī Rōmānī trādere <sup>1</sup> dīcerent. 3. Lēgātī in nostra castra vērērunt, quī sē cum Belgīs reliquīs nōn cōsēnsisse parātōsque esse obsidēs dare et Caesaris imperāta facere dīcerent. 4. Caesar, cum per

<sup>1</sup> In the sense of future time, *would hand over*.

Rēmōrum finēs iter faceret, omnēs reliquōs Gallōs in armīs esse Germānōsque cum hīs coniūrāvisse audīvit.

II.—1. An attack will be made upon the Germans in the sight of Caesar and the entire army, unless they surrender<sup>1</sup> themselves and all their (possessions) to our commanders. 2. The baggage having been left in camp, Caesar at early dawn sent forward scouts to find out those (things) which were being done<sup>2</sup> in the enemies' camp. 3. When the scouts returned and announced that the enemy had moved their camp and were hastening out of Gaul, Caesar commanded the tribunes of the soldiers not to lead their (men) out of camp.

## LESSON LX.

### AGREEMENT OF THE PARTICIPLE.

**316. Use and agreement of the perfect passive participle (p. p. p.).**—A common Latin construction is the *perfect passive participle*, which is used in preference to *relative clauses* or *conjunctions* + *indicative* or *subjunctive*. The perfect passive participle often modifies the *subject* or *object*, agreeing with the same in *gender*, *number*, and *case*.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Dux commōtus discessit,                           | <i>Having been alarmed (= because he was alarmed), the general withdrew</i>                                   |
| 2. Nostrī hostēs circumventōs undique interfēcērunt, | <i>Our men killed the enemy surrounded (= who were surrounded or after they were surrounded) on all sides</i> |

---

<sup>1</sup> Write in two different tenses, explaining the *time-relation*; see (223).

<sup>2</sup> *Intermediate clause*; see (276).

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 3. Caesar in aciē suās cōpiās<br>ē castrīs ēductās instrū-<br>xit,<br>4. Hostēs ( <i>nom.</i> ) omnibus hīs<br>rēbus adductī ( <i>nom.</i> ) ad<br>Caesarem lēgātōs mīsē-<br>runt, | <i>Caesar drew up in line of battle<br/>         his forces (who were, after<br/>         they were) led out of camp<br/>         Influenced (= because they were<br/>         influenced) by all these things,<br/>         the enemy sent ambassadors<br/>         to Caesar</i> |
|--|--|

## 317.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 125-135 (450).

<i>gēns, gentis, fem.</i>	<i>tribe</i>
<i>aestuārium, -ī, neut.</i>	<i>marsh</i>
<i>puerī, -ōrum, mas.</i>	<i>children</i>
<i>nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj.</i>	<i>some</i>
<i>frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj.</i>	<i>of corn</i>
<i>rēs frūmentāria,</i>	<i>supply of corn</i>

## 318. Tenses of the infinitive mood in indirect discourse.

For further treatment of such infinitives, see (301, 302, 305).

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. Explōrātōrēs nūntiant hos-<br>tēs ad nostra castra iter<br>facere,<br>2. Caesar intellēxit Germānōs<br>Rhēnum trānsiisse,<br>3. Caesar crēdit legiōnēs suās<br>Gallōs victūrās esse,<br>4. Galba audīvit hostīs prīmā<br>lūce castra mōtūrōs esse, | <i>Scouts announce that the enemy<br/>         are marching towards our<br/>         camp<br/>         Caesar learned that the Germans<br/>         had crossed the Rhine<br/>         Caesar believes that his legions<br/>         will conquer the Gauls<br/>         Galba heard that the enemy<br/>         would break camp at early<br/>         dawn</i> |
|---|--|

In (1) *iter facere* denotes action *going on at the time* of the action in *nūntiant*; in (2) *trānsiisse* denotes action *completed before the time* of the action in *intellēxit*; in (3) and (4) *victūrās* and *mōtūrōs esse* denote action *which is to occur in the future* at a time *subsequent* to the time of the action in *crēdit* and *audīvit*.

## 319.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Germānī trāns Rhēnum trāductī in interiōre Galliā cōnsēdērunt et agrōs lātissimōs possidēbant. 2. Hostēs Caesarī sē suaque omnia dēdere iūssī,<sup>1</sup> quod sē nostrum exercitum sustinēre nōn posse vīdērunt, ex oppidō statim tēla armaque omnia trādidērunt. 3. Prīncipēs ad Caesarem ab cīvitātē mīssī<sup>2</sup> suam cīvitātem cum reliquīs Gallīs nōn cōnsēnsisse atque parātam<sup>3</sup> esse et (*both*) obsidēs dare et in oppidīs eum accipere dīxērunt. 4. Hōc proeliō factō Caesar intellegit multās cīvitātēs liberōs prīncipum obsidēs mīssūrās esse et exercituī nostrō frūmentum comēātūque datūrās esse. 5. Hīs rēbus commōtus Caesar cum parte septimae legiōnis eīsque cōpiīs quae proximē cōnscrip̄tae erant in summum montem Labiēnum lēgātum, quī hostium adventum expectāret, praemīsīt. 6. Caesar, cum vīdisset hostēs aciem īstruere nostrāsque mūnitiōnēs sine morā oppūgnātūrōs esse, lēgātōs legiōnēs distīnere, ut in hostēs undique impetum ūnō tempore facerent, iussit.

II.—1. Influenced by the power of Caesar, those states into whose boundaries the Roman army was preparing to march determined to seek peace and do the commands of the senate. 2. Alarmed by Caesar's arrival, the Belgians send ambassadors to say<sup>4</sup> (that) they have collected corn and (*que*) supplies for our army and will surrender hostages. 3. When Caesar found out (that) the enemy had collected large forces and were marching into Italy, he immediately led all his legions out of camp.

---

<sup>1</sup> p. p. p. modifies **hostēs**, the *subject* of the sentence.

<sup>2</sup> Modifies the *subject* **prīncipēs**.

<sup>3</sup> *Predicate adjective* limiting **cīvitātem**.

<sup>4</sup> *Not infinitive* in Latin; note the *sequence*.

## LESSON LXI.

## PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES.

**320. Affirmative and negative purpose.**—As previously stated, clauses denoting *affirmative purpose* take **ut + subjunctive**; clauses of *negative purpose*, **nē + subjunctive**.

1. Caesar legiōnēs cōscribit, Caesar enrolls the legions to  
ut Galliam vincat (*affirma- conquer Gaul*  
tive purpose),
2. Gallī māgnās cōpiās coēgē- The Gauls gathered large forces,  
runt, nē ā Caesare pelle- that they might not (lest they  
rentur (*negative purpose*), should) be defeated by Caesar

The *relative clause* may denote *affirmative purpose* (311).

**321. Affirmative and negative result.**—Affirmative result is expressed by **ut + subjunctive**, negative result by **ut . . . nōn + subjunctive**.

1. Nostrī tam fortiter pū- Our men fight so bravely that  
gnant, ut Gallōs expellant (as a result) they drive out  
(*affirmative result*), the Gauls
2. Nostrī in hostīs impetum Our men made so fierce an at-  
tam ācritēr fēcērunt, ut tack upon the enemy, that  
sustinēre diūtius nōn pos- they could not withstand any  
sent (*negative result*—note longer  
the sequence),

## 322.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 136–146 (450).

spīritus, -ūs, <i>mas.</i>	breath, (plur.) arrogance
etiam, <i>adv.</i>	even
māximē, <i>adv.</i>	especially or very much
memoria, -ae, <i>fem.</i>	memory
lātītūdō, -dinis, <i>fem.</i>	width

**323. Distinguish ablative absolute from participle agreeing with the subject or object.**—1. The enemy, *defeated* in many battles, surrendered hostages. In this sentence taken literally, *defeated*, the *past participle passive*, modifying the *subject, enemy*, becomes *pulsī* (*p. p. p.*), *nominative plural*, agreeing with the subject *hostēs*, and the sentence is written: *Hostēs multis proeliis pulsī obsidēs dēdidērunt*. By converting the participle into a *relative clause*, ‘*who had been defeated*,’ it is seen that *defeated* limits and describes the *subject, enemy*. Change the sentence to this form: 2. The enemy having been defeated, Caesar demanded hostages. The phrase ‘*the enemy having been defeated*’ contains an idea equivalent to that expressed by a subordinate clause, such as, ‘*after or because the enemy had been defeated*,’ but the *noun* in such a phrase cannot be the *same* as the *subject* or *object* of the main sentence, is placed in the *ablative case* with the participle *in agreement with it*, and such a phrase, called the *Ablative Absolute*, modifies the verb.

**324.****EXERCISE.**

1. Aeduī sibi tantōs spīritūs sūmēbant ut Caesar contrā eōs suum exercitum dūcere cōstitueret. 2. Imperātōrēs nostrī tam multās cīvitātēs populērunt ut in Galliā māximē imperium Rōmānum amplificārent. 3. Germānī ā potentiōribus Rōmānīs multis proeliis repulsī sē ex Galliā cōpiās omnīs mīsisse nūntiāvērunt. 4. Omnibus suis agrīs vāstātīs oppidisque incēnsīs ut commeātibus exercitum nostrum prohibērent, hostēs in extrēmās Galliae partēs sē recēpērunt. 5. Turrēs tantae altitudinis prō mūrīs oppidī ā nostrīs positae sunt ut oppidānī māximē commōtī sē nostrīs ducibus obsidēs datūrōs esse suaque omnia Caesarī trāditūrōs esse nūntiārent. 6. Hōc bellō in Galliā cōnfectō omnēs nostrae cōpiae trāns Rhēnum

trāductae sunt atque impetus in rēgem potentissimum ibi ab omnibus legiōnibus factus est, quod etiam nostrā memoriā Rēmōs, populī Rōmānī amīcōs, māximē vexāverat et oppida multa incenderat.

## LESSON LXII.

### DEPONENT VERB, FIRST CONJUGATION.

**325. The deponent verb *populor*, *I plunder*.**—The deponent verb has *passive forms* with *active meanings*.

*Principal parts*: **populor populārī populātus sum**

Each tense is conjugated *exactly like* the corresponding tenses of **portō** in the *passive*. For conjugation of forms, see (494).

**326. Synopsis of the present system.**—*Present stem, populā.*

- |                |                                 |
|----------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. populor,    | <i>I plunder</i>                |
| 2. populābar,  | <i>was plundering</i>           |
| 3. populābor,  | <i>shall plunder</i>            |
| 4. populer,    | <i>may plunder</i>              |
| 5. populārer,  | <i>might plunder</i>            |
| 6. populāre,   | <i>plunder thou</i>             |
| 7. populārī,   | <i>to plunder</i>               |
| 8. populandus, | <i>(worthy) to be plundered</i> |

To these are added the *active forms*:

- |                |                      |
|----------------|----------------------|
| 9. populāns,   | <i>plundering</i>    |
| 10. populandī, | <i>of plundering</i> |

**327. Synopsis of the perfect system.**—*Supine stem, populāt.*

- |                              |                             |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. populātus, -a, -um sum,   | <i>I plundered</i>          |
| 2. populātus, -a, -um eram,  | <i>had plundered</i>        |
| 3. populātus, -a, -um erō,   | <i>shall have plundered</i> |
| 4. populātus, -a, -um sim,   | <i>may have plundered</i>   |
| 5. populātus, -a, -um essem, | <i>might have plundered</i> |
| 6. populātum, -am, -um esse, | <i>to have plundered</i>    |
| 7. populātus, -a, -um,       | <i>having plundered</i>     |

To these are added *four active forms*:

8. populātum, *to plunder*
9. populātū, *to plunder*
10. populātūrus, -a, -um, *being about to plunder*
11. populātūrum, -am, -um esse, *to be about to plunder*

328. The *future infinitive* populātum iri, corresponding to amātum iri, is not found in the deponent verb; in its place a form like the *future infinitive active* is used (see 11).

The deponent verb has *six active forms*, two based upon the *present stem* (see 9, 10, *present system*); four upon the *supine* or *perfect-participle stem* (see 8, 9, 10, 11, *perfect system*).

## 329.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 147–157 (450).

cum primum, conj.	as soon as
pābulum, -ī, neut.	fodder
negōtium, -ī, neut.	business
negōtium dare,	to employ
certus, -a, -um, adj.	certain
certiōrem facere,	to inform

330. Use of *negōtium dare*, *to employ*.

Negōtium dare, *to employ*, takes the *indirect object* in the *dative*, denoting the person or persons employed. Like imperō and mandō it is followed by a *subjunctive clause* to denote what one is employed to do, the *subjunctive* verb being translated by the *present infinitive*; the rule of sequence prevails in the choice of tense.

1. Explōrātōribus negōtium    *He employs scouts to find out*  
    dat, ut hostium cōnsilia    *the plans of the enemy*  
    cōgnōscant,
2. Gallīs negōtium dedit, ut    *He employed the Gauls to cut*  
    pontem interscinderent,    *down the bridge*

## 331.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Castrīs mūnītīs et rē frūmentāriā comparātā Caesar Sēquanīs negōtium dedit, ut in Belgārum finēs īrent atque ea

quae hostēs facerent cōgnōscerent. 2. Caesar, cum cōpiās in triplici aciē prō castrīs instrūxisset, omnēs suōs ut ācriter in hostēs impetum faciant cohortātur et ipse signō datō ā dextrō cornū proelium committit. 3. Hāc rē statim ab explorātōribus cōgnitā omnibus cohortibus primā lūce ēductīs ac prō castrīs instrūctīs Caesar omnem equitātum, quī in novissimum agmen hostium impetum faceret, praemisit, atque T. Labiēnum cum quīnque cohortibus subsequi iussit. 4. Proelium ā dextrō cornū tam ācriter gestum est, ut equitātus<sup>1</sup> hostium sub monte instrūctus primō nostrōrum impetū<sup>2</sup> fugā salūtem peteret. 5. Civitātēs Rēmōrum et Aeduōrum multīs proeliīs repulsae<sup>3</sup> ad Caesarem suōs primōs, quī sibi pācem salūtemque peterent, misērunt.

II.—1. When this war was finished, Caesar ordered the remaining states to give a supply of corn to those forces for which he had chosen winter-quarters in Gaul. 2. Because the royal power (*plural of rēgnum*) in Gaul was seized by the more powerful, who had many opportunities for inciting (*ad + gerundive*) men, Caesar led the army thither and ordered hostages to be sent to him. 3. Those whom Caesar employed to plunder the enemies' camp returned in about five days and announced (that) they had not been able to take the redoubts. 4. When scouts announced (that) the enemy were fortifying<sup>4</sup> a camp and would not surrender<sup>5</sup> hostages, Caesar directed his commanders to surround the camp on all sides.

---

<sup>1</sup> Nominative.

<sup>2</sup> *At the first attack.*

<sup>3</sup> p. p. limiting cīvitātēs.

<sup>4</sup> For mood and tense, see (318), 1.

<sup>5</sup> See (318), 4.

## 332.

## REVIEW VOCABULARY.

## LESSONS XLI-LXII.

1. *circiter* (adv.), *about*
2. *dē mediā nocte*, *about midnight*
3. *cum* (conj.), *while* or *after*
4. *post* (prep. with the acc.), *after* or *behind*
5. *paene* (adv.), *almost*
6. *insidiae*, *insidiārum*, *ambush*
7. *que*, *atque* (conj.), *and*
8. *aciēs*, *aciēī* (fem.), *army* or *line of battle*
9. *adventus*, *adventūs* (mas.), *arrival*
10. *pervenio*, *pervenire*, *pervēnī*, *perventum*, *arrive* (at)
11. *spīritus*, *spīritūs* (mas.), *breath*; (in the plur.) *arrogance*
12. *prīmā lūce*, *at early dawn*
13. *prīmō* (adv.), *at first*
14. *sub monte*, *at the foot of the mountain*
15. *auxilia*, *auxiliōrum* (neut.), *auxiliaries*
16. *proelium committere*, *begin battle*
17. *sē recipere*, *betake one's self*
18. *inter* (prep. with the acc.), *between*
19. *et . . . et* (conj.), *both . . . and*
20. *sagittārius*, *sagittārī* (mas.), *bowman*
21. *puerī*, *puerōrum* (mas.), *children*
22. *venio*, *venire*, *vēnī*, *ventum*, *come*
23. *commūnis*, *commūnis*, *commūne* (adj.), *common*
24. *fidēs*, *fideī* (fem.), *confidence*
25. *opportūnus*, *opportūna*, *opportūnum* (adj.), *convenient*
26. *concilium*, *concilī* (neut.), *council of war*
27. *trānseō*, *trānsire*, *trānsīvī* or *transiī*, *trānsitum*, *cross*
28. *cōnsuētūdō*, *cōnsuētūdinis* (fem.), *custom* or *habit*
29. *diēs*, *diēī* (mas.), *day*
30. *pellō*, *pellere*, *populī*, *pulsum*, *drive* or *defeat*
31. *poscō*, *poscere*, *poposcī*, [no supine], *demand*

32. **dīversus, dīversa, dīversum** (adj.), *different*
33. **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum**, *direct or advise*
34. **repellō, repellere, repulī, repulsum**, *drive back*
35. **aut . . . aut** (conj.), *either . . . or*
36. **tōtus, tōta, tōtum** (adj.), *entire*
37. **māximē** (adv.), *especially or very much*
38. **etiam** (conj.), *even*
39. **inter sē obsidēs dare**, *exchange hostages*
40. **quīnque** (indeclin. num. adj.), *five*
41. **longē** (adv.), *far*
42. **vadum, vadī** (neut.), *ford*
43. **superior, superior, superius** (adj.), *former or higher*
44. **mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītum**, *fortify*
45. **ē superiōre locō**, *from a higher place*
46. **eō, īre, īvī or iī, itum**, *go*
47. **dēfēnsiō, dēfēnsiōnis** (fem.), *defence*
48. **contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum**, *hasten*
49. **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum**, *hear*
50. **is, ea, id** (personal pron. third person), *he or that*
51. **ipse, ipsa, ipsum** (intensive pron.), *he or self*
52. **sē** (reflexive pron. third person), *himself or themselves*
53. **impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impedītum**, *hinder*
54. **citerior, citerior, citerius** (adj.), *hither*
55. **spēs, speī** (fem.), *hope*
56. **quantus, -a, -um** (adj.), *how great or how many*
57. **prōtinus** (adv.), *immediately*
58. **(in) proeliō equestri**, *in a cavalry skirmish*
59. **interior, interior, interius** (adj.), *interior*
60. **quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum**, *inquire*
61. **coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūctum**, *join*
62. **Labiēnus, Labiēnī** (mas.), *Labienu*
63. **proximē** (adv.), *lately*
64. **trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductum**, *lead across*
65. **sinister, sinistra, sinistrum** (adj.), *left*
66. **littera, litterae** (fem.), *letter*
67. **lēgātus, lēgātī** (mas.), *lieutenant*
68. **lūx, lūcis** (fem.), *light*
69. **expeditus, expedita, expeditum** (adj.), *light-armed*

70. *item* (adv.), *likewise*
71. *vulgō* (abl. as adv.), *commonly* or *generally*
72. *iter, itineris* (neut.), *march*
73. *iter facere, to march*
74. *aestuārium, aestuārī* (neut.), *marsh*
75. *interim* (adv.), *meanwhile*
76. *memoria, memoriae* (fem.), *memory*
77. *medius, media, medium* (adj.), *middle of*
78. *propīnquitās, propīnquitātis* (fem.), *nearness*
79. *neque . . . neque* (conj.), *neither . . . nor*
80. *inde* (adv.), *after that, thence* or *then*
81. *equester, equestris, equestre* (adj.), *of cavalry*
82. *frūmentārius, frūmentāria, frūmentārium* (adj.), *of corn* or *grain*
83. *ūnus, ūna, ūnum* (num. adj.), *one*
84. *ā sinistrā parte, on the left side*
85. *ā dextrō cornū, on the right wing*
86. *in summō colle, on the top of the hill*
87. *Pedius, Pedī* (mas.), *Pedius*
88. *populor, populārī, populātus sum, plunder*
89. *potēns, potēns, potēns* (adj.), *powerful*
90. *celeriter* (adv.), *quickly*
91. *dexter, dextra, dextrum* (adj.), *right*
92. *senātus, senātūs* (mas.), *senate*
93. *septimus, septima, septimum* (num. adj.), *seventh*
94. *exiguitās, exiguitātis* (fem.), *shortness*
95. *cōspectus, cōspectūs* (mas.), *sight*
96. *funditor, funditōris* (mas.), *slinger*
97. *nōnnūllus, -a, -um* (adj.), *some*, (plur. as noun)
98. *cursus, cursūs* (mas.), *speed*
99. *rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae* (fem.), *supply of corn* or *grain*
100. *palūs, palūdis* (fem.), *swamp*
101. *suus, sua, suum* (possessive adj. pron. third person), *his* or *their*, with *reflexive* force
102. *tum* (adv.), *then*
103. *rēs, reī* (fem.), *thing*
104. *hīc, haec, hōc* (adj.), *this*

105. *eō* (adv.), *thither* or *there*
106. *ad sē*, *to him*, *to them* (reflexive)
107. *ad eum*, *ad eos*, *to him*, *to them* (not reflexive)
108. *summus*, *summa*, *sumum* (adj.), *top of*, *highest*
109. *gēns*, *gentis* (fem.), *tribe*
110. *tribūnus*, *tribūnī* (mas.), *tribune*
111. *triplex*, *triplex*, *triplex* (adj.), *triple*
112. *duo*, *duae*, *duo*, *two*
113. *sub* (prep. with the *acc.* and *abl.*), *under*
114. *cōnsentiō*, *cōnsentīre*, *cōnsēnsī*, *cōnsēnsūm*, *unite*
115. *nisi* (conj.), *unless*
116. *tumultus*, *tumultūs* (mas.), *uproar*
117. *lātitudō*, *lātitudinis* (fem.), *width*
118. *sēcum*, *with themselves* or *himself*
119. *ubi* (adv.), *where*
120. *opus*, *operis* (neut.), *work*
121. *vulnus*, *vulneris* (neut.), *wound*
122. *eōrum*, *eārum* (possessive pron. third person), *their*,  
without *reflexive* force : compare no. (101)

## LESSON LXIII.

### THE PHRASE *CERTIŌREM FACERE*, *TO INFORM*.

**333. *Certiōrem*, *-ēs facere*.**—When the verb *facere* (any form) is *active*, the adjective *certior* modifies the *direct object*; as,

1. *Lēgātus Galbam certiōrem facit*, *The ambassador informs Galba*  
[*makes Galba more certain*]
2. *Caesar nūntiōs certiōrēs fēcit*, *Caesar informed the mes-*  
*sengers*

As a verb of ‘*saying*,’ *certiōrem facere* is followed by the *accusative* and *infinitive* to describe a *fact*.

1. Caesar lēgātum certiörem      *Caesar informs the ambassador*  
 facit sē pācem factūrum      *that he will make peace*  
 esse
2. Hostēs nostrōs tribūnōs cer-      *The enemy informed our tri-*  
 tiörēs fēcērunt sē suōs      *bunes that they would defend*  
 finīs dēfēnsūrōs esse      *their territories*

## 334.

## VOCABULARY.

Review words 1-62 in 'review vocabulary' (332).

dē imprōvīsō	<i>unexpectedly</i>
regiō -ōnis, fem.	<i>region</i>
diūtius, adv.	<i>longer</i>
passus -ūs, mas.	<i>pace</i>
longē, adv.	<i>far</i>
ad, apud, prep. with the acc.	<i>near</i>
paulisper, adv.	<i>for a little while</i>
quantus, -a, -um, adj.	<i>how great, how many</i>

**335. Conditionals. Less vivid future.**—In the *more vivid* future condition (223) the supposition of a future case is *positive* and *distinct*, the *apodosis* stating what *will be* the result; the mood in both clauses is *indicative*. In a *less vivid* future condition the supposition (in the *protasis*) is in suspense and is *less distinct*, the *apodosis* stating what *would be* the result: in both *protasis* and *apodosis* the *present* (rarely the *perfect*) *subjunctive* is used. The verb in the *protasis* is usually translated 'should' or 'were to,' that in the *apodosis* 'would.' Example of the *less vivid* future condition:

Caesar civitātem cōservet, sī      *Caesar would spare the state, if*  
 hostēs sē dēdant,      *the enemy should surrender*

## 336.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Sī Germānī vicōs agrōsque Aeduōrum populentur, Caesar in eōrum finēs omnibus cōpiīs iter faciat.

2. Cum Caesar eō dē imprōvisō pervēnisset, explorātōrēs eum certiōrem fēcērunt hostēs (*accusative subject*) ē castrīs discessisse et in (*upon*) proximum montem omnēs cōpiās impedimentaue cōgere. 3. Sēquanī erant sōlī quibus Gallī negōtium dedērunt ut ex hīs regiōnibus cōpiās edūcerent atque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrārent. 4. Caesar dīxit sē hostēs cōservātūrum esse neque eōrum oppida dēlētūrum esse, quod prīmōs cīvitātis ad sē lēgātōs, quī peterent pācem, mīsissent (*mīsissent*, why subjunctive?). 5. Caesar ubi vīdit quantō in periculō militēs septimae legiōnis essent,<sup>1</sup> ipse ad eōs cum parte peditum fortissimōrum contendit.

II.—1. Scouts inform our leaders (that) the Aedui will conspire with the rest of the Gauls (*not genitive*) so as to<sup>2</sup> plunder those towns which have been left<sup>3</sup> by our men. 2. Caesar will employ the chiefs of many states to collect fresh cavalry and choose places suitable for winter-quarters. 3. When these facts (*rēs*) had been found out,<sup>4</sup> Caesar commanded his leaders not to lead their men<sup>5</sup> out of camp on that day. 4. At early dawn Caesar drew up in line of battle all the legions, after they were led forth<sup>6</sup> from camp.

## LESSON LXIV.

### COMPOUND VERBS WITH THE DATIVE.

337. Learn the deponent verb *vereor*, second conjugation (495).

**Dative with compound verbs.**—Many verbs compounded

<sup>1</sup> Were, see (313), 'indirect question.'

<sup>2</sup> 'So as to,' etc. = *ut* + subjunctive denoting affirmative purpose.

<sup>3</sup> Subjunctive by attraction, see (276).

<sup>4</sup> Render clause by the *ablative absolute*.

<sup>5</sup> 'Their men' = *suos*: see (258).

<sup>6</sup> 'After they were led forth'—render by one word in Latin (*p. p. p.*).

with *ad*, *ante*, *con*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, *sub*, and *super* take the *dative* of the *indirect object*; if transitive, these verbs may take a *direct object* in the *accusative*.

*Titūrius castellō (dative) prae-* *Titurius was in command of*  
*erat,* *the redoubt*

*Praeficiō, to place (one) in command of*, takes the *person* placed in command *in the accusative*.

*Caesar novīs mūnitiōnibus* *Caesar will place Galba in com-*  
*Galbam praeficiet,* *mand of the new fortifications*

**338. *Certior factus, certiōrēs factī* (passive).**—When the form of *facere* is *passive*, *certior* agrees with the *subject* of the verb, and is placed in the *nominative*; as,

1. *Caesar per explorātōrēs* *Caesar was informed by means*  
*certior fiēbat (factus est),* *of scouts*
2. *Lēgātī certiōrēs fiunt* *The ambassadors are informed*  
*Caesarem pācem nōn fac-* *that Caesar will not make*  
*tūrum esse,* *peace*

## 339.

## VOCABULARY.

Review words 63–122 in ‘review vocabulary’ (332).

<i>passus, -a, -um, adj.</i>	<i>outstretched</i>
<i>manus, -ūs, fem.</i>	<i>hand</i>
<i>plūrimum posse, {</i>	<i>to be very powerful, or</i>
<i>plūrimum valēre, {</i>	<i>to have very great influence</i>
<i>mille,<sup>1</sup> indeclin. num. adj.</i>	<i>a thousand</i>
<i>octō, indeclin. num. adj.</i>	<i>eight</i>

**340. Perfect participle of the deponent.**—The Latin has no perfect *active* participle, but the perfect participle of a *deponent verb* has an *active* meaning; as,

<sup>1</sup> **Mille**, in the singular is an indeclinable numeral adjective. In the plural it is used and declined as a neuter substantive (459).

1. Caesar veritus insidiās in castrīs suōs continuit, *Having feared—fearing—an ambush, Caesar kept his men in camp*
2. Hostēs paulisper ad Caesaris castra morātī sē in suōs finīs recēpērunt, *Having delayed a little while near Caesar's camp, the enemy retreated into their own boundaries*

If the verb is *not* a *deponent*, the clause containing the *perfect active participle* may be recast and expressed by the *ablative absolute* or by a *subordinate clause*. See (372).

## 341.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Hīs rēbus per<sup>1</sup> explorātōrēs cōgnitīs equitātus, cui Caesar Labiēnum praefecerat, ā dextrō cornū instrūctus est atque signō datō impetus in hostium aciēs ab omnibus nostrīs ācritē factus est. 2. Item cum Caesar ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, hostēs ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre ab Rōmānīs pācē petivērunt. 3. Aeduī ab latere nostrōs peditēs fortissimōs circumvenire cōnātī multīs vulneribus acceptīs pulsī sunt ac sē in cīvitatēs proximās recēpērunt. 4. Rēmī quī auxiliō ad nostra castra veniēbant hāc pūgnā nūntiātā coepērunt revertī in suōs finēs ē quibus ā Germānīs expulsī erant. 5. Caesar Sēquanīs nē per nostram prōvinciam in Galliam iter faciant imperat atque sē eōs, sī cōnentur,<sup>2</sup> prohibītūrum esse nūntiat.

II.—1. Scouts are sent forward to find out the plans of the enemy and to inform Caesar with respect to these things. 2. Galba directed the tribunes of the soldiers not to begin battle on the right wing, because he saw (that) the enemy had drawn up their bravest infantry in that place and had<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> per = by means of.<sup>2</sup> If they try (to do so).<sup>3</sup> Pres. infin.

very great power there. 3. An attack will not be made, unless Caesar places Galba in command of the infantry of the first legion. 4. Having attempted to destroy our new fortifications, the brave forces of the enemy were quickly driven back and some, surrounded by our cavalry, were brought (*addūcō*) to Caesar.

## LESSON LXV.

### ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT IN SPACE OR TIME.

342. Learn *utor*, *I use*, deponent of the third conjugation (496).

Accusative of extent in space or time.—Extent in space and duration of time are expressed by the *accusative without a preposition* ; as,

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. Caesar ab oppidō duo mīlia<br>passuum cōnsēdit, | Caesar encamped two thousands<br>of paces (two miles) from the<br>town |
| 2. Hostēs cis Rhēnum multōs<br>diēs morābantur,    | The enemy delayed many days<br>on this side of the Rhine               |

343. Verbs of fearing.—Verbs of fearing are followed by a *subjunctive* clause introduced by *nē* = *that* or *lest* and *ut* = *that not*. Note *sequence of tense* in the following:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. Hostēs verentur nē Caesar<br>ad eōs suum exercitum<br>addūcat, | The enemy fear that Caesar<br>will lead his army against<br>them                |
| 2. Caesar verēbātur ut Aeduī<br>sustinēre Germānōs pos-<br>sent   | Caesar feared that the Aedui<br>would not be able to with-<br>stand the Germans |

## 344.

## VOCABULARY.

## Irregular verbs 1-8 (452).

parvulus, -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>slight</i>
excursiō, -ōnis, <i>fem.</i>	<i>sally</i>
crēber, -bra, -brum, <i>adj.</i>	<i>frequent</i>
vadum, -ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>ford</i>
tegimentum, -ī, <i>neut.</i>	<i>covering</i>
necessārius, -a, -um, <i>adj.</i>	<i>necessary</i>
decimus, -a, -um, <i>num. adj.</i>	<i>tenth</i>
vesper, -perī, <i>mas.</i>	<i>evening</i>
sub vesperum	<i>towards evening</i>
magistrātus, -ūs, <i>mas.</i>	<i>officer</i>

345. Construction with *persuādeō*, *I persuade*.—*Persuādeō* takes its object in the *dative* (like *imperō* and *mandō*) and is followed by an *ut* or *nē* clause, translated by an *infinitive*. Note *sequence* in the following:

1. Belgae Gallīs reliquīs ut  
conīurent contrā populum  
Rōmānum persuādent,  
*The Belgians persuade the re-  
maining Gauls to conspire  
against the Roman people*
2. Caesar Rēmīs persuāsīt nē  
Senōnibus auxilium da-  
rent,  
*Caesar persuaded the Remi not  
to give aid to the Senones*

## 346.

## EXERCISE.

1. Cum Caesar ab potentissimō Rēmōrum oppidō octō mīlia passuum abesset, lēgātī ad eum vērunt, quī pācem peterent obsidēsque trāderent. 2. Caesar, cum auxiliis Q. Titūrium praefēcisset, suō mōre ē castrīs expeditōs mīlītēs ēdūxit. 3. Cum prīma legiō pervēnisset ac castra mūnīre coepisset atque legiōnēs reliquae circiter duo mīlia passuum abessent, hostēs triplici aciē instrūctā māgnō cum tumultū ad nostrās mūnitiōnēs accesserunt. 4. Aedui

adventū nostrōrum commōtī māgnō exercitū coāctō mīsē-  
runt ad Caesarem lēgātōs, quī sē neque obsidēs datūrōs  
neque ab eō (*of him*) pācem petitūrōs esse nūntiārent.  
5. Hostēs vadīs ibi repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum  
trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum  
cui Q. Titūrius lēgātus praeerat expūgnārent. 6. Nostrī  
oppidum expūgnāre cōnātī, quod audivērunt facilem adi-  
tum habēre, ad mūrōs oppidī accēdere propter aestuāria  
palūdēsque nōn poterant. 7. Caesar amīcitiae causā sē in  
fidem eōs receptūrum et cōservātūrum esse dixit; sed  
quod erat cīvītās māgnā<sup>1</sup> inter Belgās auctōritāte atque  
multitūdine hominum plūrimum valēbat, multōs obsidēs  
poposcit: hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidīs collātīs  
(*from cōferō*) Caesar ab eō locō in finīs Suessiōnum quī  
sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt pervēnit.

## LESSON LXVI.

### VERBS OF COMMANDING. CAUSAL CUM.

#### 347. Learn *potior* (497).

Use of *cohörtor*, *I urge*, *encourage*.—*Cohörtor* takes the  
*accusative* of direct object and an *ut* or *nē* clause; as,

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Caesar suōs cohörtātur ut<br>fortiter impetum hostium<br>sustineant,        | <i>Caesar encourages his men to<br/>withstand bravely the enemies'<br/>attack</i>                             |
| 2. Caesar suōs cohörtātus nē<br>animō perturbārentur sī-<br>gnum proelī dedit, | <i>Having urged his men not to<br/>become discouraged at heart,<br/>Caesar gave the signal for<br/>battle</i> |

---

<sup>1</sup> māgnā auctōritāte = *of great influence*; see (376), 'ablative of quality'  
and example.

**348. Dative with special verbs.**—Most verbs signifying to *yield* and *resist*, *bid* and *forbid*, *please* and *displease*, *desire*, *favor*, *trust*, *persuade*, *obey*, *command*, *serve*, *envy*, *harm*, *threaten*, and *pardon*, apparently transitive in English, are *intransitive in Latin* and take an *indirect object in the dative*; so with many phrases having similar meanings.

As previously stated in exercises, **imperō**, **mandō**, and **persuādeō** take the *dative* and an **ut** or a **nē** clause; **iubeō**, the *accusative and infinitive*; **cohortor**, the *accusative* and an **ut** or a **nē** clause.

## 349.

## VOCABULARY.

## Verbs 9-16 (452).

mercātor, -ōris, <i>mas.</i>	merchant
condiciō, -ōnis, <i>fem.</i>	terms
captīvus, -ī, <i>mas.</i>	captive
centuriō, -ōnis, <i>mas.</i>	centurion
complūrēs, -rēs, -r(i)a, <i>adj.</i>	very many
iniūria, -ae, <i>fem.</i>	injury
dēfēnsor, -ōris, <i>mas.</i>	defender
ita . . . utī, <i>adverbs</i>	thus, accordingly . . . as
suprā, <i>adv.</i>	above

**350. Causal and concessive cum.**—**Cum** meaning *since* or *although* takes the *subjunctive*: choice of *tense* is regulated by the *rule of sequence*.

*Causal cum:*

Caesar cum hostēs trānsīre flūmen cōnārentur ( <i>time con-</i> <i>temporaneous</i> ), imperāvit suis ut pontem interscinderent,	<i>Since the enemy were attempting to cross the river, Caesar com-</i> <i>manded his men to cut down the bridge</i>
---	--

*Concessive cum:*

Cum legiōnēs Rōmānae for- tissimae sint, Gallī nōn du- bitābunt cum eīs proelium committere,	<i>Although the Roman legions are very brave, the Gauls will not hesitate to begin battle with them</i>
---	---

## 351.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Nostrī hostēs in flūmine impeditōs (*modifies hostēs*) aggressī māgnū eōrum numerū interfēcērunt. 2. Caesar id oppidū quod sine dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat oppūgnāre cōnātus propter lātitudinē fossae mūrīque altitudinē expūgnāre nōn potuit. 3. Caesar, quod verētur nē civitātēs Galliae contrā sē coniūrent, suōs imperātōrēs certiōrēs facit sē primā lūce castra mōtūrum et eō iter faciūrum esse. 4. Conciliō commūnī convocātō Germānī exercitūs nostrī adventū veritī pontem interscindere cōstituērunt, nē nostrī in suōs finīs trādūcerentur. 5. Gallī, cum verērentur nē Caesar in Galliam omnis legiōnēs dūceret, finitimīs persuādēre cōnātī sunt, nē exercitui Rōmānō frūmentum aut commeātūs darent.

II.—1. Our men killed the foremost who had crossed after they had been surrounded<sup>1</sup> by the cavalry. 2. When the matter had been investigated<sup>2</sup> by means<sup>3</sup> of scouts at early dawn, Caesar sent forward all the cavalry to delay<sup>4</sup> the rear of the enemy. 3. Fearing (having feared) that they could not withstand the attack of our men, the enemy, after burning<sup>5</sup> all their towns and villages, retreated into the territories next to the Germans. 4. Since his infantry could not approach the enemy's camp on account of swamps, Caesar sent forward scouts to find out the plans of the enemy and to inform him with respect to those matters.

<sup>1</sup> Render the entire clause by *one* Latin word.

<sup>2</sup> *Ablative absolute.*

<sup>3</sup> *per* + acc.

<sup>4</sup> *Deponent.*

<sup>5</sup> Recast in the passive, *having been burned.*

## LESSON LXVII.

## DOUBLE DATIVE. AFFIRMATIVE PURPOSE.

352. Learn the active voice of *ferō*, *I bear* (490).

Double dative.—A dative of *purpose, end, or service* often accompanies the dative of the *person or thing interested or concerned*; as,

1. Haec ūsuī nostrīs sunt,      *These things are useful (for a use) to our men*

Here ūsuī is the *dative of purpose, end, or service*, nostrīs the *dative of the persons interested*.

2. Caesar subsidiō nostrīs decimam legiōnem mīsit,      *Caesar sent the tenth legion as a help (for a help) to our men*

353. Deponent verbs governing the ablative.—The following deponent verbs take the *ablative*: ūtor, *to use*; abūtor, *misuse*; fruor, *enjoy*; fungor, *perform*; potior, *capture*; vescor, *eat*.

- Labiēnus impedimentīs hostium potītus in castra suōs redūxit,      *Having captured the enemies' baggage, Labienus led his men back into camp*

354.

## VOCABULARY.

Verbs 17-26 (452).

deinde, <i>adv.</i>	<i>then</i>
rūrsus, <i>adv.</i>	<i>again</i>
nōn modo	<i>not only</i>
sed etiam	<i>but also</i>
īnsigne, -is, <i>neut.</i>	<i>badge</i>
minus, <i>adv.</i>	<i>less</i>
minus facile	<i>less easily</i>
postea, <i>adv.</i>	<i>afterwards</i>
ūsus, -ūs, <i>mas.</i>	<i>use</i>

355. How to express affirmative purpose.—1. *Ut* + *subjunctive*. 2. *Quī* + *subjunctive*. 3. *Ad* + *gerundive*, agreeing with a noun in the *accusative*. 4. *First supine*, with verbs of motion.

Example of *ad* + *gerundive* :

*Hostēs ad suōs finēs dēfendend-*     *The enemy assemble to defend*  
*dōs conveniunt,*                             *their territories*

First supine:

*Caesar vēnit postulātum ob-*     *Caesar came to demand hos-*  
*sidēs,*     *tages*

### 356.

#### EXERCISES.

I.—1. Duābus legiōnibus praesidiō castrīs (*dat.*) relictīs Caesar reliquās, quae in hostium cōpiās impetum facerent, praemisit. 2. Temporis fuit tanta brevitās hostiumque animus ad dīmicandum tam parātus, ut nōn modo ad insīgnia accommodanda sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque (*from their shields*) tegimenta dētrūdenda tempus deesset. 3. Caesar militēs (*acc. obj.*) cohortātus ut suae pristināe virtūtis memoriam retinērent, quod hostēs nōn longē aberant, proelī committendī sīgnum dedit. 4. In alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus (*from proficīscor*) Caesar intellēxit fortissimōs militēs secundae legiōnis vīribus (*from vīs*) redintegrātis in primā aciē fortiter pūgnāre. 5. Duābus cohortibus in castrīs relictīs praesidiō impedimentīs Caesar cum equitātū omnī primā lūce profectus in finēs Aeduōrum quōrum agrōs Germānī populābantur dē imprōvisō pervēnit.

II.—1. Since 'the enemy feared (*imperf. subjunc.*) that their infantry might be defeated by our men, they ordered their commanders to close all the gates and restrain their soldiers from battle. 2. Dumnorix employed scouts to go

---

<sup>1</sup> Order: 'the enemy, since,' etc.

(*imperf. subjunc.*) to the nearest states and inform the chiefs that Caesar was collecting large bands and would march into their territories on the next day. 3. While our infantry were making an attack upon the enemy's forces on the opposite hill, Caesar ran down to the river with slingers and (*que*) bowmen and drove back those who were trying<sup>1</sup> to cross.

## LESSON LXVIII.

### DATIVE OF POSSESSION.

#### 357. Learn *ferō* in the passive (491).

**Dative of possession.**—The *dative* is used with forms of *sum* to denote possession. Instead of saying '*the boy has a horse*' the Romans frequently expressed the idea thus: '*a horse is to the boy*,' *equus est puerō*. The *thing* possessed is put in the *nominative* (*accusative* in *indirect discourse*), and the *possessor* in the *dative*.

*Proelium cum hostibus erit* Our men will have a battle  
*nostris,* with the enemy

Which word denotes the *thing possessed*, which the *possessor*? Observe that the forms of *sum* are translated by the *corresponding tenses of the verb 'have.'*

**358. Temporal clauses with the indicative.**—*Ubi* and *postquam*, *when*; *ut*, *when* or *as*; *ut semel*, *as soon as*; *simulac*, *simulatque*, *as soon as*, usually take the *perfect* or *historical present* in the *indicative* (203).

**359. *Cum* clauses.**—*Cum* temporal, *when*, takes the *indicative* (like *ubi*, etc.) merely to *define the time of the action*.

*Cum* historical, *when* (in the sense of '*while*'), takes the

---

<sup>1</sup> Render '*who were trying*' by the *present participle*.

*imperfect subjunctive to describe the circumstances of the action.*

**Cum** historical, *when* (in the sense of 'after'), takes the *pluperfect subjunctive to describe the circumstances of the action.*

**Cum** causal, *since*, takes the *subjunctive, all tenses.*

**Cum** concessive, *although*, takes the *subjunctive, all tenses.*

## 360.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Quod oppidō sunt altissimī mūrī, Caesar ad oppidum multōs diēs morābitur et commeātibus oppidānōs prohibēre cōnābitur. 2. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla cōnicerent, in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī (*possession*). 3. Eō (*adverb*) dē mediā nocte Caesar servīs<sup>1</sup> ducibus (*apposition*) ūsus (*participle*) sagittāriōs et funditōrēs subsidiō oppidānīs mīsīt. 4. Prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī hostēs crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant<sup>2</sup> parvulisque proeliis cum nostrīs contendēbant; postea vallō māgnō crēbrisque castellīs mūnītī in oppidō sē continēbant. 5. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trāns flūmen trādūcere cōnātī, ut castellum cui praeesset<sup>3</sup> Q. Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent, omnēs hostēs ā nostrō equitātū circumventī (*participle*) interficiēbantur.

II.—1. Having feared an ambush, Caesar decided to keep all of his infantry<sup>4</sup> and cavalry in camp. 2. The enemy were informed by scouts that Caesar's army was advancing towards their camp and was then about five thousand paces distant. 3. Having set out from camp in the second watch, Caesar hastened with the auxiliaries, which were of great use to our men, and cut down the bridge

<sup>1</sup> Ablative object of ūsus ; see (353).

<sup>2</sup> Kept making ; [see (101), meanings of the imperfect.]

<sup>3</sup> See (276).

<sup>4</sup> Not genitive.

that the enemy might not be able to cross the river.  
4. Since the Belgians are attempting to drive Galba's men out of winter-quarters, Caesar will command Titurius to march into their borders at once with two new legions.

## LESSON LXIX.

### PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION. IMPERSONAL VERBS.

**361. Periphrastic conjugation.**—Learn the periphrastic conjugation of *amō*, both voices (498, 499).

The *active periphrastic* is formed by annexing parts of *sum* to the *future participle*, and is used to express what *is likely—is going—to happen*; as,

1. Caesar hīs in regiōnibus bellum gestūrus est, *Caesar is going to wage war in these regions*
2. Hostēs impetum factūrī erant in nostrōs, *The enemy were about to make an attack upon our men*

The *passive periphrastic* is composed of the *gerundive* and parts of *sum*, and implies *obligation or necessity*; as,

1. Karthāgō dēlenda est, *Carthage must be (has to be, ought to be) destroyed*
2. Omnia ūnō tempore facienda erant, *All things had to be done at one time*

**362. Dative of personal agent.**—The *dative* is used with the *gerundive (periphrastic passive)* to denote the *personal agent*; as, *hōc faciendum est mihi*, (literally) *this must be done by me*; it is better to recast the English sentence in the *active voice*, changing the *personal agent* to the *nominative subject*; thus, 'I must do this.' The idea of *necessity, duty, or obligation*, conveyed usually in English in the *active voice*, is expressed by the Latin *periphrastic passive* with the *agent* in the *dative*.

**363. Examples of the periphrastic verb.** (See Caesar's text, Book II, Chapter XX.)

1. **Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda,** *Caesar had to attend to everything at one time*
2. (Again in line 3:) **Caesarī ab opere revocandī (erant) milītēs,** *Caesar had to recall the soldiers from their work*
3. (Chapter XVII, last sentence—see text.) *Since the advance (march) of our column was checked (would be checked) by these circumstances, the Nervii concluded that they (sibi) ought not to disregard the advice [literally, that the advice ought not to be disregarded (omittendum esse, indirect discourse) by them]*

**364. Ablative absolute.**—The *ablative absolute* may be expressed by (1) a *noun* or *pronoun* and the *perfect passive participle*, as given in (287); (2) by a *noun* and an *adjective*; as, **locō idōneō**, *since the place was suitable*; (3) by a *noun* and the *present participle*; as, **nostris pūgnāntibus**, *while or although our men were fighting*; (4) by *two nouns*; as, **duce Caesare**, *under Caesar's leadership* (literally, *Caesar being the leader*).

**365. Impersonal verbs.**—These are so called because they do not have a person for their subject, the word *it* being used as subject in the translation.

Examples of the *impersonal verb* in the *passive, third singular*:

1. **Ācriter eō locō pūgnātum est,** *A fierce battle occurred in that place (literally, it was fought fiercely, etc.)*
2. **Hostēs, ad quōs ventum erat, cōstitērunt,** *The enemy, whom we (they) overtook, halted (literally, the enemy to whom it had been come, etc.)*
3. **Eō ex proximīs castellīs celeriter concursum est,** *(Our men) rushed thither quickly from the nearest redoubts (it was rushed thither, etc.)*

## 366.

## EXERCISES.

I.—1. Sēquanī, quod Caesarem cum exercitū ad sē iter facere audiēbant, omne frūmentum praeter (*except*) id quod sēcum portātūrī erant incendērunt et ex suis finibus disceserunt. 2. Caesar vult (*wishes*) manūs hostium distinērī nē cum tantā multitūdine sibi ūnō tempore cōnfligendum sit (*impersonal*). 3. Ubi neutrī (*nom. plur.*) flūminis trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre<sup>1</sup> equitum proeliō<sup>1</sup> nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. 4. Oppidum oppūgnāre cōnātus quod vacuum ab defēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem paucīs dēfendentibus<sup>2</sup> expūgnāre<sup>3</sup> nōn potuit. 5. Caesar equitātū praemiēsō omnibus cōpiīs subsequēbātur et, quod ad hostēs appropīnquābat, suā cōnsuētūdine ipse sex legiōnēs expeditās dūcēbat; post eās tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta conlocāvit atque duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōnscrip̄tae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentīs erant.

II.—1. Greatly alarmed<sup>4</sup> by the approach of our army, the Suessiones sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask for<sup>5</sup> peace. 2. Caesar placed Galba in command of (those) forces which had been sent<sup>6</sup> to him by the Aedui and he himself, after encouraging<sup>7</sup> his men, drew up a triple line of battle. 3. After the enemy's camp had been burned and their army routed, Caesar concluded that he ought<sup>8</sup> to demand many hostages.

<sup>1</sup> See *ablative absolute*, example (2).

<sup>2</sup> See *ablative absolute* (3).

<sup>3</sup> *Modifies the subject.*

<sup>4</sup> See (355), 'how to express purpose.'

<sup>5</sup> Not *relative clause*, but *p. p. p.*

<sup>6</sup> = 'having encouraged.'

<sup>7</sup> See 'dative of agent,' example (3)—literally 'that many hostages ought to be demanded by him.'

## LESSON LXX.

## THE RELATIVE PRONOUN AS AN INTRODUCTORY WORD.

367. Learn the verb *volō*, *I wish* (487).

Learn the comparison of 'irregular adjectives and adverbs' (472, 473).

Relative as a connective.—Frequently in Latin independent sentences are connected by the *relative*, which is usually translated by a conjunction (*and*, *now*, etc.) + a *demonstrative pronoun*; as,

1. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt (Caesar, Book II, chapt. v, line 3), *Now all these things were done by the latter carefully to the day*
2. Quī cum sē suaeque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent (chapt. xiii, line 4), *Now after they (those) had taken refuge with all their possessions in the town of Bratuspantium*
3. Cūius adventū spē illātā (from inferō) militibus . . . paulum hostium impetus tardātus est (chapt. xxv, last sentence), *And hope being inspired in the soldiers on account of his arrival (the arrival of that one), the charge of the enemy was checked a little*

368. Relative of cause or concession.—When *quī* = *cum* is, *cum* *eī* (*since* or *although* *he*, *they*), expressing *cause* or *concession*, the verb in the relative clause is in the *subjunctive*; as,

Aduatuci dixerunt: nōn existimāre Rōmānōs sine ope divīnā bellum gerere, quī tantās māchinātiōnēs prōmovēre possent, *The Aduatuci said they did not think the Romans waged war without divine assistance, since (causal quī) they could move forward such machines of war*

In the *direct discourse* this relative clause takes the *subjunctive*.

**369. Ablative with the comparative.**—The comparative degree is followed by the *ablative*, signifying *than*; as,  
**Rōmānī erant fortiōrēs Gallīs,** *The Romans were braver than the Gauls*

The comparative may be followed by **quam**, ‘*than*,’ the following noun taking the case required by the context. After **minus**, **amplius**, and the like, **quam** is often omitted without affecting the construction.

**370. Verbs of hindering.**—Verbs of *hindering*, *preventing*, and the like, *when negated*, are followed by **quīn** or **quōminus** and the *subjunctive*; by **nē** (sometimes **quōminus**) *when not negated*. **Prohibēre** usually has *accusative* + *infinitive*. **quīn**, etc. + *subjunctive* may be translated by ‘*from*’ and the *gerund* (ending in ‘*ing*’); as,

**Nōn poterant dēterrēre Aeduōs** *They were not able to prevent*  
**quīn cum Belgīs cōsentīrent** *the Aedui from conspiring with the Belgians*

### 371.

### EXERCISE.

1. When Caesar learned that all the states had been subdued, he decided to place his men in winter-quarters: [translate *when* by **ubi** or **cum** with attention to mood of *learned*—see (203, 358, 359)—and explain *difference in meaning*.]
2. Unless Caesar sends help to the Remi, they will not be able to hold out against the Gauls: [write ‘*sends*’ in *two tenses*, see (223), and explain relation of the *time of its action* to the *time* of the action of the *principal verb* ‘*will not be able*.’]
3. If the enemy should attempt to cross, our men would attack (**aggredior**) and drive them back: [see (335).]
4. The enemy fear that Caesar will not accept hostages. Caesar feared that the enemy would capture (**potior**) Galba’s

camp: [*'verbs of fearing,'* see (343); for case of the *object* of *potior*, see (353).] 5. Since the Roman soldiers excel (*praestō*) all in courage, they will easily conquer many tribes: [*cum*, '*since*,' see (350); '*all*,' for use and meaning of, see (258); for its *case*, see (337).]

## LESSON LXXI.

### ADVERBIAL ACCUSATIVE. ABLATIVE OF QUALITY.

**372.** Learn the verb *nōlō*, *I am unwilling* (488).

**Substitutions for the perfect active participle.**—In place of the *perfect active participle* (lacking in Latin) the *perfect participle of a deponent verb* may be used (340); in case the Latin verb is *not a deponent*, the participial clause must be *recast* in the *passive* and expressed by the *Ablative Absolute*; thus, *having killed a large number of the enemy the cavalry retreated into camp*. Since *interficiō* is *not a deponent*, recast in the *passive*: '*a large number . . . having been killed*,' etc.; *māgnō hostium numerō interfectō nostrī in castra sē recēpērunt*.

The *ablative absolute* may be translated like a *subordinate clause* introduced by *cum*, *quod*, *ubi*, etc.; as, *cum māgnus hostium numerus interfectus esset, nostrī in castra sē recēpērunt*, *when (after) a large number . . . had been killed*, etc.

**373. Relative pronoun agreeing with a predicate word.**—Sometimes the relative agrees with *the predicate noun in its own clause* instead of its *antecedent*; as,

*Rōma quod est caput* <sup>1</sup> *Italiae*, *Rome which is the capital of Italy*

**374. Adverbial accusative.**—A *neuter pronoun or adjective* is often used in the *accusative* with an *adverbial force*;

---

<sup>1</sup> *Caput*, genitive *capitis*, literally '*head*,' is a *neuter noun* of the *third declension*.

as, *quid possum, what can I? what power or strength do I possess?* *hōc tē moneō. I give you this advice.*

**375. Perfect participle passive with *habeō* or *teneō*.**—The p. p. p. (with *habeō* or *teneō*) modifying a noun in a predicate sense denotes *the continued effect of the action of its verb* and is translated with an *active meaning*; as, *Caesar habuit māgnū exercitū coāctū, Caesar had a large army all collected.* Here *habuit coāctū* almost equals *coēgerat*.

**376. Ablative of quality.**—*Quality* is expressed by the *ablative* accompanied by an adjective; this is often called the '*Descriptive Ablative*.' *Vir, homō*, or some such word is sometimes to be supplied with this ablative: *est māgnā auctōritāte, he is (a man) of great influence.*

## 377.

## EXERCISE.

1. The chiefs knew how great a calamity they had brought upon their state: [*'had brought'*; see (313) for mood of '*indirect question*'; see (337) for the case of '*state*']. 2. Caesar informs the Gauls that he will not make war upon those states that give hostages: [*'informs,' certiōrem facere*, see (333); '*will make*,' see (318), *example 3*; '*give*,' see (276), '*intermediate clauses in indirect discourse*']. 3. The enemy came to Caesar to excuse (*excūsō*) themselves: [write the purpose clause in *four ways* as given in (355)]. 4. Although the Germans were departing from (*ex*) Gaul, Caesar decided that he ought to check (*impediō*) their departure: [*'although,' concessive cum*, see (350); '*that he ought*,' see (362, 363), '*dative of personal agent*,' and *example (3) of periphrastic verb*]. 5. The Belgians will persuade the Germans to cross the Rhine: [*persuādeō*, see (345).]

## LESSON LXXII.

PARTITIVE GENITIVE. ABLATIVE WITH **OPUS**  
AND **ŪSUS**.

378. Learn *mālō, I prefer* (489).

**Partitive genitive.**—Words denoting a *part* are followed by a *genitive of the whole* from which the part is taken; as, *nihil vinī, no wine (nothing of wine)*. *Exceptions*: Cardinal numerals (one, two, three, etc.) regularly take **ē (ex)** or **dē** + *ablative* instead of the *partitive genitive*; so usually *quīdam (certain)*; as, *ūnus ex iīs, one of those*; *quīdam ex militibus, certain (some) of the soldiers*.

379. **Ablative with opus and ūsus.**—**Opus** and **ūsus**, meaning *need*, take the *ablative* of the *thing needed* or *wanted* and the *dative* of the *person* who needs; as, *mihi est opus virtūte, I have need of courage*. **Opus** is sometimes in the *predicate* with the *thing needed* as *nominative subject*: *sī quid opus est, if there is any need*.

380. **Persuādeō in the passive construction.**—Intransitive verbs governing the *dative* (see 348) are used *impersonally* in the *passive* and *retain the dative*. The *dative* of the *active* does not become the *subject of the passive*; as,

*Active*:

**Hīs (dative) persuādēre nōn** *They could not persuade these*  
**poterant,** *(people)*

*Passive*:

**Hīs (dative) persuādērī (pas-** *These (people) could not be per-*  
**sive) nōn poterat,<sup>1</sup>** *suaded*

381. **Perfect participle passive translated as a finite (coordinate) verb.**—The p. p. p. limiting and describing a

<sup>1</sup> Literally, *it was not able to be (could not be) persuaded—made sweet—to these*.



had been sent as an aid to Caesar could not be deterred by the Gauls from marching into Italy: [*'who had been sent,'* render by one Latin word (p. p. p.), see (316); *'as an aid'* = *for an aid*, see (352); *'from marching,'* see (370).] 3. Because Caesar kept hearing that the enemy's forces had been collected and were coming towards him, he decided that he ought to begin battle on the next day: [*Order: 'Caesar because he kept,'* etc.; *'had been collected,'* render by the p. p. p., see (381), and omit *'and'*; *'he ought to begin,'* recast in the passive, see (362) and (363), example 3.]

## LESSON LXXIII.

### RELATIVE CLAUSE OF RESULT.

#### 384. Review words 1-42 (399).

The ablative *quō* (= *ut eō*) with the comparative. —The ablative *quō* (*ut eō*, *so that thereby, by it*) is used to introduce *purpose clauses containing a comparative*; as,

<b>Teneris arbōribus incīsīs atque inflexīs, quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum impedirent,</b> (see chapt. xvii, line 16,)	<i>Young trees being notched and bent down so that they could thereby (by it) more easily check the cavalry of their neighbours</i>
---	---

<b>Caesar manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent,</b> (chapt. xxv, <i>ad finem</i> ,)	<i>Caesar ordered them to open out their ranks so as to handle their swords with better effect</i>
--	--

#### 385. How to express 'ought' or 'must.'

*I ought to do this* may be rendered:

1. By *dēbeō* + *infinitive*: *hōc facere dēbeō*.

2. By *oportet* (*impersonal verb*): (a) With *accusative* + *infinitive*: *mē hōc facere oportet*; [*'it behooves me to do this.'*] (b) With *subjunctive*: *hōc faciam oportet*; [note *sequence*; compare (c) below.]

3. By *gerundive* (*periphrastic passive*): **hōc faciendum est mihi**; [what *literally*? see (362), '*dative of personal agent.*']

*Past action* of these verbs may be expressed by placing **dēbeō** or **oportet** in the *tense* required, the *infinitive* remaining *present*; as,

- |  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| (a) Hōc facere dēbuī,                  | } I ought to have done this |
| (b) Mē hōc facere oportuit             |                             |
| (c) Hōc facerem <sup>1</sup> oportuit, |                             |
| (d) Hōc mihi faciendum erat,           |                             |

**386. Place to which (end of motion); place from which.**—The place to which is expressed by **ad** or **in** + *accusative*; but the names of *towns* or *small islands* together with **domus** (*home*) and **rūs** (*country*) are put in the *accusative* without a *preposition*; as, **domum revertit**, he returned home; **rūs (neut.) ibit**, he will go to the country. The place *from which* is denoted by **ab**, **dē**, or **ex** + *ablative*; but with the names of *towns* or *small islands*, and also **domus** and **rūs**, the *ablative* is used without a *preposition*; as, **Romā abiit**, he went from Rome; **domō profecti sunt**, they set out from home.

**387. Relative clauses of result.**—*Relative clauses of result* are introduced by the relative **quī** or the adverbs **unde**, **ubi**, **quō**, etc., with the antecedent expressed or implied in the main clause; as,

<b>Effēcerant ut instar mūrī hae</b>	<i>They had caused these hedges to</i>
<b>saepēs mūnimenta praebē-</b>	<i>furnish fortifications like a</i>
<b>rent, quō nōn modo nōn in-</b>	<i>wall into which (whither, as</i>
<b>trārī sed nē perspicī quidem</b>	<i>a result) one could not only</i>
<b>posset, (chapt. xvii, ad finem,)</b>	<i>not enter, but not even see</i>

---

<sup>1</sup> Observe that **facerem** is *imperfect*, depending upon **oportuit**, a verb of *past time*.

## 388.

## EXERCISE.

1. Our men with the cavalry surrounded and killed the foremost (men) who had crossed the river: [*'surrounded,'* render by the p. p. p., see (381), and omit *'and'*; *'foremost,'* see (258).] 2. If the enemy should not surrender, Caesar would not prevent his (men) from burning their town: [The *'less vivid future condition,'* see (335); *'would prevent,'* write in two ways with *impediō* and *prohibeō*; see (370).] 3. If hostages are given to Caesar so that he may know that the enemy will do those (things) which they are promising, he will make peace with them: [*'are given,'* write in two tenses; see (223); what kind of a condition is this? *'will do,'* future infinitive; *'those things,'* see (258); *'are promising,'* subjunctive by attraction; see (276). Observe the *sequence of tenses.*]

## LESSON LXXIV.

## COMMANDS AND EXHORTATIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

389. Review words 43–84 (399).

*See imperative of nōlō (488).*

Commands and exhortations are put in the imperative, negative *nē* (never *nōn*); as,

1. Affirmative command: **Ad Belgās adī et eōs in officiō continē,** *Go to the Belgians and keep them in allegiance.*  
 2. Negative command: **Nōlī hōc facere,** *Do not do this,* (literally, *'be unwilling to do this'*). **Nōlī** + infinitive is preferred to **nē** + present imperative, **nē** being generally used with the perfect subjunctive in a direct address or command; as, **nē hōc fēceris,** *thou shalt not do this.* When the phrase **nōlī facere,** *'do not do this,'* is changed to indirect discourse, as, *he told him not to do this,* the nega-

*tive adverb nē must be used in place of nōīī (see following rule).*

**390. Commands and exhortations in indirect discourse.**—The imperative of the *direct discourse* becomes *subjunctive of the indirect, negative nē*. The application of the *rule of sequence* may be aided by a study of the following tables:

Indicative mood.			Subjunctive mood.		
Tenses	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Present} \\ \textit{Future} \\ \textit{Future-perfect} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{followed} \\ \text{by} \end{array} \right\}$	Tenses	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Present} \text{ (referring to act} \\ \text{not completed)} \\ \textit{Perfect} \text{ (referring to act} \\ \text{completed)} \\ \textit{Imperfect} \text{ (referring to} \\ \text{act not completed)} \\ \textit{Pluperfect} \text{ (referring to} \\ \text{act completed)} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{followed} \\ \text{by} \end{array} \right\}$
not			not		
completed			completed		
Tenses	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Imperfect} \\ \textit{Perfect} \\ \textit{Pluperfect} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{followed} \\ \text{by} \end{array} \right\}$	Tenses	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{Imperfect} \text{ (referring to} \\ \text{act not completed)} \\ \textit{Pluperfect} \text{ (referring to} \\ \text{act completed)} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{followed} \\ \text{by} \end{array} \right\}$
com-			com-		
pleted			pleted		

**391.****EXAMPLES.**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (a) Veniet ut obsidēs postulet,                                    | He will come to demand hostages (purpose)             |
| (b) Rogat cur vēneris,   | He asks why you came (indirect question)              |
| (c) Cum esset Caesar in Galliā, vēnerunt lēgātī,                   | While Caesar was in Gaul, legates came (cum temporal) |
| (d) Non dubitāvit quin hostēs portiter pugnāvissent (quīn clause), | He didn't doubt that the enemy had fought bravely     |

**392. Mood in Ōrātiō Oblīqua.** [See 301, 302, 305, 306.]—In changing from *direct* to *indirect discourse*, if the main clause contains a *statement (indicative)*, the verb of this clause is turned into an *infinitive*; if the main clause contains an *imperative*, the verb is turned into a *subjunctive*; all *subordinate* verbs are put in the *subjunctive*; as,

1. (a) Statement in O. R.:

Caesar dīcit: 'In officiō Gallōs continēbō,'	Caesar says: 'I will keep the Gauls in allegiance'
--	--

(b) Statement in O. O.:

Caesar dicit sē in officiō Gallōs      *Caesar says that he will keep,*  
contentūrum esse,      *etc.*

(c) Statement in O. O.:

Caesar dixit sē in officiō Gallōs      *Caesar said that he would keep,*  
contentūrum esse,      *etc.*

2. (a) Affirmative command in O. R.:

Caesar respondet: 'Continēte      *Caesar replies: 'Keep the Gauls*  
Gallōs in officiō,'      *in allegiance'*

(b) Affirmative command in O. O.:

Caesar respondet in officiō      *Caesar replies that they must<sup>1</sup>*  
Gallōs contineant,      *keep the Gauls in allegiance*

(c) Affirmative command in O. O.:

Caesar respondit in officiō      *Caesar replied that they should*  
Gallōs continērent,      *keep, etc.*

3. (a) Negative command in O. R.:

'Nōlite inferre quam iniūriam      *'Do not inflict any harm upon*  
hīs,'      *these people'*

(b) Negative command in O. O.:

Caesar dicit nē hīs quam in-      *Caesar says that they must not*  
iūriam inferant,      *inflict, etc.*

(c) Negative command in O. O.:

Caesar dixit nē hīs quam in-      *Caesar said that they must not,*  
iūriam inferrent,      *etc.*

393. Compare (1) *a* and *b*: the first person, 'I,' becomes third person, 'he'; the indicative becomes infinitive, time remaining future. Compare (2) *a*, *b*, and *c*: when *a* is changed to *b*, the mood of the verb changes, but the tense remains present when *a* becomes *c*, though both mood and tense are changed, the imperfect continērent denotes the same time (in its new relation) as is indicated by the verb keep in *a*. (See table and rule of sequence.)

---

<sup>1</sup> should.

## 394.

## EXERCISE.

1. Caesar says: 'I cannot (present indicative of **possum**) cross the river because the enemy have destroyed the bridge': [write again in O. O. *twice*: *first* after 'Caesar *says*,' and *second* after 'Caesar *said*.'] 2. 'Give me a large number of hostages': [write again in O. O. *two ways*: *first*, Caesar informs the enemy that they must give *him*, etc.; *second*, Caesar *informed*, etc.] 3. 'Do not deprive the Aedui of their arms' (*ablative* of separation): [put in O. O.: Caesar *tells* and *told* his generals *not to*, etc.]

## LESSON LXXV.

## HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE.

**395. Hortatory subjunctive.**—The simple *subjunctive* of *exhortation* or *command*, called the 'Hortatory Subjunctive' (from **hortor**, *I urge*), is used in the *present tense* and in the *first* or *third persons*. It is usually translated by '*let*' placed before the meaning of the verb; as, **contendāmus**, *let us hasten*; **retineant memoriā virtūtis**, *let them retain the memory of (keep in mind) their courage*.

When turned into O. O. (indirect discourse) the hortatory subjunctive *remains subjunctive*, being *present* in form after a verb of saying, etc., whose tense does *not* indicate *past time*, but *imperfect* when the tense of the verb of saying *does* indicate *past time*; as,

'**Hostēs congrediantur!**'

'*Let the enemy engage!*'

**Caesar dīcit hostēs congredi-**  
**antur,**

*Caesar says, let the enemy en-*  
*gage*

**Caesar dīxit hostēs congrede-**  
**rentur,**

*Caesar said, let the enemy en-*  
*gage*

**396. Conditions in indirect discourse.**—In O. O. all difference in form between the *more vivid* and the *less*

*vivid future condition* is effaced, the verb of the *apodosis* in both being rendered by the *future infinitive*, and that of the *protasis* going into the *subjunctive*.

1. O. R. *If hostages are given to me, I will make peace.* This (the more vivid future) is written in *two ways*: see (223).

(a) *Sī obsidēs mihi dabuntur, pācem faciam*; [dabuntur = future, *unfinished* time.]

(b) *Sī obsidēs mihi datī erunt, pācem faciam*; [datī erunt = future-perfect, time *finished* in the *future before another future action*.]

When written after *dīcit*, (a) becomes [O. O.]:

(c) *Caesar dīcit, sī obsidēs sibi dentur, sē pācem factūrum esse.*

Written after *dīxit*, (a) becomes [O. O.]:

(d) *Caesar dīxit, sī obsidēs sibi darentur, sē pācem factūrum esse.*

Written after *dīcit*, (b) becomes [O. O.]:

(e) *Caesar dīcit, sī obsidēs sibi datī sint, sē pācem factūrum esse.*

Written after *dīxit*, (b) becomes [O. O.]:

(f) *Caesar dīxit, sī obsidēs sibi datī essent, sē pācem factūrum esse.*

2. O. R. *If hostages should be given to me, I would make peace* (less vivid future): see (335).

(a) *Sī obsidēs mihi dentur, pācem faciam* (*present subjunctive*).

Written after *dīcit*, it is:

(b) *Caesar dīcit, sī obsidēs sibi dentur, sē pācem factūrum esse.*

Written after *dīxit*, it is:

(c) *Caesar dīxit, sī obsidēs sibi darentur, sē pācem factūrum esse.*

Compare (b) and (c) in the *less vivid* with (c) and (d) in the *more vivid*.

397. Subordinate clauses depending upon *infinitive verbs* in *indirect discourse* get their *sequence* usually from the *main verb of saying, telling, etc.*, rather than from the *infinitive*; as,

Caesar dicit sē finitimīs imperātūrum nē Aeduīs iniūriam inferant (present),	Caesar says that he will command—Caesar said that he would command—their neighbours
Caesar dixit sē finitimīs imperātūrum nē Aeduīs iniūriam inferrent (imperfect),	bours not to do violence to the Aedui

398.

## EXERCISE.

1. If the scouts sent forward during (in) the first watch inform Caesar in what direction the enemy are fleeing, Caesar will pursue without delay with all his forces: [*'sent forward,'* p. p. p. agreeing with the subject; *'inform,'* render by *future indicative*; *'in what direction,'* *quam in partem*; *'are fleeing,'* subjunctive, see (313).]
2. Write the above sentence after Caesar dixit thus: Caesar said that, if the scouts . . . *informed him* in what direction . . . *were fleeing, he would pursue . . .*, etc.

399.

## REVIEW VOCABULARY.

## LESSONS LXIII—LXXV.

1. *suprā* (adv.), *above*
2. *successus, successūs* (mas.), *advance*
3. *posteā* (adv.), *afterwards*
4. *rūrsus* (adv.), *again*
5. *sōlus, sōla, sōlum* (adj.), *alone or only*
6. *in* (prep. with the *abl.*), *among*
7. *diūtius* (adv.), *longer*
8. *ut (utī)* (conj.), *as or so that*
9. *cum primum*, *as soon as*
10. *ūnō tempore*, *at one and the same time*
11. *insigne, insignis* (neut.), *badge*
12. *praesum, praeesse, praefuī*, *be in command of*

13. *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, bear*
14. *coepī, coepisse, coeptus sum (defective verb), begin*
15. *post (prep. with the acc.), behind or after*
16. *audācter (adv.), boldly*
17. *addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductum, bring (to)*
18. *negōtium, negōtī (neut.), business*
19. *sed etiam (conj.), but also*
20. *captīvus, captīvī (mas.), captive*
21. *potior, potīrī, potītus sum, capture*
22. *centuriō, centuriōnis (mas.), centurion*
23. *certus, certa, certum (adj.), certain*
24. *tegimentum, tegimentī (neut.), covering*
25. *dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris (mas.), defender*
26. *dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātum, despair, cease to hope*
27. *octō (indeclin. num. adj.), eight*
28. *negōtium dare, employ*
29. *cohortor, cohortārī, cohortātus sum (depon.), encourage*
30. *hostis, hostis (mas.), enemy*
31. *longē (adv.), far*
32. *vereor, verērī, veritus sum (depon.), fear*
33. *pābulum, pābulī (neut.), fodder*
34. *nam (conj.), for*
35. *vīs, vīs (fem.), force or vigor*
36. *vadum, vadī (neut.), ford*
37. *superior, superior, superius (adj.), former*
38. *crēber, crēbra, crēbrum (adj.), frequent*
39. *manus, manūs (fem.), hand or band*
40. *plūrimum posse, plūrimum valēre, have very great power*
41. *prōgressus, -a, -um (perf. particip. of prōgredior), having advanced*
42. *adortus, -a, -um (perf. particip. of adior), having attacked*
43. *collātus, -a, -um (perf. particip. of cōnferō), having been collected*
44. *subsecūtus, -a, -um (perf. particip. of subsequor), having followed after, having pursued*

45. **impeditus**, -a, -um (perf. particip. of **impediō**), *hindered*
46. **ego** (personal pron. first person), *I*
47. **auctoritās**, **auctoritātis** (fem.), *influence*
48. **certiorem facere** (followed by the acc. and *infin.*), *inform*
49. **iniūria**, **iniūriae** (fem.), *injury*
50. **ita utī** (adv.), *just as*
51. **minus** (adv.), *less*
52. **minus facile** (adv.), *less easily*
53. **mercātor**, **mercātōris**, *merchant*
54. **ad** (prep. with the acc.), *near*
55. **necessārius**, **necessāria**, **necessārium** (adj.), *necessary*
56. **nōn modo** (conj.), *not only*
57. **magistrātus**, **magistrātūs** (mas.), *officer*
58. **adversus**, **adversa**, **adversum** (adj.), *opposite*
59. **passus**, **passa**, **passum** (adj.), *outstretched*
60. **passus**, **passūs** (mas.), *pace*
61. **persuādeō**, **persuādēre**, **persuāsī**, **persuāsūm**, *persuade*
62. **praeficere** (with acc. and dat.), *place in command over*
63. **populor**, **populārī**, **populātus sum** (depon.), *plunder*
64. **regiō**, **regiōnis** (fem.), *region*
65. **opīniō**, **opīniōnis** (fem.), *report*
66. **cēterī**, **cēterae**, **cētera** (adj.), *the rest*
67. **excursiō**, **excursiōnis** (fem.), *sally*
68. **videō**, **vidēre**, **vīdī**, **vīsum**, *see*
69. **ipse**, **ipsa**, **ipsum** (intensive pron.), *he or self*
70. **brevitās**, **brevitātis** (fem.), *shortness*
71. **cum** (conj.), *since*
72. **parvulus**, **parvula**, **parvulum** (adj.), *slight*
73. **tam** (adv.), *so, such*
74. **Suessiōnēs**, **Suessiōnum** (mas.), *Suessiones*
75. **decimus**, **decima**, **decimum** (num. adj.), *tenth*
76. **condiciō**, **condiciōnis** (fem.), *terms*
77. **tum**, **inde**, **deinde** (adverbs), *then*
78. **mīlle** (indecl. adj.; noun in plur.), **mīlia**, **mīlium**, *thousand*
79. **sub vesperum**, *towards evening*
80. **dē imprōvīsō**, *unexpectedly*

81. ūsus, ūsūs (mas.), *use*

82. ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *to use*

83. complūrēs, complūrēs, complūra (-ia) (adj.), *very many*

84. incrēdibilis, incrēdibilis, incrēdibile (adj.), *incredible*

## SPECIMENS OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE.

400. O. O. (Caesar, Book II, Chapt. 32.)—Ad haec Caesar respondit: ‘Sē magis cōsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitatē cōservātūrum, sī, prius quam mūrū ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditionis nūllam esse condiōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nervīis fēcisset factūrum, finitimisque imperātūrum nē quam dēditīciis populī Rōmānī iniūriam īferrent.’

401. O. R.—‘Magis cōsuētūdine *meā* quam meritō *vestrō* cīvitatē *cōservābō*, sī, prius quam mūrū ariēs *attigerit*, vōs *dēdideritis*; sed dēditionis *nūlla est condiō* nisi armīs trāditīs. Id quod in Nervīis *fēcī faciam*, finitimisque *imperābō* nē quam dēditīciis populī Rōmānī iniūriam *īferant*.’

402. O. O. (Caesar, Book I, Chapt. 13.)—Is respondit: ‘Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōstituisset atque esse voluisset: sīn bellō persequī perseverāret, reminiscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et pristinā virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī quī flūmen trānsissent suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret: sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quā rē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōstitissent ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriā prōderet.’

**403. O. R.**—‘Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs *faciet*, in eam partem *ībunt* atque ibi *erunt* Helvētiī, ubi eōs *cōstitueris*<sup>1</sup> atque esse *volueris*: sīn bellō persequī *perseverābit*, *reminīscere* (*imperative*) et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum eī quī flūmen *trānsierant* suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, *nōlī* ob eam rem aut *tuae* māgnopere virtūtī *tribuere* [*nē tribueris*], aut *nōs dēspicere* [*dēspexeris*]: *nōs* ita ā patribus māiōribusque *nostrīs didicimus* ut magis virtūte *contendāmus* quam dolō aut insidiīs *nītāmur*. Quā rē *nōlī committere* ut is locus ubi *cōstitimus* ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen *capiat* aut memoriā *prōdat*.’

**404. O. O.** (Caesar, Book I, Chapt. 35.)—His respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad Ariovistum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: (line 7) ‘haec esse quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Aeduīs redderet, Sēquanīsque permitteret ut quōs illi habērent voluntāte eius reddere illis licēret; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum inferret. Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiā atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē (. . . . line 25) Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.’

**405. O. R.**—‘Haec *sunt* quae ab eō *postulō*: prīmum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum trādūcat; [*let him not lead across*’—hortatory subjunc.] deinde, obsidēs quōs *habeat* ab Aeduīs *reddat*, [*let him*

<sup>1</sup> In the treatment of this passage in direct discourse, we regard Caesar as addressed in person and place the main verbs in the second pers. sing.; thus, ‘Where thou, O Caesar, shalt place us,’ etc. In order to retain the second person of the verb, the form *reminīscere* is given, rather than *reminīscat*.

return,'] Sēquanīsque *permittat* ut quōs illī *habeant* voluntātē eius reddere illis *liceat*; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā *laccessat*, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum *inferat*. Sī id ita *fecerit*, *mihi* populōque Rōmānō *perpetua grātia* atque *amīcitia* cum eō *erit*; sī nōn *impetrābō*, . . . . . Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn *neglegam*.'

406. O. O. (Caesar, Book II, Chapt. 14.)—Prō hīs Divitiācus . . . facit verba: 'Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Aeduae fuisse: impulsōs ā suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnīs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī eius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgis. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs ut suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcērit (perf. subj.) Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōsuērunt.'

407. O. R.—' *Bellovacī* omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Aeduae *fuērunt*: *impulsī* ā suīs prīncipibus, quī *dicēbant* Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnīs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs *dēfēcērunt* et populō Rōmānō bellum *intulērunt*. (Eī) quī eius cōnsilī prīncipēs *fuērant*, quod *intelligēbant* quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam *profūgērunt*. *Petunt* nōn solum *Bellovacī* sed etiam prō hīs *Aeduī* ut *tuā* clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtāris. Quod sī *fēcēris* (fut. perf. indic.) Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās *amplificābis*, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella *incidērunt*, sustentāre cōsuērunt.'

## LESSON LXXVI.

## CAESAR, BOOK II, CHAPTER I, ADAPTED AND SIMPLIFIED.

*The Belgae conspire against Caesar.*

408.—Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā<sup>1</sup> in hibernīs,<sup>2</sup> ita utī<sup>3</sup> suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, litterīs<sup>4</sup> Labiēnī certior<sup>4</sup> fiēbat omnēs Belgās<sup>5</sup> contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē<sup>6</sup> dare. Belgae coniūrābant primum, quod verēbantur nē<sup>7</sup> omnī Galliā pācātā<sup>8</sup> ad<sup>9</sup> eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde,<sup>10</sup> quod sollicitābantur ab<sup>11</sup> nōnnūllīs Gallīs quī, ut nōluerant<sup>12</sup> Germānōs<sup>13</sup> diūtius in Galliā versārī, ita<sup>14</sup> exercitum<sup>15</sup> populī Rōmānī hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā nōlēbant.

409.—After Caesar had come<sup>1</sup> into hither Gaul, Labienus informed<sup>2</sup> him that all<sup>3</sup> the Belgians had been incited<sup>4</sup> by the Gauls<sup>4</sup> and had conspired<sup>5</sup> against the Roman people. Some Gauls who feared that<sup>6</sup> all Gaul would be subdued<sup>7</sup> by our army<sup>8</sup> incited the Belgians with whom<sup>9</sup> they conspired against Caesar.

408.—<sup>1</sup> Adverbial phrases, modifying *esset*. <sup>2</sup> *ita utī*, 'just as.' <sup>3</sup> 'Abl. of means'; see (43 b). <sup>4</sup> *certior + pass.* (see 338): notice the force of the *imperf.*, 'he was being informed.' <sup>5</sup> Acc. subj. (indir. disc.) of *coniūrare* and *dare*; see (301, 302, 318). <sup>6</sup> *inter se dare*, 'were exchanging.' <sup>7</sup> With verb of *fear*; see (343). <sup>8</sup> Abl. absol. <sup>9</sup> 'against them.' <sup>10</sup> Mod. *coniūrabant*; 'in the second place they kept conspiring.' <sup>11</sup> Pers. agent; see (237). <sup>12</sup> *ut + indic.* = 'as'; note the force of the pluperf., 'as they had been unwilling.' <sup>13</sup> Acc. subj. of *versari*; 'that the Germans should remain.' <sup>14</sup> *ita nolēbant*; see the force of the *imperf.*, 'were also unwilling.' <sup>15</sup> Acc. subj. of the two following infinitives, 'that the army of . . . should winter,' etc.

409.—<sup>1</sup> *cum + pluperf.* subjunc.; see (263). <sup>2</sup> *certiorem + act.*; see (333): why *eum*, not *se*? see (214). <sup>3</sup> Notice that the voice is *pass.*; indir. disc.; see (301, 302, 305, 318). <sup>4</sup> Pers. agent; see (237). <sup>5</sup> The *active* voice, *indir. disc.* <sup>6</sup> Verbs of *fear*; see (343). <sup>7</sup> Sequence of tense; see (135). <sup>8</sup> Abl. of means without a preposition; see (43 b). <sup>9</sup> *cum*, 'with,' is post-positive with the *personal*, *reflexive*, and *relative* pronouns; *quibuscum*.

## LESSON LXXVII.

## CHAPTER I, CONTINUED.

*Additional reasons for the conspiracy. Caesar's preparations.*

410.—Belgae sollicitābantur partim ab eīs quī mōbilitāte<sup>1</sup> et levitāte<sup>1</sup> animī novīs imperiīs<sup>2</sup> studēbant: partim ab nōnnūllīs etiam, quod<sup>3</sup> in Galliā vulgō rēgna<sup>4</sup> ā potentiōribus<sup>5</sup> atque eīs<sup>6</sup> quī ad condūcendōs<sup>6</sup> hominēs facultātēs habēbant occupābantur. Hīs nūntiīs litterisque commōtus<sup>7</sup> Caesar duās legiōnēs novās in citeriōre Galliā cōscripsit et Pedium lēgātum quī<sup>8</sup> initā<sup>9</sup> aestāte eās legiōnēs in interiōrem Galliam dēdūceret<sup>10</sup> mīsīt.

411.—Those<sup>1</sup> by<sup>2</sup> whom the Belgians were incited desired a revolution.<sup>3</sup> By hiring<sup>4</sup> men the more powerful<sup>1</sup> generally seized sovereignty<sup>5</sup> in Gaul. These messages alarmed Caesar, by<sup>2</sup> whom two new legions were quickly enrolled. Pedius his lieutenant *is sent*<sup>6</sup> to lead<sup>7</sup> those legions into Gaul.

## LESSON LXXVIII.

## CHAPTER II.

*Caesar leads his army into the country of the Belgae.*

412. Ipse [Caesar], cum primum<sup>1</sup> cōpia pābuli esse inciperet,<sup>2</sup> ad exercitum vēnit. Dat<sup>3</sup> negōtium Senonibus<sup>4</sup> reli-

410.—<sup>1</sup> Ablatives of *cause*; see (210): 'on account of fickleness,' etc. <sup>2</sup> Dat. indir. obj. of *studebant*; see 'dat. with special verbs' (348). <sup>3</sup> Goes with *occupabantur*. <sup>4</sup> Neut. plur. subj. of *occupabantur*; 'sovereignty was being seized.' <sup>5</sup> 'Adjs. as substantives'; see (258). <sup>6</sup> 'Gerundive construction'; see (253). <sup>7</sup> See (316): begin the translation with this word, 'alarmed greatly by . . . Caesar enrolled.' <sup>8</sup> 'Rel. clause of purpose'; see (311). <sup>9</sup> From *ineo*, p. p. abl. absol. with *aestate*. <sup>10</sup> Sequence? see (135). \*

411.—<sup>1</sup> 'Adjectives used as substantives'; see (258). <sup>2</sup> a. <sup>3</sup> *novis imperiis*; see note 2, (410). <sup>4</sup> Gerundive construction; see (253). <sup>5</sup> See note 4, (410). <sup>6</sup> Note the change of tense. <sup>7</sup> 'Rel. clause of purpose'; see (311) and (355).

412.—<sup>1</sup> 'as soon as.' <sup>2</sup> 'began': *copia* the subj. <sup>3</sup> Historical present. <sup>4</sup> See *negotium do* (330).

quīsque Gallīs quī erant initimī<sup>5</sup> Belgīs, uti<sup>6</sup> (= ut) ea<sup>7</sup> quae apud eōs gerantur<sup>8</sup> cōgnōscant sēque<sup>9</sup> dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā<sup>10</sup> castra movet diēbusque<sup>11</sup> circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

413.—Caesar himself<sup>1</sup> will come to the army because there<sup>2</sup> is a supply of fodder. He *employed* the Senones to find out<sup>3</sup> those things which the Belgians were doing.<sup>4</sup> Caesar informed his<sup>5</sup> men that he would obtain<sup>6</sup> a supply of corn and would break camp within five days.<sup>7</sup>

## LESSON LXXIX.

### CHAPTER III.

*The Remi refuse to enter the league against Caesar.*

414.—Eō<sup>1</sup> cum Caesar vēnisset, Rēmī quī proximī Galliae<sup>2</sup> ex Belgīs sunt ad eum lēgātōs prīmōs<sup>3</sup> civitātis misērunt, quī dicerent:<sup>4</sup> ‘sē<sup>5</sup> suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere,<sup>6</sup> neque<sup>7</sup> sē cum Belgīs reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāvisse.’ Lēgātī,<sup>8</sup> cum pervēnissent, nūntiāvērunt civitātem parātā<sup>9</sup> esse et<sup>10</sup> obsidēs dare et imperāta

<sup>5</sup> Nom. predicate. <sup>6</sup> uti . . . cognoscant, faciant following dat negotium; see (330); note the sequence. <sup>7</sup> Obj. of cognoscant; see (258). <sup>8</sup> ‘Intermediate rel. clause, subjunc. by attraction’; see (276). <sup>9</sup> Reflexive; refers to the subj. of the main verb dat (negotium); position of que, see (215), page 82. <sup>10</sup> Abl. absol. <sup>11</sup> Abl. of time within which; see (65).

413.—<sup>1</sup> Intensive pron. ipse. <sup>2</sup> Omit. <sup>3</sup> Be careful as to sequence; ‘employed’ is *past*; see notes 4 and 6, (412). <sup>4</sup> Subjunc. by attraction; notice that this verb is in the *active voice*. <sup>5</sup> Omit ‘men’ and use the proper form of *suns*. <sup>6</sup> Fut. infin. act., with subj. se (‘he’); see (318), example 3. <sup>7</sup> Abl. of time within which; see (65).

414.—<sup>1</sup> ‘thither.’ <sup>2</sup> See ‘dat. with adjs.’; (126). <sup>3</sup> See (258): ‘the foremost men.’ <sup>4</sup> Not ‘who said,’ but ‘who should (were to) say’; see (311). <sup>5</sup> Acc. obj. of permittere; the subj. of permittere is se understood. <sup>6</sup> Equivalent to a fut.; ‘that they would place themselves . . . under the protection,’ etc. <sup>7</sup> ‘and not,’ ‘and that they had not united . . . nor (neque) had they conspired.’ <sup>8</sup> ‘After (cum) the ambassadors had arrived, they announced.’ <sup>9</sup> Acc. pred. after esse. <sup>10</sup> ‘Both.’

facere et oppidīs eum accipere ac frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre.

415.—The foremost<sup>1</sup> men of their state will be sent to Caesar as ambassadors<sup>2</sup> by the Remi to say<sup>3</sup> that they<sup>4</sup> will receive him<sup>5</sup> in their towns. Because they had not conspired and were<sup>6</sup> ready to give up themselves and all their possessions,<sup>7</sup> the Remi aided Caesar with the corn<sup>8</sup> which they had brought from<sup>9</sup> the fields of the Sequani.

## LESSON LXXX.

### CHAPTER III, CONTINUED.

*The Remi inform Caesar concerning the number of the enemies' forces.*

416.—Rēmī dīxērunt reliquōs<sup>1</sup> omnēs in armīs esse,<sup>2</sup> Germānōsque<sup>3</sup> quī cis Rhēnum incolant<sup>4</sup> sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque<sup>5</sup> esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut<sup>6</sup> nē Suessiōnēs quidem,<sup>7</sup> frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, dētērrēre potuerint quīn cum hīs cōsentīrent.<sup>8</sup> Cum Caesar ab<sup>9</sup> hīs quaereret quae cīvitatēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid<sup>11</sup> in bellō possent,<sup>10</sup> sīc reperībat.

417.—When<sup>1</sup> the Germans united<sup>2</sup> with the Belgians, the Remi sent ambassadors to Caesar, who said<sup>3</sup> that they were

415.—<sup>1</sup> See (258) and note 3, (414). <sup>2</sup> Appositive. <sup>3</sup> Affirmative purpose. <sup>4</sup> se. <sup>5</sup> eum. <sup>6</sup> Imperf. indic. <sup>7</sup> Omit. <sup>8</sup> Abl. of means; see (43 b). <sup>9</sup> ex.

416.—<sup>1</sup> Used as a substantive, subj. of esse. <sup>2</sup> 'were.' <sup>3</sup> Acc. subj. of coniūnxisse; 'and that the Germans . . . had united.' <sup>4</sup> Subjunc. because a subord. verb in indir. disc.; incolunt in the direct; see (306). <sup>5</sup> Connects coniūnxisse and the esse following. <sup>6</sup> ut . . . potuerint, affirmative result; in clauses of result, the perf. subjunc. is very often used after past tenses: 'that they (the Remi) could not hinder even the Suessiones.' <sup>7</sup> ne . . . quidem, 'not even'; emphasize the word between them. <sup>8</sup> quin + subjunc. (clause of result) following dētērrēre; see (370). <sup>9</sup> 'of these.' <sup>10</sup> essent, possent; subjunctives of indir. quest.; see (313): essent = 'were.' <sup>11</sup> quid; adverbial accusative with possent; see (374): quid . . . possent = 'what they could do,' or 'how much power they had.'

417.—<sup>1</sup> Use ubi; see (203, 358). <sup>2</sup> se coniungo. <sup>3</sup> dixerunt.

not able<sup>4</sup> to prevent their own brothers and kinsmen from conspiring.<sup>5</sup> Caesar finds out<sup>6</sup> what and how great states are<sup>7</sup> under arms and what<sup>8</sup> they can do<sup>7</sup> in war.

## LESSON LXXXI.

### CHAPTER IV.

#### *The origin and power of the Belgae.*

418.—Caesar reperiēbat plērōsque<sup>1</sup> Belgās ab Germānīs ortōs esse<sup>2</sup> Rhēnumque<sup>3</sup> antīquitus trāductōs<sup>4</sup> propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōs<sup>5</sup>que<sup>6</sup> quī ea loca incolerent<sup>7</sup> expulisse. Caesar reperiēbat Belgās sōlōs<sup>8</sup> esse quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finīs ingredi<sup>9</sup> prohibuerint.<sup>10</sup>

419.—The Gauls were driven<sup>1</sup> out of those places which<sup>2</sup> they were inhabiting by the Belgians<sup>3</sup> whose fathers were descended from<sup>4</sup> the Germans. The Belgians were led across<sup>5</sup> the Rhine in olden times and<sup>6</sup> drove out the Gauls who could not prevent<sup>7</sup> them from seizing<sup>8</sup> a large part of Gaul.

<sup>4</sup> 'they were not able' = *se non posse*. <sup>5</sup> *quin* + *impf. subjunc.*; see (370). <sup>6</sup> Pres. indic. of *reperio*. <sup>7</sup> Indir. quest.: for mood, see (313); for tense, see (135). <sup>8</sup> *quid*; see note 11 (416): note the change in the tense.

418 —<sup>1</sup> 'that most of the Belgians.' <sup>2</sup> 'were descended.' <sup>3</sup> Connects *ortos* esse and *consedis*se, with *Belgas* as the subj. <sup>4</sup> p. p. p. mod. *Belgas*; see (316). <sup>5</sup> Dir. obj. of *expulisse*. <sup>6</sup> Connects *consedis*se and *expulisse*, having *Belgas* as the subj. <sup>7</sup> Subord. verb in O. O.; see (306). <sup>8</sup> 'were the only ones': after *solus sum*, even in O. R., the mood of the relative clause is generally *subjunc.* <sup>9</sup> 'from entering'; see (370). <sup>10</sup> *Subjunc.*; subord. clause in indir. disc.: strictly speaking it is a *rel. clause of characteristic*, which takes the *subjunc.*; see note 8. Observe that the *perf. subjunc.* is here used after the *past tense*; see (416), note 6.

419.—<sup>1</sup> Perf. indic. pass. <sup>2</sup> For *gend. of the rel.* see (39), foot-note 1. <sup>3</sup> Person. agent; see (237). <sup>4</sup> a or ab. <sup>5</sup> Change to p. p. p.; see (381), and text above. <sup>6</sup> Omit. <sup>7</sup> 'could not prevent,' *impedire non poterant*. <sup>8</sup> *quin* + *subjunc.*; see (370) and text.

## LESSON LXXXII.

## CHAPTER V.

*The Remi surrender hostages and give aid to Caesar.*

420.—Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus<sup>1</sup> liberāliterque<sup>2</sup> orātiōne prōsecūtus<sup>1</sup> omnem senātum<sup>3</sup> ad sē convenīre prīncipumque liberōs<sup>4</sup> obsidēs<sup>5</sup> ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae<sup>6</sup> omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse<sup>7</sup> Dīvitiācum Aeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet<sup>8</sup> sē manūs hostium distentūrum<sup>9</sup> esse, nē<sup>10</sup> cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōflīgendum sit.<sup>11</sup>

421.—Caesar urged<sup>1</sup> the Remi to bring<sup>2</sup> their children as hostages and to do<sup>2</sup> all those<sup>3</sup> things which they had promised.<sup>4</sup> After<sup>5</sup> Caesar had addressed the Remi kindly, all their senate was ordered<sup>6</sup> to gather together before<sup>7</sup> him. Caesar will not join<sup>8</sup> in battle, unless the bands of the enemy are kept apart.<sup>9</sup>

420.—<sup>1</sup> Depon. perf. participles mod. Caesar; see (340): *prosecutus* = 'having addressed.' <sup>2</sup> Connects *cohortatus* and *prosecutus*. <sup>3</sup> Acc. subj. of *convenire*, clause depending upon *iussit*; 'he ordered their whole senate to assemble before him.' <sup>4</sup> Acc. subj. of *adduci*. <sup>5</sup> Apposition with *liberos*. <sup>6</sup> Relative at the beginning of the sent.; 'now (and) all of these things'; see (367). <sup>7</sup> Intensive pron., 'Caesar himself.' <sup>8</sup> 'states,' verb of saying or declaring followed by *acc.* + *inf.* <sup>9</sup> Subject is *se*, 'that he will keep apart.' <sup>10</sup> Neg. purpose clause; see (320). <sup>11</sup> Pres. subjunc. *pass.* of the periphrastic conjugation; see (361); here an *impersonal verb*, see (365): 'so that it may not have to be fought'; more freely, 'that he may not have to fight.'

421.—<sup>1</sup> Perf. indic. of *cohortor*; see (347). <sup>2</sup> Be careful as to the sequence; at the time he urged them, the action implied in 'bringing the children' and 'doing the things' was *incomplete, unfinished* and as yet in the *future*. <sup>3</sup> See (258). <sup>4</sup> Subjunc. by *attraction*; note the sequence, the action in 'had promised' being completed; see (276). <sup>5</sup> Historical *cum*; see (203, 263, 359). <sup>6</sup> Perf. indic. *pass.* of *inbeo*. <sup>7</sup> *ad* + *acc.* <sup>8</sup> Use the phrase *proelium committere*, *proelium* being *accus.* <sup>9</sup> 'are kept apart,' verb in the *protasis* of a *more viv. fut. condition*; write this in *two tenses*; see (223).

## LESSON LXXXIII.

## CHAPTER V, CONTINUED.

*Caesar hastens forward to meet the Belgae.*

422.—Sī Aeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum suās cōpiās intrōdūxerint<sup>1</sup> et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint,<sup>1</sup> id fieri poterit. Caesar postquam<sup>2</sup> omnīs<sup>3</sup> Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās<sup>4</sup> ad sē.venire vīdit, et ab<sup>5</sup> eīs explōrātōribus quōs mīserat et ab<sup>5</sup> Rēmīs eās cōpiās iam nōn longē abesse<sup>6</sup> cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit.

423.—If the forces of the Aedui are led<sup>1</sup> into the boundaries of the Bellovaci, these<sup>2</sup> things will be done.<sup>3</sup> When<sup>4</sup> scouts informed<sup>5</sup> Caesar that the forces of the Belgians were being collected,<sup>6</sup> he prepared to cross the river. While the Belgians were gathering all their forces into one place, Caesar led his army across the river. After<sup>7</sup> all the forces of the Belgians had been gathered together, Caesar led his army into the farthest territories of the Remi.

---

422.—<sup>1</sup> *More vivid fut.*; see (223). <sup>2</sup> Introduces *vīdit* and *cognovit*, joined by *et*; see (358): 'when C. saw that . . . and found out that . . .' <sup>3</sup> *omnis*: acc. plur. = *omnes*. <sup>4</sup> p. p. p. mod. *copias*, translated by a *finite verb*, 'had been collected and were coming; see (381). <sup>5</sup> Adverbial phrases mod. *cognovit*; 'when he found out from those scouts,' etc. <sup>6</sup> Indir. disc. depend upon *cognovit*: 'that those forces were now . . . distant.' <sup>7</sup> Does *quod* refer to and agree with *Axonam* or *flumen*, and why?

423.—<sup>1</sup> Place in two tenses; see (223). <sup>2</sup> Neut. plur. as noun, omit *things*. <sup>3</sup> The *pass.* of *facio* is *fio*: place in the fut. indic. <sup>4</sup> *ubi* + *indic.*; see (203). <sup>5</sup> *certiorem* + *act.*; see (333). <sup>6</sup> Indir. disc. (main verb) after *certiorem fecerunt*, which is taken as a verb of *saying*; what *voice* and *time* are indicated? <sup>7</sup> Render by abl. absol.; see (287), example 3.

## LESSON LXXXIV.

## CHAPTER VI.

*The Belgae attack a town of the Remi. Mode of attack.*

424.—Ab his<sup>1</sup> castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia<sup>2</sup> passuum octō. Id ex itinere<sup>3</sup> māgnō impetū<sup>4</sup> Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est.<sup>5</sup> Ubi, multitudīne<sup>6</sup> hominum tōtīs moenibus<sup>7</sup> circumiectā,<sup>8</sup> undique in mūrū lapidēs iaci<sup>8</sup> coepti sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus<sup>9</sup> nūdātus est, testūdine<sup>10</sup> factā portās succēdunt mūrūque subruunt. Quod<sup>11</sup> tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla cōnicerent,<sup>12</sup> in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī.<sup>13</sup>

425.—While the Belgians were attacking the town which<sup>1</sup> had<sup>2</sup> tall fortifications, a testudo was made so that they might draw near<sup>3</sup> the wall. After stones and javelins had been thrown<sup>4</sup> from all sides upon the wall and the wall had been stripped<sup>4</sup> of defenders, the townsmen<sup>1</sup> did not have<sup>5</sup> the power of holding out any longer. Since<sup>6</sup> the townsmen saw (were seeing) that so great a multitude were throwing stones and javelins upon the wall and<sup>7</sup> that they<sup>8</sup> could not<sup>7</sup> hold out longer, they surrendered themselves and all their possessions<sup>9</sup> to the Belgians.<sup>10</sup>

424.—<sup>1</sup> 'from this camp'; adverbial phrase limits aberat. <sup>2</sup> Acc. of extent in space; see (342). <sup>3</sup> ex itinere, 'turning aside from the march'; making an attack immediately after a march without preparation. <sup>4</sup> Abl. of manner, mod. oppugnare coeperunt; see (210). <sup>5</sup> Impers. verb; see (365). <sup>6</sup> Abl. absol., 'a multitude of men being thrown around all the walls.' <sup>7</sup> Dat. indir. obj. of circumiecta. <sup>8</sup> Pres. pass. infin. of iacio; with a pass. infin. coepi is put in the pass. <sup>9</sup> Abl. of sep. mod. nudatus est; 'of defenders'; see (221). <sup>10</sup> Abl. absol.: a testudo was a covering for the soldiers' heads made by overlapping the shields like shingles on a roof, and used in approaching and storming walls. <sup>11</sup> See (367): 'and this thing.' <sup>12</sup> Plur., agreeing with multitudo taken collectively. <sup>13</sup> See (357): 'power was to no one'—'no one had the power.'

425.—<sup>1</sup> Dat. of possession; see (357). <sup>2</sup> erant. <sup>3</sup> Observe the sequence. <sup>4</sup> Render both clauses by abl. absol.; see (287). <sup>5</sup> erat. <sup>6</sup> See 'causal cum,' (350). <sup>7</sup> 'and not' = neque. <sup>8</sup> se, acc. subj. <sup>9</sup> Omit. <sup>10</sup> Dat.

## LESSON LXXXV.

## CHAPTERS VI AND VII.

*The Remi ask aid from Caesar, who sends relief.*

426.—Cum finem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus summā nōbilitāte<sup>1</sup> et grātiā<sup>1</sup> inter suōs,<sup>2</sup> quī tum oppidō<sup>3</sup> praefuerat, ūnus<sup>4</sup> ex eīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, ad eum nūntium quī<sup>5</sup> auxilium peteret mīsīt. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem<sup>6</sup> ducibus<sup>7</sup> ūsus quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, sagittāriōs et funditōrēs sub-sidiō<sup>8</sup> oppidānīs<sup>9</sup> mittit; quōrum adventū<sup>9</sup> et<sup>10</sup> Rēmīs<sup>11</sup> cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus<sup>12</sup> eādē dē causā spēs potiundī<sup>13</sup> oppidī discessit.

427.—Because of the hope<sup>1</sup> of driving<sup>2</sup> the Belgians out of their territories, the Remi ordered Iccius to go<sup>3</sup> to Caesar as an ambassador and to ask for help. Because Iccius whom<sup>4</sup> the Remi had put in command of their town<sup>4</sup> was friendly to the Roman people,<sup>5</sup> Caesar said he would send<sup>6</sup> archers and slingers as a relief<sup>7</sup> to the town.<sup>7</sup> Now<sup>8</sup> upon the arrival of these<sup>8</sup> the townsmen fought with great courage<sup>9</sup> and<sup>10</sup> the enemy could not<sup>10</sup> storm their town.

---

426.—<sup>1</sup> Ablatives of *quality*; supply *vir* (a man) and translate the *abl.* like the *gen.*; see (376). <sup>2</sup> Adj. used as noun; see (258). <sup>3</sup> See 'dat. with compound verbs'; (337). <sup>4</sup> See (378), 'partitive genitive—exceptions.' <sup>5</sup> Rel. clause of purpose; see (311). <sup>6</sup> Adj. used as noun, obj. (*abl.*) of *usus*; 'using (making use of) the same men'; see (353). <sup>7</sup> Apposition; 'as guides.' <sup>8</sup> Doub. dat.; see (352). <sup>9</sup> Abl. of *cause* mod. *accessit* and *discessit*; 'on account of whose arrival.' <sup>10</sup> 'both.' <sup>11</sup> Dat. indir. obj. of *accessit*; 'eagerness to fight was inspired in the Remi.' <sup>12</sup> Dat. with a verb of *taking away* (*discessit*) instead of the *abl.* of separation; 'frōm the enemy.' <sup>13</sup> *potiundi* = *potiendi*: gerundive construction; see (253).

427.—<sup>1</sup> *spe*, an *abl.* of *cause*. <sup>2</sup> Use *de* and the *abl.* of the gerundive; see (253). <sup>3</sup> 'Iccius to go' = acc. + infin., if *iubeo* is used; *what*, if *impero*? <sup>4</sup> *praeficio* takes *acc.* and *dat.*: 'whom' to be turned into the *acc.*, 'town' into the *dat.*; see (337). <sup>5</sup> See 'dat. with adjs.'; (126). <sup>6</sup> Indir. disc.; *what time* is indicated? <sup>7</sup> Doub. dat.; see (352). <sup>8</sup> 'now these'; render both words by the relative pron.; see (367). <sup>9</sup> Abl. of *manner*; see (210). <sup>10</sup> 'and not' = *neque*.

## LESSON LXXXVI.

## CHAPTER VII, CONTINUED.

*The Belgae abandon the siege and turn against Caesar.*

428.—Itaque paulisper apud<sup>1</sup> oppidum morātī<sup>2</sup> agrōs-  
que Rēmōrum dēpopulātī,<sup>2</sup> omnibus<sup>3</sup> vicīs aedificiisque  
quōs<sup>4</sup> adire potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus  
cōpiīs contendērunt et ab<sup>5</sup> mīlibus passuum minus duōbus  
castra posuērunt. Quae<sup>6</sup> castra, ut<sup>7</sup> fūmō atque ignibus  
significābātur, amplius<sup>8</sup> mīlibus<sup>9</sup> passuum octō in lātītū-  
dinem patēbant. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem  
hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis<sup>10</sup> proeliō<sup>11</sup>  
supersedere statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs<sup>12</sup>  
hostium virtutem periclitābātur.

429.—The Belgians will delay<sup>1</sup> many days<sup>2</sup> near the  
town whose<sup>3</sup> walls they cannot storm so as to lay waste<sup>4</sup>  
the fields of the Remi and burn<sup>4</sup> their buildings. Because  
he saw<sup>5</sup> that the multitude of the enemy was so great,<sup>6</sup>  
Caesar commanded the leaders<sup>7</sup> of the infantry to refrain<sup>7</sup>  
from battle. Fearing<sup>8</sup> the power and courage of the

428 —<sup>1</sup> 'near.' <sup>2</sup> Depon. perf. participles mod. *hostes*, the subj. implied in *contenderunt*; see (340). <sup>3</sup> *omnibus . . . incensis*: abl. absol. of *time*, mod. *contenderunt*. <sup>4</sup> *quos*: has two antecedents, *vicis* and *aedificiis*. When the *gender* of two or more antecedents is different, the relative takes the gender sometimes of the *strongest* or *most important* word, sometimes that of the *nearest* word; *quos* in this sentence takes the gender of *vicis*, the more important noun. <sup>5</sup> *ab . . . duobus*: *ab* is used adverbially, 'off,' i.e., distant from the Roman camp. *milibus duobus*: abl. of *degree of difference*, 'by two thousand,' the abl. being used without reference to the comparative *minus*, which does not affect the construction; the force of *minus* is seen in the translation, 'by two thousand [and] less.' The entire phrase is best translated 'less than two miles off.' <sup>6</sup> 'now this'; see (367). <sup>7</sup> *ut*, 'as.' <sup>8</sup> Accus. of extent in space: see (342). <sup>9</sup> Abl. with the comparative *amplius*; see (369). See the other construction for these neuter comparatives, note 5 above (*minus*). <sup>10</sup> 'for valor.' <sup>11</sup> 'from battle.' <sup>12</sup> Abl. of means mod. *periclitabatur*.

429.—<sup>1</sup> Deponent verb. <sup>2</sup> See (342). <sup>3</sup> Why *gen. sing. neut.*? <sup>4</sup> See (320, 355). <sup>5</sup> Imperf. indic. <sup>6</sup> Pred. adj. after *esse*. <sup>7</sup> See (134, 135, 145). <sup>8</sup> Perf. particip. (depon.).

Belgians who <sup>9</sup> had large forces, Caesar ordered his leaders not to begin battle on that day.

## LESSON LXXXVII.

### CHAPTER VIII.

*Caesar protects his camp with strong defences.*

**430.**—Is collis,<sup>1</sup> ubi <sup>2</sup> castra Caesaris posita erant, paululum ex plānitīē ēditus<sup>3</sup> in lātītūdinem tantum <sup>4</sup> locī <sup>5</sup> patebat quantum aciēs instrūcta<sup>6</sup> occupāre poterat. Caesar <sup>7</sup> ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs <sup>8</sup> intellēxit, locō <sup>9</sup> prō castrīs ad aciem instruendam <sup>10</sup> nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, ab <sup>11</sup> utrōque latere ēius collis <sup>12</sup> trānsversam fossam obdūxit. Ad extrēmās fossās <sup>13</sup> castella cōstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, <sup>14</sup> cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs ab lateribus suōs <sup>15</sup> pūgnantēs circumvenīre possent.

**431.**—A place suitable for<sup>1</sup> setting up<sup>2</sup> redoubts and engines of war is chosen by<sup>3</sup> those scouts whom Caesar sent forward during the second watch.<sup>4</sup> Unless Caesar should dig<sup>5</sup> a ditch, the enemy would surround<sup>6</sup> our infantry on their flanks and kill them while (as) they were fighting.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>9</sup> Dat. of possession; see (357).

**430.**—<sup>1</sup> is collis: 'that hill,' subj. of patebat. <sup>2</sup> 'where.' <sup>3</sup> Limits collis; 'sloping upward gradually from the plain.' <sup>4</sup> Accus. of extent in space; see (342). <sup>5</sup> Partitive gen. with tantum; 'as much ground as (quantum).' <sup>6</sup> Mod. acies; 'an army drawn up for battle.' <sup>7</sup> Order: 'when Caesar perceived . . . he dug,' etc. <sup>8</sup> Adj. in the pred. accus. after esse; 'that our men were not inferior (in courage).' <sup>9</sup> loco . . . idoneo; see (364), example 2. <sup>10</sup> See (253). <sup>11</sup> ab . . . latere: adverbial phrase (latus, lateris), mod. obdūxit. <sup>12</sup> Gen. depend. upon latere. <sup>13</sup> 'at the ends of the ditches.' <sup>14</sup> ne . . . possent: neg. purpose; see (320). <sup>15</sup> suos: adj. used as a substantive modified by pugnantes (pres. particip.): pugnans is declined in (467). Translate, 'his men while (as) they were fighting.' The pres. particip. is translated, 'as (while) they are or were —ing.'

**431.**—<sup>1</sup> ad. <sup>2</sup> Gerundive in agreement with the acc.; see (253). <sup>3</sup> Pers. agent; see (237). <sup>4</sup> Abl. of time, without prep. <sup>5</sup> See 'less viv. fut. condition' (335). <sup>6</sup> 'while they were fighting': render by the pres. particip.; why acc.?

Caesar drew up his line of battle upon a hill<sup>7</sup> fortified by nature, in order that<sup>8</sup> his infantry as they were fighting<sup>9</sup> might not<sup>8</sup> be surrounded by the enemy.

## LESSON LXXXVIII.

### CHAPTERS VIII AND IX.

*The Belgae encamp opposite Caesar's camp across a marsh.*

432.—Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus quās<sup>1</sup> proximē cōscripserat in castrīs relictīs, ut<sup>2</sup> sī quō<sup>3</sup> opus esset<sup>4</sup> subsidiō<sup>5</sup> dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ē castrīs ēductās<sup>6</sup> instrūxerant. Palūs erat nōn<sup>7</sup> māgna inter nostrum<sup>8</sup> atque hostium exercitum. Hostēs expectābant sī<sup>9</sup> hanc nostrī trānsirent; nostrī autem in armīs erant parātī ut impedītōs<sup>10</sup> aggrederentur, sī ab illīs trānseundī initium fieret.<sup>11</sup> Interim proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendēbātur.<sup>12</sup> Ubi neutrī initium trānseundī faciunt proeliō<sup>13</sup> equitum nostrīs secundiōre<sup>13</sup> Caesar in castra suōs redūxit.

433.—If Caesar leaves<sup>1</sup> the two legions, which<sup>2</sup> were

<sup>7</sup> Abl. of *place where* with *in*. <sup>8</sup> 'in order that . . . not': neg. purpose; see (320). <sup>9</sup> 'as they were fighting'; render by the pres. particip.; why *nom*?

432.—<sup>1</sup> Why 'which he *had enrolled*,' and not 'which *had been enrolled*'?

<sup>2</sup> *ut* . . . possent: shows the *purpose of* and derives its *sequence* from *relictis*.

<sup>3</sup> *quo* = adv., 'anywhere'; translate the clause, 'if they were needed anywhere.'

<sup>4</sup> subjunc. by attraction; see (276). <sup>5</sup> Dat. of purpose, end or service; 'as (for) a relief.'

<sup>6</sup> 'had led out . . . and arranged in order'; see (381). <sup>7</sup> A negative with *large* = 'small.'

<sup>8</sup> Mod. *exercitum*. <sup>9</sup> Indir. quest. introduced by *sī*, 'whether'; 'kept waiting to see (*expectabant*) whether our men would cross';

for mood in 'indir. quest.' see (313). <sup>10</sup> p. p. p. mod. *eos* (*hostes*), obj. of *aggrederentur*;

'to attack them placed at a disadvantage.' <sup>11</sup> *sī* . . . *fieret*: depends upon *aggrederentur*, hence subjunc. (see note 4); bear in mind that *fieret* is the *passive* of *facio*.

<sup>12</sup> Impersonal; see (365). <sup>13</sup> Abl. absol.; see (364), example 2.

433.—<sup>1</sup> Fut. or fut. pf. indic. (223, 335). <sup>2</sup> Why *nominative*? Compare this with note 1 (432).

recently enrolled, as a defence<sup>3</sup> to the camp,<sup>3</sup> the enemy will not lead out their forces. If the enemy should try<sup>4</sup> to cross the swamp, our cavalry would surround<sup>5</sup> them on all sides and attack<sup>4</sup> (them). After drawing up<sup>6</sup> all their forces in front of their camp the enemy sent forward cavalry who were to<sup>7</sup> attack the two legions that were left<sup>8</sup> in our camp.

## LESSON LXXXIX.

### CHAPTER IX, CONTINUED.

*The enemy attempt to cross the river and surprise Titurius.*

434.—Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod<sup>1</sup> esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō,<sup>2</sup> ut<sup>3</sup> sī possent<sup>4</sup> castellum cui<sup>5</sup> praeerat Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus<sup>6</sup> potuissent,<sup>7</sup> (ut) agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur<sup>8</sup> quī ad<sup>9</sup> bellum gerendum māgnō ūsuī<sup>10</sup> nobīs<sup>10</sup> erant com-meātūque<sup>11</sup> nostrōs prohibērent.<sup>8</sup> Caesar ab Titūriō certior factus<sup>12</sup> omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae<sup>13</sup> Numidās,

<sup>3</sup> Doub. dat.; see (352). <sup>4</sup> Pres. subjunc. in a less viv. fut. condition; see (335). <sup>5</sup> 'would surround'; change to p. p. p., omit *and*, and make *attack* the verb of the apodosis; order, 'would attack (them) surrounded on all sides'; see text (432) and note 10. <sup>6</sup> Render by abl. absol.: 'all their forces having been,' etc.; see (287). <sup>7</sup> 'who were to attack': *rel. clause of purpose*; be careful about the *sequence*; see (311). <sup>8</sup> 'that were left'; render by the p. p. p.

434.—<sup>1</sup> Nom. subj. of *demonstratum est*; 'which has been shown to be in the rear of.' <sup>2</sup> 'with this design (in view).' <sup>3</sup> *ut* . . . *expugnarent, interscinderent*: affirmative purpose and explanatory of *eo consilio*; 'with this design, viz., to storm,' etc. <sup>4</sup> Subjunc. by attraction, time *unfinished* (see *potuissent*, note 7). <sup>5</sup> Dat. with comp. verb. <sup>6</sup> *minus* = *non*. <sup>7</sup> 'if (having made the attempt) they should not have been (should not be) able'; *potuissent* is *pluperf.* to show time finished: since *conati sunt traducere* denotes *past time*, the depend. subjunctives appear in either the *imperf.* or *pluperf.* <sup>8</sup> Introduced by *ut*, explaining *eo consilio* (see note 3). <sup>9</sup> 'for.' <sup>10</sup> Doub. dat.; 'were very useful to us.' <sup>11</sup> Abl. of *separation*. <sup>12</sup> 'Upon being informed (as to this) by Titurius, Caesar leads.' <sup>13</sup> Gen. depend. upon *Numidas*; 'of light equipment.'

funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit.

435.—After<sup>1</sup> the enemy had reached<sup>2</sup> that river on whose banks<sup>3</sup> our camp had been pitched, they attempted to find<sup>4</sup> fords so that they might lead across a part of their forces. By destroying<sup>5</sup> the bridge and storming the redoubts over which<sup>6</sup> Caesar had placed his lieutenant Titurius in command, the enemy will be able to cut off<sup>7</sup> our men from supplies. The enemy will try to cross the river so as to storm the redoubt and cut down the bridge, if they can.<sup>8</sup>

## LESSON XC.

### CHAPTER X.

*The Belgae are defeated in a fierce battle.*

436.—Ācriter in eō locō pūgnātum est.<sup>1</sup> Hostēs<sup>2</sup> in flūmine impeditōs<sup>3</sup> nostrī aggressi<sup>4</sup> māgnū eōrum numerum occidērunt; reliquōs<sup>5</sup> per eōrum corpora audācissimē trānsire cōnantēs<sup>6</sup> nostrī multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōs,<sup>7</sup> quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs<sup>8</sup> interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi<sup>9</sup> et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem<sup>10</sup> sē fefellisse intellēxērunt, neque<sup>11</sup>

435.—<sup>1</sup> cum. Order: 'the enemy, after they had reached,' etc. <sup>2</sup> pervenio ad + acc. <sup>3</sup> in + abl. <sup>4</sup> Complementary infin. following attempted; verbs which imply another action of the same subject to complete their meaning take the complementary infin. without a subj. acc. <sup>5</sup> Gerundive; see (253). <sup>6</sup> Dat.; why? <sup>7</sup> Pres. infin. act. of prohibeo. <sup>8</sup> Subjunctive, by attraction.

436.—<sup>1</sup> Impersonal; see (365). <sup>2</sup> Acc. obj. of aggressi. <sup>3</sup> Mod. hostes; 'the enemy placed at a disadvantage in the river.' <sup>4</sup> Mod. the subj. nostri; 'having attacked . . . our men slew.' <sup>5</sup> Acc. obj. of reppulerunt, whose subj. is nostri. <sup>6</sup> Pres. particip. acc. plur. mod. reliquos (used as noun); 'the rest as they were trying.' <sup>7</sup> Acc. obj. of interfecerunt. <sup>8</sup> Mod. primos, but translated by a co-ordinate verb; see (381). <sup>9</sup> ubi; see (203, 358); ubi introduces intellexerunt, viderunt, and coepit. <sup>10</sup> Acc. subj. of fefellisse. <sup>11</sup> 'and that our men were not advancing' (progredi).

nostrōs in locum inīquīōrem prōgredī pūgnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs<sup>12</sup> rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, concilium convocāvērunt.

437.—The enemy hindered in the river were driven back by our men and the foremost were surrounded<sup>1</sup> by the cavalry and killed by the darts of our men. Because<sup>2</sup> hope with respect to crossing the river kept failing<sup>3</sup> the enemy, they decided after calling<sup>4</sup> a council of war to surrender themselves and all their possessions to Caesar. Since<sup>5</sup> the enemy saw<sup>6</sup> that our men had killed<sup>7</sup> the foremost, who had tried<sup>8</sup> very boldly to cross, and were driving back<sup>7</sup> the rest, they sent ambassadors to Caesar with respect to peace.

## LESSON XCI.

### CHAPTER X, CONTINUED.

*The Belgae decide to return home.*

438.—Conciliō convocātō Belgae cōstituērunt optimum<sup>1</sup> esse quemque<sup>2</sup> domum<sup>3</sup> suam revertī et undique convenīre ad<sup>4</sup> eōs dēfendendōs quōrum in fīnīs prīmum Rōmānī<sup>5</sup> exercitum intrōdūxissent,<sup>6</sup> ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs

<sup>12</sup> 'themselves,' as distinguished from our men; it is the object of *deficere*.

437.—<sup>1</sup> Change thus: 'the foremost surrounded . . . were killed.' <sup>2</sup> See (276). <sup>3</sup> Imperfect. <sup>4</sup> Recast and render by abl. absol.: 'a council having been called, they decided.' <sup>5</sup> Causal *cum*; see (350). <sup>6</sup> *viderent*. <sup>7</sup> For 'tenses of the infin. in indir. disc.,' see (301, 302, 305, 318). <sup>8</sup> Subord. verb. in indir. disc.; see (306).

438.—<sup>1</sup> Superlative of *bonus*; see (472), acc. sing. neut. pred. adj. with *esse* limiting the verbal phrase, *quemque . . . reverti et convenire*, which phrase is the subject of *esse*: 'An infin. may have another verb or a verbal phrase for its subject being *neuter*.' Translate: 'that it was best for each one to return.' <sup>2</sup> From *quisque*; subj. of *reverti* and *convenire*. <sup>3</sup> Acc. of end or limit of motion *without ad*. <sup>4</sup> 'to defend;' see (355) and example. <sup>5</sup> Subj. of *introduxissent*. <sup>6</sup> Subjunc. mood because it is a subordinate verb in indir. disc., depending indirectly upon *constituerunt*; notice the sequence. This pluperf. subjunc. was *fut. perf. indic.* in the original sentence, conveying the same *time relation* as that of a verb in the protasis of a more vivid fut. condition; see (223, 396).

fīnibus dēcertārent; praetereā<sup>7</sup> cōgnōverant Dīvitiācum atque Aeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum appropīnquāre.<sup>8</sup> Hīs<sup>9</sup> persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur<sup>10</sup> neque<sup>11</sup> suīs<sup>12</sup> auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

439.—The Belgians will assemble from all sides to defend<sup>1</sup> those<sup>2</sup> states into which<sup>2</sup> the Romans first lead<sup>3</sup> an army: [Ōrātiō Rēcta]. Scouts inform Caesar that the Belgians will assemble<sup>4</sup> from all sides to defend those states into which the Romans first lead<sup>5</sup> an army: [Ōrātiō Obliqua].

## LESSON XCII.

### CHAPTER XI.

*The Romans pursue and kill many Belgae.*

440.—Eā rē cōstitutā, secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī,<sup>1</sup> cum<sup>2</sup> sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fēcērunt<sup>3</sup> ut profectiō cōnsimilis fugae<sup>4</sup> vidērētur. Hāc rē per<sup>5</sup> speculātōrēs statim cōgnitā, Caesar īnsidiās

<sup>7</sup> 'and besides.' <sup>8</sup> 'were drawing near to.' <sup>9</sup> *his*: explained in (380).  
<sup>10</sup> *ut . . . morarentur*: 'to delay.' <sup>11</sup> 'and not.' <sup>12</sup> Indir. object, 'to their friends.'

439.—<sup>1</sup> *ad + gerundive*; why does the *ending* of this gerundive differ from that of the gerundive in the text above? <sup>2</sup> Why feminine? <sup>3</sup> Fut. perf. indic. representing action *completed in the future* before another fut. action; see (223), for tense required to express such time relation in the protasis. If considered an indir. quest., the mood would be subjunc.; what tense (subjunc.) would here represent the fut. perf. indic.? Why not the *pluperf.*, as in the text (438)? <sup>4</sup> Principal verb in O. O. following 'inform'; see (306). <sup>5</sup> Subordinate verb in O. O.; this verb is *fut. perf.* (indic.) in the direct disc.; to what tense is it changed in the indir.? see (306).

440.—<sup>1</sup> Depon. particip.; mod. the *subj. hostes* contained in *fecerunt*; see (340). <sup>2</sup> Causal cum; with *peteret* and *properaret* (subj. *quisque*); these clauses mod. *fecerunt*; 'since each man sought for himself'; see (350). <sup>3</sup> *fecerunt ut profectio videretur*: '(the enemy) made their departure seem; literally, 'caused it so that,' etc. <sup>4</sup> See 'dat. with adjs.'; (126). <sup>5</sup> 'by means of.'

veritus,<sup>6</sup> quod<sup>7</sup> nōndum perspēxerat quā dē causā hostēs discēderent,<sup>8</sup> exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Rē ab explōrātōribus cōgnitā, prīmā lūce omnem equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur mīsīt. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Cottam lēgātōs praefēcīt. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī<sup>9</sup> novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitudinem eōrum fugientium<sup>10</sup> concīdērunt, cum<sup>11</sup> ab extrēmō agmine,<sup>12</sup> ad quōs ventum erat,<sup>13</sup> cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent.

441.—Because Caesar did not know<sup>1</sup> for what reason the enemy had departed,<sup>2</sup> he decided that he ought<sup>3</sup> to keep his army in camp. By seeking<sup>4</sup> the foremost place on (of) the road they will make their departure seem<sup>5</sup> very much like flight. Caesar informed Labienus that scouts would be sent forward<sup>6</sup> at early dawn.

## LESSON XCIII.

### CHAPTER XII.

*Caesar attacks Noviodunum, which surrenders.*

442.—Postrīdiē Caesar in finēs Suessiōnum quī proximī<sup>1</sup> Rēmīs erant exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere cōfectō<sup>2</sup> ad

<sup>6</sup> 'fearing.' <sup>7</sup> The *quod* clause mod. *continuit*. <sup>8</sup> Indir. question; 'for what reason the enemy were departing.' <sup>9</sup> 'the latter;' meaning Labienus and his troops. <sup>10</sup> Pres. particip. mod. *eorum*, 'of them as they were fleeing.' <sup>11</sup> Causal *cum* with *consisterent* and *sustinerent*. <sup>12</sup> 'those in (from) the extreme rear.' <sup>13</sup> Impersonal: 'whom they (our men) overtook,' literally, 'to whom it had been come'; see (365), example 2.

441.—<sup>1</sup> Imperf. indic. <sup>2</sup> Why a *different tense* from that in the text? <sup>3</sup> Recast in the *pass.*, 'that his army ought to be kept by him'; this is explained fully in (361, 362, 363): look up the Latin text for example 3 under, 'dat. of personal agent.' <sup>4</sup> Gerundive; see (253). <sup>5</sup> Why a *different tense* from that in the text? <sup>6</sup> This fut. infin. *pass.* (in O. O.) is expressed by the periphrasis 'it would be that scouts would be sent'; see (382).

442.—<sup>1</sup> Adj. in the pred. nom. followed by the *dat.*; see (126). <sup>2</sup> 'by making a forced march.'

oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id<sup>3</sup> ex itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod<sup>4</sup> vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitudinem fossae mūrīque altitudinem paucīs<sup>5</sup> dēfendentībus expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs vīneās agere<sup>6</sup> quae<sup>7</sup>que ad oppūgnandum ūsūī<sup>8</sup> erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā<sup>9</sup> Suessiōnum multītūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs,<sup>10</sup> aggere<sup>11</sup> iactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs, māgnitūdine<sup>12</sup> operum quae Gallī neque vīderant ante neque audierant et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī<sup>13</sup> lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditione mittunt.

443.—Although<sup>1</sup> Caesar had heard that the town<sup>2</sup> had<sup>3</sup> a few defenders, the townsmen were able to prevent<sup>4</sup> him from taking<sup>5</sup> it by storm. When<sup>6</sup> the Suessiones came into the town on the next night and<sup>7</sup> saw the agger and the towers, they were greatly alarmed and decided that they ought to<sup>8</sup> ask for peace. Certain of<sup>9</sup> the Gauls said they feared<sup>10</sup> that they could not persuade<sup>11</sup> Caesar to make peace.

---

<sup>3</sup> *id* (oppidum): obj. of *oppugnare*, 'having tried to attack that town immediately after the march.' <sup>4</sup> Acc. subj. of *esse*, 'which he heard was free.' <sup>5</sup> See 'abl. absol.', (364), example 3; 'although (only) a few were defending it.' <sup>6</sup> *agere* and *comparare* joined by *que*, follow *coepit*: 'he began to bring up the vineae and to procure.' <sup>7</sup> *Subj.* of *erant*; its antec. is *ea*, the obj. of *comparare*. <sup>8</sup> Dat. of purpose; 'useful' ('for a use'). <sup>9</sup> *ex fuga*: 'in their flight.' <sup>10</sup> 'after the vineae had been quickly brought up.' <sup>11</sup> Noun from *agger*; abl. absol. with *iactō* (from *iacio*). <sup>12</sup> *magnitudine et celeritate*: abls. of *cause* mod. *permoti*; 'being greatly alarmed by the greatness of the works and by the speed.' <sup>13</sup> P. p. p. mod. the subject implied in *mittunt*.

443.—<sup>1</sup> Concessive *cum*; see (350). <sup>2</sup> Dat. of possession; see (357). <sup>3</sup> *esse*. <sup>4</sup> *detertere*. <sup>5</sup> See (370): will you use *ne* or *quin*? 'taking (it) by storm' = one word, *expugno*. <sup>6</sup> *postquam*; see (358). <sup>7</sup> Position of *que*? <sup>8</sup> Recast in the pass., 'peace ought to be asked for by them'; see (361, 362, 363). <sup>9</sup> See (378), 'partitive gen., exceptions.' <sup>10</sup> *se vereri*. <sup>11</sup> 'that not—after verbs of fear', see (343), (sequence following *dixerunt*): 'could persuade', use proper *mood and tense* of *possum* with the infin. *persuadere*; also see (345).

## LESSON XCIV.

## CHAPTER XIII.

*Hearing of Caesar's approach, the Bellovacī surrender.*

444.—Caesar obsidibus<sup>1</sup> acceptīs primīs cīvitatīs atque ipsīus<sup>2</sup> Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in<sup>3</sup> Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī<sup>4</sup> cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia<sup>5</sup> passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs<sup>6</sup> nātū ex oppidō ēgressī<sup>7</sup> manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre<sup>8</sup> coepērunt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestātem venīre<sup>9</sup> neque<sup>10</sup> contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item cum<sup>11</sup> ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs<sup>12</sup> petiērunt.

445.—Caesar received the foremost men of the state as hostages and did not put to death<sup>1</sup> the people. Then he started<sup>2</sup> for<sup>3</sup> the territories of the Bellovacī, who, having learned<sup>4</sup> that Caesar was coming, gathered<sup>5</sup> in the town (of)

444.—<sup>1</sup> Apposition with *primis* and *filiis*, the two main words forming the basis of the abl. absol., 'the foremost . . . and two sons . . . having been received'; translate, 'after receiving as hostages the foremost men of,' etc. <sup>2</sup> Intensive pron. emphasizing Galbae, 'of King Galba himself.' <sup>3</sup> 'against.' <sup>4</sup> *Rel.* at the begin. of the sent. as a *connective*; incorporate *qui* in the *cum* clause. 'now after these had carried . . . and while Caesar was distant.' <sup>5</sup> 'Acc. of extent in space,' see (342). <sup>6</sup> *maiores natu*, literally, 'greater by birth,' 'all the elders (older men).' <sup>7</sup> Although modifying *maiores* (*nom. subj.*), it is translated by a co-ordinate verb, 'came forth and began.' <sup>8</sup> *voce significare*: 'to declare.' <sup>9</sup> In a fut. sense: 'that they would put themselves under his protection,' etc. <sup>10</sup> 'and not.' <sup>11</sup> 'after he had come near . . . and while he was pitching;' see note 4. <sup>12</sup> *ab Romanis petierunt*, 'asked the Romans for peace,' 'begged peace of the Romans.'

445.—<sup>1</sup> 'put to death' = *interficio*: 'and not' = *one word* in Latin. <sup>2</sup> *proficiscor*. <sup>3</sup> In + acc. <sup>4</sup> Recast (why?) in the pass.; 'the arrival of C. having been learned of.' <sup>5</sup> *confero* + *se*.

Bratuspantium. The older men came<sup>a</sup> out of the town and placed their state under<sup>7</sup> Caesar's protection; likewise the women and children<sup>a</sup> extended<sup>9</sup> their hands from (off) the wall and begged peace *of* him.

## LESSON XCV.

## CHAPTER XIV.

*Divitiacus pleads in behalf of the Bellovaci.*

446.—Prō<sup>1</sup> hīs Dīvitīācus dīcit: 'Bellovacī omnī tempore<sup>2</sup> in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitatīs Aeduāe fuērunt; impulsī<sup>3</sup> ā suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcēbant<sup>4</sup> Aeduōs omnīs indīgnitatēs contumēliāsque perferre,<sup>5</sup> et<sup>6</sup> ab Aeduīs dēfēcērunt et populō Rōmānō<sup>7</sup> bellum intulērunt. Eī quī ēius cōnsilī prīncipēs fuērunt, quod cīvitatī māgnam calamitātem intulerant, in Britanniam profūgērunt. Petunt<sup>8</sup> nōn solum Bellovacī sed etiam prō hīs Aeduī ut<sup>9</sup> tuā clēmēntiā<sup>10</sup> ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtaris. Quod<sup>11</sup> sī fēcēris,<sup>12</sup> Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificābis, quōrum auxiliīs<sup>13</sup> atque opibus, sī qua<sup>14</sup> bella incidērunt, sustentāre cōsuērunt.'

447.—The Bellovaci had been urged<sup>1</sup> on by their chiefs to make<sup>2</sup> war upon the Roman people. Those who were

<sup>a</sup> Turn into a particip. (see text) and omit 'and.' <sup>7</sup> in + acc. <sup>8</sup> pueri.

<sup>9</sup> Perf. indic. act. of *tendo*.

446.—<sup>1</sup> 'in behalf of.' <sup>2</sup> 'always.' <sup>3</sup> P. p. p. *nom. plur.*; mod. the subject contained in *defecerunt* and *intulerunt*: 'being urged on, they (the Bellovaci) both revolted.' <sup>4</sup> 'kept saying.' <sup>5</sup> 'that the Aedui were enduring.' <sup>6</sup> 'both.' <sup>7</sup> See (337). <sup>8</sup> Note the emphatic position of the verb. <sup>9</sup> *ut . . . utaris*; following *petunt*; 'not only the Bellovaci beg . . . you to exercise.' <sup>10</sup> Abl. with the depon. *utor*; see (353). <sup>11</sup> *quod*: obj. of *feceris*; 'now . . . this,' see (367). <sup>12</sup> Fut. perf. in a more viv. fut. condition; 'if you do (shall have done), see (223). <sup>13</sup> Abl. of means, mod. *sustentare*; 'by whose aid and assistance.' <sup>14</sup> *quis* (465) is used as the indef. pron. 'any—some,' after *si, nisi, ne, num* (226).

447.—<sup>1</sup> *impello*. <sup>2</sup> *ut* + subjunc. (sequence?): *inferre bellum* + *dat.*

the chiefs in (of) this design brought<sup>3</sup> great disaster upon their state. Divitiacus informed Caesar that those who were<sup>4</sup> the leaders in this design had brought great disaster upon the state. Because Caesar knew for what reason<sup>5</sup> they had done<sup>6</sup> these things, he exercised<sup>7</sup> his usual clemency toward<sup>8</sup> the Bellovaci.

---

<sup>3</sup> Again *inferre*, which takes the *acc.* and *dat.* <sup>4</sup> In a *past* sense = 'had been'; the subord. verb in O. O. goes in what mood? see (306). <sup>5</sup> 'for what reason,' *qua de causa*. <sup>6</sup> 'indir. quest.'; verb in what mood? see (313); sequence? <sup>7</sup> *utor* + abl. <sup>8</sup> *in* + acc.

C. IULI CAESARIS  
DE BELLŌ GALLICŌ.

LIBER SECUNDUS.

*Formation by the Belgae of a league against Caesar.*

I. CUM esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā in hibernīs, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rŭmōrēs afferēbantur, litterisque item Labiēnī certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. 5  
Coniūrandī hās esse causās: primum quod verērentur nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde quod ab nōnnūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā 10 molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōnnūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōsequī poterant. 15

*Caesar strengthens his force by the addition of two legions and marches against them.*

II. Hīs nūntiīs litterisque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōscripsit et initā aestāte, in interiōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Quīntum Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum primum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet,

5 ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea quae apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn  
 10 exīstimāvit quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

*The Remi refuse to enter the league against the Romans  
 and surrender to Caesar.*

III. Eō cum dē imprōvisō celeriusque omnī opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andecumborium, prīmōs cīvītātis, mīsērunt, quī dicerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere; neque sē cum Belgīs reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum conīūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterisque rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque quī cis  
 10 Rhēnum incolant sēsē cum hīs conīūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrere potuerint quīn cum hīs cōnsen-  
 15 tīrent.

*Through the Remi Caesar obtains information as to the  
 number, etc., of the enemies' forces.*

IV. Cum ab hīs quaereret quae cīvītātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs, Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōs-

que quī ea loca incoherent expulisse, sōlōsque esse quī 5  
 patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs  
 Cimbrosque intrā finis suos ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex  
 rē fieri utī eārum rerum memoriā magnam sibi auctoritā-  
 tem magnosque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmerent. Dē  
 numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explorāta Rēmī dīcēbant, 10  
 proptereā quod propīnquitatibus affinitatibusque coniūctī,  
 quantam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum  
 conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cōgnōverint. Plūri-  
 mum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctoritāte et homi-  
 num numerō valēre; hōs posse cōficere armāta mīlia cen- 15  
 tum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta sexāgintā, tōtiusque  
 bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suos esse finiti-  
 mōs; finis lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre.  
 Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīvitiācum,  
 tōtius Galliae potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis 20  
 hārum regiōnum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinu-  
 erit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam: ad hunc propter iūstitiam  
 prūdentiamque suam summam tōtius bellī omnium volun-  
 tate dēferri; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia  
 armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nervīōs, quī māximē ferī 25  
 inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quīndecim  
 mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs xxv  
 mīlia, Menapiōs vii mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Veliocassēs et  
 Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs decem et novem mīlia;  
 Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caeroesōs, Paemānōs, quī ūnō 30  
 nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad xl mīlia

*After receiving hostages from the Remi Caesar crosses the  
 Axona on his way to meet the Belgae.*

V. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque ōrātiōne prō-  
 secūtus, omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque  
 liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs

diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīvitīacum Aeduum  
 5 māgnopere cohortātus docet quantō opere rei pūblīcae  
 commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distīnērī, nē  
 cum tantā multītūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit. Id  
 fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum  
 intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs  
 10 mandātīs eum ā sē dīmīttit. Postquam omnīs Belgārum  
 cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque  
 iam longē abesse ab eīs quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab  
 Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rē-  
 mōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi  
 15 castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs  
 flūminis mūniēbat et post eum quae essent tūta ab hostibus  
 reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus  
 ut sine periculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō  
 flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte  
 20 flūminis Quintum Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex  
 cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum duode-  
 cim vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

*The Belgae attack Bibrax. The way in which the Belgae  
 lay siege to a town.*

VI. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax  
 aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū  
 Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum  
 est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnātiō est  
 5 haec. Ubi circumiectā multītūdine hominum tōtīs moeni-  
 bus undique in mūrum lapidēs iaci coeptī sunt mūrusque  
 dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succēdunt  
 mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum  
 tanta multītūdō lapidēs ac tēla cōnicerent, in mūrō cōn-  
 10 sistendī potestās erat nullī. Cum finem oppūgnandī nox  
 fēcisset, Iecius Rēmus summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter

suos, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex eīs quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

15

*When Caesar sends aid to the Remi, the Belgae abandon the siege and turn against him.*

VII. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īdem ducibus ūsus quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētās sagittariōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpūgnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vicīs aedificiīsque quōs adire potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ab milibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque ignibus significābātur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitudinem patēbant.

*Caesar prepares strong defences upon a hill near the Axona and awaits the enemies' attack.*

VIII. Caesar primō et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit: cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent periclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem instruendam nātūrā opportunō atque idōneō,—quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitīē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitudinem patēbat, quantum locī aciēs instrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in frontem lēniter fastīgātus paulatim ad plānitiem redībat,—ab utrōque latere eius

10

collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs,  
 15 quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvenire possent. Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus quās proximē cōscripserat in castris relictis, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūci possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castris in aciē cōstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex  
 20 castris ēductās instrūxerant.

*The enemy attempt to cross the river in an effort to surprise Titurius.*

IX. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsirent hostēs expectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs aggredierentur parātī in armīs erant. Interim  
 5 proeliō equestri inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutri trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostris Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs  
 10 repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō ut, sī possent, castellum cui praeerat Quīntus Titūrius lēgātus expūgnārent pontemque interseinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī māgnō nobīs ūsu ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque  
 15 nostrōs prohibērent.

*A fierce battle ensues in which the Belgae are defeated and dispersed.*

X. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō

locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī māgnū eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per eōrum 5 corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitudīne tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intel- lēxērunt, neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredi 10 pūgnandī causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō cōstituērunt optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in finēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfen- dendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suis quam in 15 aliēnis finibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs rei frūmen- tariae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīvitiācum atque Aeduōs finibus Bellovacōrum appropīnquare cōgnōverant. Hīs persuādērī ut diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium 20 ferrent nōn poterat.

*The Romans pursue and slaughter large numbers of  
the Belgae.*

XI. Eā rē cōstitutā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nullō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā, 5 insidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent nōndum perspēxerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Primā lūce cōfirmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum quī novissimum agmen morārētur praemisit. Hīs Quīntum Pedium et Lūcium Aurunculēium Cottam 10 lēgātōs praefēcit; Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōni- bus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa

mīlia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multītūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs  
 15 ventum erat, cōsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā periculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitatē neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātis ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō periculō tantam eōrum  
 20 multītūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt, quantum fuit diēi spatium, sub occāsumque sōlis sequī dēstitērunt, sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

*After a forced march Caesar attacks Noviodunum and the town surrenders.*

XII. Postrīdiē ēius diēi Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in finīs Suessiōnum quī proximī Rēmīs erant exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere cōfectō ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre  
 5 cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātītūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucīs dēfendentibus expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnitīs vīneās agere quaeque ad oppūgnandum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multītūdō in  
 10 oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōstitūtīs, māgnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritatē Rōmānōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditionē mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs ut  
 15 cōservārentur impetrant.

*When the Bellovaci learn of Caesar's approach, they too submit.*

XIII. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs primīs cīvitatīs atque ipsius Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs, armisque omnibus ex

oppidō trāditīs, in dēditionem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō 5 oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt sēsē in cīus fidem et potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum 10 accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petierunt.

*Divitiacus pleads in behalf of the Bellovaci.*

XIV. Prō hīs Dīvitīācus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmīssīs Aeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Aeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnīs indī- 5 gnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōsili prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellexerent quantā calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgis. Petere nōn solum Bellovacōs sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs ut suā clē- 10 mentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōsuērint.

*Caesar spares the Bellovaci and demands hostages.*

*Character and habits of the Nervii.*

XV. Caesar honōris Dīvitīācī atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōservātūrum dīxit; quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque

hominum multitudine praestabat, sexcentōs obsidēs popo-  
 5 scit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs,  
 ab eō locō in finīs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque  
 omnia sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum finīs Nervii attin-  
 gēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quae-  
 reret, sic reperiēbat: Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercā-  
 10 tōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam  
 pertinentium inferri, quod eīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs  
 et remitti virtūtem exīstimārent; esse hominēs ferōs mā-  
 gnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs  
 Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque vir-  
 15 tūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfirmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs mīssūrōs  
 neque ūllam condiціōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

*The Nervii encamp on the Sabis and await the approach  
 of Caesar.*

XVI. Cum per eōrum finēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inve-  
 niēbat ex captivīs Sabim flūmen ab castrīs suis nōn amplius  
 milia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviiōs  
 cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā  
 5 cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, finitimīs suis (nam hīs  
 utrīsque persuāserant utī eandem bellī fortūnam experi-  
 rentur); exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās  
 atque esse in itinere: mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad  
 pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse, quō  
 10 propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

*Urged on by deserters from the Roman army the Nervii  
 plan to attack Caesar's advanced guard.*

XVII. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque  
 praemittit quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum ex  
 dēditiciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem

secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut postea ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris 5 nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nervios pervēnerunt atque hīs dēmōstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedimentōrum māgnūm numerū intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnūm spatium abessent, hanc sub 10 sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedimentisque dīreptīs futurū ut reliquae contrā cōsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī rei student, sed quicquid possunt, 15 pedestribus valent cōpiīs), quō facilius finitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque inflexīs crēbrisque in lātitudinem rāmīs ēnātīs et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs effēcerant, ut instar mūrī hae saepēs mūnimenta praeberent, 20 quō nōn modo nōn intrārī sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omitendum sibi cōnsilium Nervii exīstimāvērunt.

*Location of Caesar's camp. Position of the two armies.*

XVIII. Locī nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprà nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrā- 5 rius, passūs circiter ducentōs infimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eas silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statīōnēs equitūm vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium.

*The Romans surprised by the unexpected attack skilfully carried out by the Nervii.*

XIX. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant. Nam quod ad hostis appropinquābat, cōsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expeditās  
 5 dūcēbat; post eas tōtius exercitūs impedimenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs quae proximē cōscrip̄tae erant tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedimentis erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittariisq̄ flūmen trāsgressi cum hostium equitātū proelium commiserunt.  
 10 Cum sē illi identidem in silvās ad suos reciperent et rursus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius quam quem ad finem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant cēdentēs insequi audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt.  
 15 Ubi prima impedimenta nostrī exercitūs ab eis, qui in silvis abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eos committendī proeliī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōstituerant atque ipsi sēsē cōfirmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in  
 20 nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. His facile pulsīs et prōturbātis, incredibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostris hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eos quī in opere occupātī erant  
 25 contendērunt.

*Conduct of Caesar's soldiers and lieutenants in an emergency.*

XX. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum, quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī

militēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōces-  
serant arcessendī, aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandī, 5  
sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem tem-  
poris brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat. Hīs  
difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus  
militum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī quid fierī  
oportēret nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescribere quam 10  
ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque  
legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis  
castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propīnquitātem et celeritātem  
hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium expectābant, sed per  
sē quae vidēbantur administrābant. 15

*So sudden the attack, the soldiers are compelled to begin  
fighting before they can arm themselves.*

XXI. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs ad cohortandōs  
militēs quam in partem fors obtulit decucurrit, et ad legiō-  
nem decimam dēvēnit. Militēs nōn longiōre ōratiōne  
cohortātus quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam  
retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum 5  
fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam  
quō tēlum adicī posset, proeliī committendī sīgnum dedit.  
Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus  
pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās ho-  
stiumque tam parātus ad dīmīcandum animus ut nōn modo 10  
ad insīgnia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās  
scūtisque tegimenta dētrūdenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam  
quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma  
sīgna cōspēxit, ad haec cōstitit, nē in quaerendīs suis  
pūgnandī tempus dīmītteret. 15

*Confusion on the part of the soldiers. Difficulties encountered by the commander.*

XXII. Instrūctō exercitū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectus-  
que collis et necessitās temporis quam ut rei militāris ratiō  
atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in  
parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs (ut ante  
5 dēmōstrāvimus) interiectīs prōspectus impedīrētur, neque  
certa subsidia collocārī neque quid in quāque parte opus  
esset prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperiā administrārī  
poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae  
quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

*In one quarter the Romans win ; in another they lose.*

XXIII. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā  
parte aciē cōstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine  
exanimātōs vulneribusque cōfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea  
pars obvenerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen com-  
5 pulērunt, et trānsīre cōnantēs īsecūtī gladiīs māgnam  
partem eōrum impedītā interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre  
flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī  
rūsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam  
coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs,  
10 ūndecima et octāva, prōfligātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum  
erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs  
proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē ā fronte et ab sinistrā parte  
nūdātīs castrīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et  
nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōstitisset, omnēs  
15 Nervī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduōgnātō, quī sum-  
mam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum  
pars apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum  
castrōrum locum petere coepit.

*The day seems to be going against the Romans. The Nervii gain Caesar's camp.*

XXIV. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrac peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā et summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsisse cōspēxerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respēxissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum quī cum impedimentīs veniēbant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opiniō est singulāris, quī auxiliī causā ab cīvitāte ad Caesarem missī vēnerant, cum multitudīne hostium castra complērī nostra, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dīversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentisque eōrum hostēs potītōs, cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

20

*Caesar seizes a shield and takes part in the fight in the foremost ranks.*

XXV. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signisque in ūnum locum collātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs militēs sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedimentō vīdit, quartae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs signiferōque interfectō, signō amīssō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centu-

riōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipilō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs grāvibusque vulneribus cōfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset; reliquōs esse  
 10 tardiōrēs et nōnnūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostīs neque ā fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre, et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium quod summittī posset; scūtō ab novissimīs ūnī militī dētrāctō,  
 15 quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātīm appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus militēs signa īferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cūius adventū spē illātā militibus et redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōspectū im-  
 20 perātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cupe- ret, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

*Caesar reinforced by the arrival of three legions. The scene begins to change.*

XXVI. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōstitērat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulātīm sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signā in hostēs īferrent. Quō factō, cum alius aliī sub-  
 5 sidium ferret neque timērent nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. Interim militēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedimentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōspiciēbantur, et  
 10 Titus Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur cōspiciātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsīt. Quī, cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur cōgnōvissent,  
 15 nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

*A desperate encounter in which the Romans win.*

XXVII. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfectī prōcubuis-  
 sent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent. Tum cālōnēs  
 perterritōs hostēs cōspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occur-  
 rērunt; equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlē- 5  
 rent, omnibus in locīs pūgnārunt, quō sē legiōnāriīs mili-  
 tibus praeferrent. At hostēs étiam in extrēmā spē salūtis  
 tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum primī eōrum ceci-  
 dissent, proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum cor-  
 poribus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, 10  
 quī superessent ut ex tumultō tēla in nostrōs cōnicerent et  
 pīla intercepta remitterent: ut nōn nēquīquam tantae vir-  
 tūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissi-  
 mum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissi-  
 mum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō 15  
 redēgerat.

*Terrible fate of the Nervii. Pardon for the few that survive.*

XXVIII. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem  
 gente ac nōmine Nerviorum redactō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs  
 ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria et palūdēs  
 coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus 5  
 nihil impeditum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium  
 quī supererant cōsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt  
 sēque eī dēdidērunt; et, in commemorandā civitātis cala-  
 mitāte, ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mili-  
 bus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent sēsē  
 redactōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac 10  
 supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē cōn-  
 servāvit, suisque finibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit, et

fīnitimīs imperāvit ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

*Caesar next lays siege to a stronghold in which the Aduatuci have gathered.*

XXIX. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nervii venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūctīs oppidīs castellisque dēsertiis sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē  
 5 nātūrā mūnitum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēspectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in lātitudinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant, tum māgnī ponderis  
 10 saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsī erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliā facerent, eis impedīmentīs quae sēcum agere et portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositis, custōdiam ex suis ac praesidium sex milia homi-  
 15 num ūnā reliquērunt. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum inferrent aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt.

*From the walls they taunt the Romans in their preparations for an attack.*

XXX. Ac primō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendēbant; postea vāllō passuum in circuitū xv milium crēbrisque castellis circummūnitī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vineīs āctis aggere exstrūctō turrim procul  
 5 cōstituī vidērunt, primum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque incre-

pitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō  
īnstruerētur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus  
praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque  
omnibus Gallīs prae māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevi- 10  
tās nostra contemptū est) tantī oneris turrīm mōtūrōs  
sēsē cōnfiderent?

*Soon they lose heart and ask of Caesar his terms of  
surrender.*

XXXI. Ubi vērō movērī et appropīnquāre moenibus  
vidērunt, novā atque inūsitatā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad  
Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī:  
nōn exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerere,  
quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prō- 5  
movēre possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī per-  
mittere dīxērunt. Ūnum petere et dēprecārī: sī forte  
prō suā clēmētiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs  
audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē  
armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimicōs 10  
ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trādītīs  
armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdū-  
cerentur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī quam  
ab hīs per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī cōn-  
suēssent.

15

*They are promised protection if they disarm. Treachery  
on the side of the enemy.*

XXXII. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētū-  
dine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitatē cōnservātūrum, sī  
prius, quam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed  
dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trādītīs. Sē

5 id quod in Nerviiis fēcisset factūrum, fīnitimisque imperā-  
tūrum nē quam dēditiciis populī Rōmānī iniūriam infer-  
rent. Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere  
dixērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitudīne dē mūrō in  
fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam  
10 mūrī aggerisque altitudinē acervī armōrum adaequārent,  
et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspectum est,  
cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portis patefactis eō diē  
pāce sunt ūsī.

*The enemies' plans fail to carry and they meet a  
terrible fate.*

XXXIII. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsq̄  
ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ab mīliti-  
bus iniūriam acciperent. Illī, ante initō (ut intellēctum  
est) cōnsiliō, quod dēditōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēduc-  
5 tūrōs aut dēnique indiligentiū servātūrōs crēdiderant,  
partim cum eīs quae retinuerant et cēlāverant armīs,  
partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae  
subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxe-  
rant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnī-  
10 tiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiis repentinō ex  
oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar  
imperārat, ignib⁹s sīgnificātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs  
eō concursus est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est,  
ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis, inīquō locō,  
15 contrā eōs quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī  
dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōsisteret.  
Occisīs ad hominū milibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum  
reiectī sunt. Postridiē eius diēi refrāctis portis, cum iam  
dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissis mīlitibus nostrīs, sec-  
20 tiōnem eius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs

quī ēmerant capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium  
quīnquāgintā trium.

*The maritime nations submit to the Romans.*

XXXIV. Eōdem tempore ā Publiō Crassō, quem cum  
legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Curio-  
solitas, Esubiōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae  
cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnīs  
eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī 5  
esse redāctās.

*Ambassadors come to Caesar from across the Rhine. The  
army goes into winter quarters and a thanksgiving is  
decreed at Rome.*

XXXV. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta  
hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab eīs  
nātiōnibus quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent lēgātī ad  
Caesarem mitterentur, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta  
faetūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in 5  
Ītaliā Īlyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad  
sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonēs, quae-  
que cīvitātēs propīnquae hīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesse-  
rat, legiōnibus in hibernācula dēductīs, in Ītaliā profec-  
tus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris in diēs quīn- 10  
decim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit  
nūllī.

## TABLE OF ABBREVIATIONS.

abl. absol.	= ablative absolute	lim.	= limit
affirm.	= affirmative	mod.	= modify
agreem.	= agreement	neg.	= negative
appos.	= apposition	p. p.	= perfect participle
condit.	= condition	p. p. p.	= perfect pass. parti-
depen.	= depend		ciple
depon.	= deponent	quest.	= question
dir.	= direct	sep.	= separation
disc.	= discourse	subj.	= subject
doub.	= double	subjunc.	= subjunctive
i.e.	= that is	subord.	= subordinate
impers.	= impersonal	substau.	= substantive
indir.	= indirect	syst.	= system
lit.	= literally	viv.	= vivid

O. O. = ōrātiō oblīqua

O. R. = ōrātiō rēcta

## NOTES.

### BOOK II.

#### THE CAMPAIGNS OF CAESAR IN GAUL.

Gallia, 'Gaul', as used in Caesar, included the vast region which comprises all of France, the greater part of Switzerland, and the western portion of Germany, with Holland and Belgium.

The campaigns of Caesar in Gaul lasted through eight years (B.C. 58-51), and are described in eight books—each book giving an account of the operations of one year.

In Book I (B.C. 58), after a general description of Gaul, Caesar describes the war with the Helvetians, a tribe of Northern Switzerland numbering over 300,000, who attempted to reach Western Gaul by an armed emigration through central Gaul. Their attempt to pass was checked by Caesar, who, after several skirmishes and two bloody battles, forced the Helvetians to return into their territories with the loss of 200,000 lives. He also tells of an engagement with a powerful tribe of Germans under their chief, Ariovistus, who had settled in Eastern Gaul. These were repulsed and driven back across the Rhine.

Book II (B.C. 57) contains an account of the conspiracy and defeat of the Belgians, a people in Northern Gaul. The Belgians were a fierce and barbarous people living amid forests and swamps far remote from any country reached by the Roman arms. They appear to have formed a powerful confederacy and to have offered to Caesar a most desperate resistance. In a battle, perhaps the most desperate of all that Caesar ever fought, the enemy was defeated and the confederacy of Northern Gaul suppressed, with the almost complete annihilation of the Nervii, the bravest of the Belgian tribe. In this campaign Publius Crassus reduced the maritime states to submission.

CHAPTER I.—1. *cum esset*: 'while Caesar was,' see (128, 203); note the emphatic position of the *verb.* *citeriore Gallia*: that is, northern Italy. *ita uti*: 'just as.' 2. *demonstravimus*: the rhetorical *we*. Caesar speaks of himself as the general in the *third* person, as the writer in the *first*. 3. *litteris*: abl. of means, see (43 b), mod. *certior fiebat*; 'by letters from (of) Labienus.' *que*: joins *afferebantur* and *certior fiebat*, imperf. of *repeated action*, see (102); 'kept coming in and he was informed (from day to day).' *certior*: with *pass.*, see (338). *Belgas*: acc. subj. of *coniurare* and *dare*, depend upon *certior fiebat*; 'that all the Belgians *were* conspiring;' for the *tense of the infin.*, see (301, 302, 305, 318). *quam*: acc. subj. of *esse*, agreeing with the *pred acc.* *partem*, rather than with *Belgas*, see (373); 'who, we had said, constitute (*esse*) a third part of Gaul.' 4. *esse*: indir. disc. depen. on *dixeramus*, see (301, 302, 318). *dixeramus*: pluperf. denoting what took place before the time of *demonstravimus*. 5. *inter se dare*: 'were exchanging.' *coniurandi*: gen. of the gerund dep. upon *causas*. In the sight of the Romans any war against Rome was a 'conspiracy.' But this uprising of the Belgians was in reality the effort of a spirited people to protect their rights. 6. *esse*: following *certior fiebat*, 'that the reasons for (of) conspiring were *as follows* (has).' *quod vererentur, sollicitarentur*: subjunc. because subord. clauses in indir. disc., see (306); the two *quod* clauses are preceded by *primum*, 'in the first place,' and *deinde*, 'in the second place'; for the *sequence of tense*, see (135); these subjunctives are dependent upon a *past verb*, *fiebat*. *ne*: 'that' or 'lest,' see (343), *verbs of fear*, etc. 7. *ad eos*: 'against them.' *sollicitarentur*: 'because they were being incited.' 8. *ab Gallis*: pers. agent, see (237). *partim qui*: 'some of whom.' *ut*: introduces *noluerant* (*indic. mood*); the indic. verbs in the remaining part of the chapt. indicate that this is not regarded as part of Labienus's report (which would make the verbs *subjunc. in indir. disc.*), but as explanatory remarks made by Caesar. *ut noluerant*: 'as they had been unwilling,' note the force of the *pluperf.* *Germanos*: acc. subj. of *versari*, following *noluerant*, 'that the Germans should remain.' 9. *ita ferebant moleste*: literally, 'so were bearing with trouble;' freely, 'took it hard.' *populi*: gen. sing. dep. upon *exercitum*. 10. *hiemare, inveterascere*: with the subj. acc. *exercitum* in indir. disc. depending upon *moleste ferebant*; 'that an army of the Roman people was wintering and getting a foothold in Gaul.' 11. *partim qui*: anteced. of *qui* is *Gallis* (line 8); 'some of whom

were always desiring.' *mobilitate, levitate* : abl. of cause, see 210) 'on account of inconstancy and fickleness'; the ablatives mod. *studebant. imperiis* : dat. with *studebant*, for which construction see (348); 'a new government,' literally, 'new ruling powers.' 12. *ab nonnullis* : pers. agent, mod. *sollicitabantur*, 'they were incited by some *also* (*etiam*),' see (237). *quod* : with *occupabantur*, a causal clause, mod. *sollicitabantur*; 'they were incited also *because* royal power was being (constantly) usurped.' *a potentioribus* : adj. as substan., see (258); 'by the more powerful and by those who.' 13. *ad conucendos* : gerundive, see (253); 'for hiring.' *facultates* : 'opportunities,' 'means.' 14. *regna* : plur., literally, 'kingdoms'—see translation above as the subj. of *occupabantur*, beginning with *quod*. *minus* : adv. mod. another adv. *facile*, 'less easily.' *rem* : obj. of *consequi*. *imperio nostro* : 'under our rule,' abl. absol. implying condition; the idea is, 'the government being ours,' see (364)—2. 15. *consequi poterant* : 'who could secure that or such power (*rem*).'

CHAPTER II.—1. *nuntiis, litteris* : abl. of cause, mod. and in the translation *following commotus*; '(being) greatly alarmed by these messages and letters.' *duas legiones* : XIIIth and XIVth. Caesar had now eight legions, numbered VII to XIV, inclusive, amounting to perhaps 60,000 men including auxiliaries. 2. *inita* : p. p. p. of *ineo*, forming an abl. absol. of *time* with *aestate*, 'at the beginning of summer'; what literally? see (287). *in interiorem Galliam* : see (35); 'into the Central part of Gaul.' 3. *qui deduceret* : anteced. is Q. *Pedium*, rel. clause of purpose (*qui* = *ut* is), see (311); sequence derived from *misit*, see (135). *Pedius*, nephew of Caesar and one of his heirs. 4. *ipse* : intensive pron., placed first for special emphasis, 'Caesar himself.' *cum primum* : 'as soon as;' in the early part of May or June; when grass and young grain began to be plentiful for the numerous beasts of burden carrying military stores as well as for the horses of the cavalry and officers. *inciperet* : 'began'—subj. is *copia*. 5. *dat* : historical pres., used for the historical perfect to enliven the narrative. *Senonibus, Gallis* : why dat.? see (330). 6. *Belgis* : see 'dat. with adjs.,' (126). *uti (ut) cognoscant, faciant* : substantive clauses of *purpose* in apposition with, or defining, *negotium*; observe the *sequence, pres. + pres.* *gerantur* : subjunc. by *attraction*, see (276); 'to find out those things which are being 'transacted.' 7. *se* : 'and to inform him (Caesar);' if the *subord.* clause expresses the words or thought of the *main* clause,

the *reflexive* is used to refer to the subject of the latter. **constanter**: 'uniformly,' without disagreement in the reports. 8. **manus**: acc. subj. of **cogi** (pres. pass. infin.); 'that bands (forces) were being collected.' **in locum**: not *abi.*, but *acc.*, see (35); mod. a verb of *motion*—**conduci**; 'was being gathered.' 9. **tum vero**: observe the emphatic position, 'then indeed.' **dubitandum** (*esse sibi*): periphrastic *pres. infin. pass.* used impersonally, depen. upon **existimavit**; see (361, 362, 363); literally, 'he thought it ought not to be hesitated by him'; freely, 'he thought he ought not to hesitate.' 10. **quin proficisceretur**: 'to set out' (lit., 'but that he should,' etc.); in the sense of '*hesitate*,' **dubito** regularly takes the *infin.*, this being an exception; **dubito**, 'to doubt,' takes **quin** + *subjunc.* 11. **diebus**: abl. of time within which, see (65); 'in about fifteen days.' **ad fines**: Caesar marched from Vesontio to the Belgian frontier (north-west), about 145 miles, in 15 days.

CHAPTER III.—1. **eo**: 'thither' = **ad fines Belgarum**. **de improvise**: 'unexpectedly.' **opinione**: abl. after the comparative **celerius**, see (369); 'than any one expected,' lit. 'than all opinion.' 2. **Remi**: they were next to the Aedui in power and were friendly to the Romans. These people were impressed by the decision of Caesar's movements, and, not having committed themselves to the Belgian confederacy, they were free to give Caesar information of the enemy's designs. **ex Belgis**: for the partitive gen. **Belgarum**, see (378); 'who are the nearest of the Belgians to Gaul.' 3. **legatos**: predicate apposition; observe that **legatus** sometimes means 'lieutenant,' and sometimes, as here, 'ambassador.' **primos**: adj. used as substant., see (258), in apposition with the proper names preceding it; 'the foremost men.' 4. **qui dicerent**: not 'who said,' but 'who were to say' (or simply 'to say'), rel. clause of purpose, see (311). The rest of the chapt. is given in *indir. disc.* Notice that the *principal clauses* have the verbs in the *infin.* with a *subj. acc.*, and all *subord. or depend. clauses* take the *subjunc.*; see (301, 302, 306, 318, 392). **se in fidem permittere**: 'that they placed themselves and all their possessions under the protection'; **se** is here the *acc. obj.* of **permittere**, while the *subj. acc.* (**se**) is omitted to prevent awkward repetition; regularly the *subj. acc.* is expressed in *indir. disc.* 5. **neque**: 'and that they had not united (conspired).' **cum Belgis**: see (43). 6. **neque**: 'nor had they conspired against.' 7. **paratos**: pred. adj. in the *acc.* to agree with the *subj.* of **esse** (*se* understood). **et . . . et**: 'both . . . and.' **oppidis**: sometimes *place where* is put in the abl. *without a prep.*, as with **loco**

and castris. 8. frumento, rebus: see (43 b). 9. esse: indir. disc., 'that all the rest of the Belgians *were* under arms' Germanos: acc. subj. of coniunxisse. cis Rhenum: i.e. the west side of the Rhine; Caesar writes from the standpoint of the Roman Province. incolant: 'who dwell'—in the *dir. disc.* it is incolunt. 10. his: = Belgis. tantum esse furorem: 'and that the madness of all these *was* so great that (ut).' eorum omnium: i.e. Belgarum et Germanorum. 11. ut . . . potuerint: affirmative result clause, 'that they could prevent'; see (321); observe the *perf. tense*, and note that in clauses of result, the *perf. subjunc.* is very often used after secondary (past) tenses. ne . . . quidem: make emphatic the word between them, '(could prevent) *not even the Suessiones.*' The Suessiones occupied territory west of the Remi. 12. qui utantur, habeant: subjunc. for two reasons; subord. clause in indir. disc., see (306, 392; or by *attraction*, being within the *ut* clause, see (276). iure, legibus; abl. with depon. verb utantur, see (353). ius: = 'principles of justice,' lex: = the enacted 'law'; 'who enjoyed the same rights and laws.' 13. cum ipsis: i. e. the Remi; in indir. disc. *se* is regularly used to refer to the speaker, but the oblique cases of *ipse* may be used instead, especially for *emphasis*. 14. quin consentirent: 'from uniting;' for construction with *quin*, see (370).

CHAPTER IV.—1. cum . . . quaereret: 'when Caesar inquired of these' or 'asked these men.' quae, etc.: 'what and how great states *were.*' 2. essent: subjunc. of indir. quest., see (313). quid: 'adverbial acc.,' see (374). reperiebat: imperf. to denote repeated action. plerosque: indir. disc. to the end of the chapt., except the words Remi dicebant (line 10); 'that most of the Belgians were descended from (ab).' These were especially the Nervii and Treveri, who claimed descent from the Germans—a proud and heroic ancestry. 3. que: joins ortos esse and consedissee; Belgas is the subj. of both verbs. 4. traductos: p. p. p. mod. Belgas; this construction is fully explained in (316). propter . . . fertilitatem: limits consedissee. que: connects consedissee and expulisse, which have the same subj. Gallos: obj. of expulisse; 'and had driven out the Gauls who inhabited.' 5. incolerent: subord. clause in indir. disc., see (276, 306, 392). solos: acc. pred. adj. with esse, limiting Belgas; solos is an adj. used as a noun, see (258). qui . . . prohibuerint: subord. clause in indir. disc.; observe the use of the *perf. tense*; see chapt. 3, note 11. ut . . . potuerint. In the *dir. disc.*, solus est, etc., takes a rel. clause with the verb in the *subjunc.*, called the 'characteristic relative clause.' Translate solosque, etc.; 'that they (the Belgians) were the only men

who could prevent.' 6. *memoria*: abl. of time when, mod. *prohibuerint*, 'in (during) the memory—remembrance—of our fathers.' *omni*, etc.: translate by a 'when' clause. 7. *ingredi*: depen. upon *prohibuerint*, see (370); 'from entering.' *qua ex re*: 'and in consequence of this fact;' see (367). *fieri*: pass. infin. of *facio*, depen. upon *reperiebat*; 'he found out that it was coming to pass.' 8. *uti . . . sumerent*: this clause is the *subj.* of *fieri*; that *what* was coming to pass? viz., 'that they were assuming.' *memoria*: abl. of cause (compare note 6 above), mod. *sumerent*; 'in consequence of their remembrance.' 9. *in re militari*: 'in the art of war.' *de numero*: i.e. the numerical strength of the Belgian soldiery; (the rest of the chapt. depends upon *Remi dicebant*). 10. *omnia . . . explorata*: almost = *omnia se exploravisse*, 'that they had found out all *about* (*de*); agreem. of this particip. and its use with *habere* is fully explained in (375). *propterea quod*: 'on account of the fact that' = 'because,' introducing *cognoverint*, again the *perf. tense*, as in note 5 above. The *perf.* is very often retained in indir. disc., and a statement is made more vivid by putting it in the tense that the speaker used. The speaker's word was '*cognovimus*,' 'we know' (lit. 'have found out'). 11. *coniuncti*: p. p. p. mod. the *subj.* of *cognoverint*, see (316); 'because, being closely connected by blood and marriage relationships.' *quantum . . . pollicitus sit*: subjunc. of indir. quest., see (313); depen. upon *cognoverint*; 'how great a multitude *each one* (*quisque*) had promised.' *quisque*: i.e. each representative of the war council. 12. *plurimum valere*: follows *Remi dicebant*; 'that the Bellovaci were the most powerful.' 13. *hos posse*, etc.: 'that the latter (these) could muster.' *armata milia centum* = *armatorum hominum milia centum*; as here used, *milia* is the noun with which the adj. *armata* agrees. *pollicitos esse*: 'that they had promised.' 14. *sexaginta (milia) electa*: 'sixty thousand picked men.' *postulare*: '*were* demanding.' *sibi*: refers to *Bellovacos*. 15. *suos*: refers to the *Remi*. *latissimos*: 'very wide.' 16. *possidere*: *subj.* is *eos* (*Suessiones*) understood. *fuisse*: 'had been;' in the direct disc. *fuisse* becomes *fuit*. 17. *totius Galliae*, etc.: 'the most influential man in entire Gaul;' *totius* is declined in (286). *qui . . . imperium obtinuerit*: 'who *had had* control of.' *cum . . . tum*: 'not only . . . but also.' *Britanniae*: This is the first notice of Britain in Latin literature. 18. *esse*: 'they said that Galba *was now* king;' the speaker's words (dir. disc.) were '*nunc est rex Galba*'—compare note *fuisse* (line 18) above. *ad hunc*: 'upon this one.' 19. *summam*: *noun*, acc. *subj.* of *deferri*; 'that the manage-

ment (conduct) of . . . was being conferred.' *voluntate*: abl. of manner, see (210). *habere*: subj. is *Suessiones* *polliceri*: 'that they were promising.' 24. *milia*: see note, line 15. *Nervios*: acc. subj. of *polliceri*. *maxime feri*: *adv.* and *adj.* = the superl. degree of the *adj.*, 'very fierce.' 26. *habeantur*: 'are considered;' observe the use of the *pres. subjunc.* where the *imperf.* would have been more regular; see note, lines 5 and 10, above. 27. *Atrebatas*: for this and the following proper names (of tribes), ending with *Aduatucos*, supply *polliceri*. 30. *Condrusos*, etc.: acc. subjects of *polliceri* or *conficere* *posse* understood, the infin. clause depending upon (*se*) *arbitrari*; 'the Remi said *they* (*se*) believed that the Condrusi, etc., could muster.' *qui* . . . *appellantur*: the indic. indicates that this is an explanatory note made by Caesar and not included in the address of the Remi; not so with *qui* . . . *habeantur*, *absint*, line 25, which is treated as a subord. clause in indir. disc.

CHAPTER V.—1. *cohortatus*, *prosecutus*: 'having encouraged the Remi and having addressed them kindly;' both particips. mod. *Caesar*. 2. *senatum*: a Roman term used to describe a Gallic institution. *liberos*: acc. subj. of *adduci*, depend. upon *iussit*; 'he ordered the children of . . . to be brought to him;' see *iubeo* (155). 3. *obsides*: pred. apposition, 'as hostages.' The boys would probably be sold into captivity, if these chiefs were to break their faith. *Quae*: for use and meaning of the rel. pron. at the beginning of a sentence, see (367); 'now all these things;' see also (258). 4. *ad diem*: 'to the day;' as we say, 'to the minute'—promptly. *ipse*: intensive force; 'Caesar in person.' 5. *cohortatus*: p. p. depon. mod. *ipse*, but best rendered by a *co-ordinate verb*; 'encourages Divitiacus very earnestly and explains *how greatly it concerns*.' *reipublicae*, *salutis*: gen. depen. upon *intersit*; the impersonal verbs *interest* and *refert* ('it interests,' 'it concerns'); take the gen. of the *person*, rarely of the *thing*, affected; 'the republic and their common safety.' This Divitiacus was one of the leading men among the Aedui who were now in alliance with the Romans. 6. *intersit*: indir. quest., see (313). *manus*: acc. subj. of *distineri*; this infin. clause is the subj. of *intersit*, 'that the bands (forces) of the enemy be kept apart.' *ne* . . . *configendum sit*: neg. purpose, see (211, 320); *configendum sit*, *pres. subjunc. pass. periphrastic*, used impersonally; lit., 'that it may not have to be fought (by them),' better, 'lest they should have to fight'; see (361, 362, 363). 8. *id fieri posse*: depen. upon *docet*; 'he explains that this (*id*) can be

done.' *suas copias* : notice the emphatic position. 9. *introduxerint*, *coeperint* : more *viv. fut. condit.* turned into *indir. disc.*; both verbs were *fut. perf. indic.* in the *dir. disc.*; see (223, 396). *eorum* = *Bellovacorum*. The Bellovaci were already disaffected in that they had not secured the leadership of the league and the ravaging of their lands would probably lead them from their homes. 10. *postquam* : with *vidit* and *cognovit*; see (358). 11. *coactas* : *p. p. p. mod. copias*, but best turned into a finite verb; see (381). *neque* = *et . . . non* : 'and when he found out from . . . that they (*eas copias*) were *not* far distant now (by this time).' 15. *quae res* : see (367); 'now this position.' Caesar's camp was protected in the rear by the Axona, and in front by a small marshy stream. Traces of Caesar's works at this place were discovered in 1862, on a hill called *Mau-champ*, about eighty feet above the river, with gentle slopes, well suited for a camp. *latus* : noun, acc. obj. of *muniebat*. 16. *muniebat*, *reddebat* : for the force of the imperf., see (102); 'both kept one side of . . . fortified and rendered secure (*tuta*) from the enemy (those places) which were behind him.' *essent* : subjunc. in a characteristic rel. clause. *tuta* : acc. plur. neut. mod. *ea loca* (understood), the anteced. of *quae*. 18. *efficiebat* : subj. is *quae res*; the order is *et efficiebat ut commeatus possent portari*; literally, 'and caused (it) so that supplies could be brought'; better, 'and made it possible for supplies to be brought.' 19. *in altera parte* : 'on the other side.' 21. *pedum duodecim* : gen. of measure or quality with *vallo*. 22. *duodeviginti pedum* : 'eighteen feet in width'—the depth being about ten feet. *munire* : subj. is *eum*, (*Sabinum*).

CHAPTER VI.—1. *ab his castris* : adverbial phrase mod. *aberat*; 'from this camp.' *Bibrax* : in apposition with *oppidum*. 2. *milia* : acc. of extent in space, see (342). *id* : with *oppidum* understood, obj. of *oppugnare*. *ex itinere* : 'on the march'—that is, turning aside from their course without making any formal disposition of their troops. *impetu* : see (210). 3. *sustentatum est* : 'impersonal verb,' see (365); 'it was with difficulty that they held out.' 4. *eadem atque* : 'the same as,' with *oppugnatio*; 'the mode of attack (*oppugnatio*) of the Gauls (which is) the same as (that) of the Belgians is *as follows* (*haec*).' *ubi* : with *coepti sunt* and *nudatus est*; see (358). 5. *circumiecta multitudo* : abl. absol. mod. *coepti sunt iaci*. *moenibus* : dat. indir. obj. of *circumiecta*, 'a multitude of men being thrown round all the walls.' 6. *iaci* : pres. infin. pass. (complementary infin.) with *coepti sunt*, which is always *pass.* when accom-

panied by a *pass. infin.*; 'when (*ubi*) stones began to be thrown.' *que*: connects *coepti sunt* and *nudatus est. defensoribus*: abl. of separation, mod. *nudatus est*; 'was stripped of defenders.' 7. *testudine*: 'having formed a *testudo*,' by lapping their shields above their heads as was their custom in storming a town. 8. *quod*: rel. pron. at the beginning of the paragraph, see (367); 'now this was easily done *in the present instance* (*tum*).' *cum . . . conicerent*: historical *cum*, see (128, 203, 359); *conicerent* is plur. from the individuals composing the *subj. multitudo*. 10. *nulli*: 'dat. of possession,' see (357); 'no one had the power to stand (could stand) upon the wall'; what literally? 11. *summa nobilitate et gratia*: 'abl. of quality or description,' see (376); supply *vir*, '(a man) of the highest nobility and influence.' *inter suos*: 'among his (own people),' see (258). *oppido*: dat., see (337); 'who was then in command of the town.' 12. *unus*: adj. used as a noun, in apposition with *Iccius*; 'one of those who had come as ambassadors'; see (378), 'partitive gen., *exceptions*.' 13. *mittit*: a verb of *saying* to be supplied, 'sends a message to him (saying)'; hence the principal verbal phrase *posse non sustinere* is *infin.*, and the subord. verb *submittatur* is *subjunc.* Notice that the princ. verb of *saying* is *pres. tense*, as is seen in *mittit*: this requires that the depen. *subjunc. verb* shall be in either the *pres.* or *perf. subjunc.*, the *pres.* to denote *unfinished*; the *perf.*, *finished* time. This is a more *viv. fut. condit.* in *indir. disc.*: is the verb in the protasis (of the *dir. disc.*) *fut. indic. submittetur* or *fut. perf. submissum erit*? see (223, 396). *se non posse* = *ego non possum*, in the *direct disc.*

CHAPTER VII.—1. 'thither,' i.e. to Bibrax. *isdem* = *eisdem* · abl. obj. of *usus* (from *utor*); see (353); 'employing as guides the same persons who had come as messengers.' 2. *Numidas, Cretas*: 'Numidian and Cretan bowmen.' 3. *Baleares*: 'and Balearic slingers.' The Numidians and especially the people of Crete were famous archers, and, together with the celebrated slingers from the Balearic Islands, they were valuable auxiliaries of the Romans, serving as light-armed troops. *subsidio, oppidanis*: doub. dat., see (352). *quorum adventu*: 'and because of (upon) their arrival.' 4. *Remis*: dat. indir. obj. of *accessit* (*subj. studium*); 'there both came (was added) to the Remi along with the hope of (making a successful) defence, a desire for making sallies (against the enemy).' 5. *et hostibus discessit*: *hostibus* is dat. with *discessit* (as a verb of *taking away*) instead of the abl. of separation; 'and from the enemy there

was taken away . . . the hope of,' *potiundi* = *potiendi*: see (253). 6. *itaque*: 'and so.' *apud*: 'near.' *morati*, *depopulati*: mod. the subj. of *contenderunt*; observe that these are particips. of depon. verbs; 'having delayed—having ravaged.' 7. *omnibus vicis . . . incensis*: 'having burnt all the villages,' etc.: why translate *incensis*, a *pass.* particip. (not a *depon.*) with an act. meaning? see (372). *quos*: has two antecedents, *vicis* and *aedificiis*, which are of different genders; in such instances the relative takes the gender sometimes of the *strongest* or *most important* word, sometimes that of the *nearest*. Here the rel. has the gender of *vicis*. 8. *potuerant*: pluperf., 'had been able.' 9. *ab . . . duobus*: 'less than two miles away (off)'; *ab* is used adverbially, 'off,' i.e. distant from Caesar's camp; *milibus* is the abl. of degree of difference, 'by two thousands,' being used independently of *minus*, '(and) less,' which does not affect the construction. 10. *quae castra*: see (367), 'and this camp.' *ut significabatur*: 'as was indicated,' a clause used parenthetically. 11. *amplius milibus*: *amplius* is the accus. of extent in space, see (342); *milibus* is abl. after the comparative *amplius*, see (369). For the other construction allowable with these neuter accusatives see note 9 above.

CHAPTER VIII.—2. *eximiam . . . virtutis*: 'remarkable reputation for valor;' *virtutis* = objective genitive, that is, a gen. which denotes the object of an action or feeling: as, *matris amor pueri*, 'a mother's love for her boy'; boy (*pueri*) is here the object of the feeling of love implied in the noun *amor*. *proelio*: abl. of separation; 'to refrain from an engagement.' 3. *equestribus proeliis*: 'in cavalry skirmishes.' *quid posset*, *quid auderent*: subjunctives of indir. quest., see (313); *quid* = adverbial acc., see (374); 'what prowess the enemy had,' literally, '*what* the enemy *could* (do) from the standpoint of courage.' 4. *periclitabatur*: *imperf.* 'kept trying to ascertain by experiment.' 5. *inferiores*: acc. pred. with *esse*, 'that our men were not inferior' (in courage); i.e. were not losing heart. *loco . . . idoneo*: abl. absol. composed of *noun* + *adj.*; see (364), example 2; this abl. absol. shows *cause* and mod. *obduxit* (line 12). 6. *natura*: 'by nature.' *quod is collis*: taken with *patebat*, *habebat*, *redibat*, these clauses explaining *loco idoneo* and also, indirectly, modifying *obduxit*. *ubi*: 'where.' 8. *editus*, etc.: mod. *collis*; 'elevated a very little from (above) the level ground.' *tantum*: acc. of extent in space, mod. *patebat*; *loci* in the next line (a *partitive gen.*) is to be translated with *tantum*; 'extended in width (over) as much ground (*loci*).' *adversus*:

mod. *collis*, 'right in front.' *quantum*: obj. of *occupare*, 'as an army arranged in battle order could cover.' 9. *instructa*: p. p. p. mod. *acies*. *ex utraque parte*: 'on each side.' 10. *lateris deiectus*: *deiectus* is a noun, acc. plur.; 'it had a steep slope' (lit. 'slopes of the side'). 10. *fastigatus*: mod. *collis*, 'falling with an easy slope in front sank gently to the plain.' 11. *ab utroque latere*: 'on each side.' 12. *transversam*: '(a ditch) at right angles.' *passuum*: gen. of measure, 'about 400 feet (long).' 13. *ad extremas*: 'at the ends of the ditches.' 14. *tormenta*: 'engines of war.' *ne . . . possent*: neg. purpose, see (211, 320); 'so that the enemy could *not* surround.' *cum*: 'after.' 15. *quod . . . poterant*: parenthetical clause and hence not *subjunc.*, 'because they were so (thus) strong in numbers'—*tantum* is the adverbial accus.; see note 3 above. *ab lateribus*: 'on their flanks.' *pugnantes*: pres. particip. mod. *suos* (referring to *Caesar*); 'his men while they were fighting.' 17. *ut . . . possent*: affirm. purpose; 'so that they could *be led out* (*duci*).' *quo*: adv., 'if they should be needed anywhere.' 18. *subsidio* = dat. of purpose or service. 20. *eductas*: p. p. p. mod. the *obj.* of the verb: see (381); '*had led out and drawn up*.'

CHAPTER IX.—1. *non magna*: = *parva*, 'there was a small marsh.' *nostrum*: mod. *exercitum*. 2. *si transirent*: indir. quest., see (313); 'the enemy kept waiting to see whether our men would cross.' 3. *autem*: 'on the other hand.' *si . . . fieret*: a part of the *ut* clause, hence *subjunc.* by attraction, see (276); 'if a beginning of . . . should be made.' *ut . . . aggredierentur*: affirmative purpose with *parati erant*; 'our men were ready under arms to *attack*.' *impeditos*: mod. (*hostes*), 'as they struggled in the river.' 5. *contendebatur*: impersonal, see (365); 'the two armies engaged.' 6. *neutri*: nom. plur. subj. of *faciunt*. *secundiore*: adj. with *proelio*, forming an abl. absol.; see (364); 'as the battle of cavalry was rather favorable to our men.' *nostris*: dat. with adj. (*secundiore*); see (126). 9. *quod*: rel. pron. nom. subj. of *demonstratum est*; 'which has been shown to be in the rear of.' 10. *conati sunt*: depon., 'they attempted to lead a part across.' 11. *eo consilio*: 'with this design.' *ut*: with *expugnarent*, *interscinderent*, *popularentur*, and *prohiberent*, explaining *eo consilio*; viz., 'to storm, if they could,' etc. *possent*: *subjunc.* by attraction; *sequence*? *cui*: dat. with comp. verb (*praeerat*); see (337). 13. *si potuissent*: *subjunc.* by attraction, being within the *ut popularentur* clause; 'if (having made the attempt) they should have been unable': in these two *si* clauses, *possent* = *fut. indic.*, *potuissent* = *fut. perf.*

indic. of a more viv. fut. condition, see (223); thus 'we will storm, if we are (*shall be*) able,' and 'we will ravage, if we are not (*shall not have been*) able (to storm)': for *mood* of condition in indir. disc., see (396). 14. *nobis usui*: doub. dat., see (352); 'who were very useful (for a great use) to us.' *commeatu*: abl. of separation, 'from supplies.'

CHAPTER X.—1. *certior factus*: see (338), '(on) being informed by Titurius.' The lieutenant was about a mile nearer the fords where the Belgians were crossing than Caesar was. 2. *levis armaturae*: gen. depen. upon Numidas, 'Numidians of light equipment': these light-armed troops were swift runners and could arrive at the ford more quickly than the rest, where they were to stop the passage of the Belgians. 4. *pugnatum est*: impers. verb, see (365), 'a fierce engagement occurred.' *hostes*: acc. obj. of *aggressi*. *impeditos*: p. p. p. mod. *hostes*; 'having attacked the enemy who were hindered in the river.' 5. *aggressi*: limits *nostri*. *reliquos*: adj. used as noun, acc. obj. of *reppulerunt*, and modified by *conantes*, the pres. particip. of *conor*; 'our men drove back . . . the rest of the enemy as they were trying very boldly to cross over' (per). 6. *multitudine*: abl. of means mod. *reppulerunt*. 7. *primos*: adj. as noun, dir. obj. of *interfecerunt*. 8. *circumventos*: p. p. p. mod. *primos*; see (381). *hostes*: stands at the head of the sent. and belongs to the principal clause in Latin, but is incorporated in the *ubi* clause when translated: 'when the enemy perceived that hope had failed them.' *et de expugnando*: 'both with respect to storming.' 10. *neque progredi viderunt*: 'and when they say that our men were not advancing.' 11. *atque*: still using *ubi*, 'and when corn supplies began.' *ipsos*: i.e. the enemy. On account of a lack of provisions the enemy could not carry on a long campaign with such a large army as Caesar's. 12. *optimum*: acc. *neut.* pred. adj. with *esse*, whose subj. is the *domum* . . . *reverti* clause: 'decided that it was best for each one (*quemque*) to return to his own home.' 13. *domum*; see (386). *et convenirent*: after *constituerunt*, 'and (they decided) to assemble.' *constituo* is followed sometimes by the *acc.* + *infin.*, sometimes by *ut* + *subjunc.*; rarely, as *here*, by both in the *same sentence*. *quorum*: anteced. *eos*; order, *ad defendendos eos quorum in fines Romani introduxissent*, 'with a view toward defending those into whose borders the Romans should lead (should have led).' 14. *introduxissent*: subjunc. as being a part of the *ut convenirent* clause following a *past* verb, *constituerunt*; it stands for the fut. perf. indic. of the *direct*; see (223, 396). *ad . . . defendendos*: gerundive of purpose, see (253, 355). 15. *ut decertarent*,

**uterentur**: affirm purpose depen. upon **convenirent**, '(to assemble, etc.) so that they might contend and use.' **potius quam**: 'rather than.' 16. **alienis** = **aliorum**, 'of others,' as opposed to **domesticis**, that is, *their own*. **copiis**: 'supplies.' **rei frumentariae**: 'of grain.' 17. **ad eam sententiam**: 'to this determination.' 18. **ratio**: order, **haec ratio quoque cum reliquis causis deduxit**; 'this consideration too, together with other reasons, brought them.' **quod**: 'namely, the fact that.' 19. **cognoverant**: 'they knew.' **appropinquare**: has two subjects, 'were drawing near to.' **finibus**: dat. after comp. verb (**ad** + **propinquo**), see (337). 20. **his persuaderi**: this idiom is fully explained in (380). **ut morarentur neque ferrent**: 'to delay *and not* to offer.' **suis**: indir. obj.; adj. used as noun, 'to their friends.'

CHAPTER XI.—1. **ea re**: 'after this matter had been agreed upon,' that is, for each one to return to his home. **strepitu, tumultu**: abl. of manner, mod. **egressi**; see (210). 2. **egressi**: mod. subj. contained in **fecerunt**; see (340). **nullo . . . imperio**: abl. of manner, as though explaining or adding to **magno . . . tumultu**; '(that is) without orderly array and without an officer in command.' 3. **cum peteret, properaret**: 'causal **cum**,' see (350); this clause in turn explains **nullo . . . imperio**; 'since each soldier was seeking for himself . . . and was hastening.' **domum**: see (386). 4. **ut . . . videretur**: affirmative *result* clause, object of **fecerunt**; 'they made their departure seem,' lit. 'they caused it so that their departure seemed.' **fugae**: dat. with (adj.) **consimilis**, see (126). 5. **videretur**: in the *pres. syst. pass.* used as a depen. 'to seem.' **hac . . . cognita**: abl. absol. mod. **continuit**, of which 'Caesar' is the subj.; **re** = the departure of the enemy. **per speculatores**: 'by means of spies'; difference betw. **ab** and **per**? **ab** + *abl.* = direct (voluntary) agency; **per** + *acc.* = indirect agency, the agent being considered the instrument or means. **speculatores** = spies who mingled in disguise with the enemy to obtain information; **exploratores** = scouts or squads of regular cavalry detailed to range the country in the vicinity of the enemy. 6. **veritus**: 'fearing.' **quod . . . perspexerat**: causal clause mod. **continuit**, see (276). **discederent**: 'indir. quest.,' see (313); sequence from **perspexerat**; the *imperf. tense* shows that the *action* of the verb (**discederent**) is *going on* at the *time* of the action of the verb upon which it depends, 'he had not yet found out (did not know) for what reason the enemy *were departing*.' 8. **prima luce**: 'at early dawn.' **re** = the fact of the enemies' departure. 9. **qui . . . moraretur**: rel. clause of purpose, 'to delay the rear' (of the Belgians); sequence from **praemisit**; the *imperf. tense*

denotes that the *action* of the verb (*moraretur*) is to take place at some time in the *future, subsequent to the time* of the action in *prae-misit*; hence this *imperf. subjunc.* = time *fut. (subsequent)*; the *imperf. subjunc.* (*discederent*, just above) denotes time *pres. (contemporaneous)*. 10. *his . . . praefecit*: 'over these he placed in command;' see (337). 12. *hi*: 'the latter,' i. e. Labienus and his men. *novissimos*: supply *hostes*, 'the rear.' *adorti, prosequuti*: mod. *hi*. 13. *eorum fugientium*: 'of them as they fled;' *fugientium* = pres. particip. gen. plur. mod. *eorum*. 14. *cum*: causal, see (350); introduces *consisterent, sustinerent, and ponerent*; 'since those in the rear (*ab*, etc.) whom the Romans had overtaken were making a stand.' 15. *ventum erat* = *impers.*, see (365); lit., '(to whom) it had been come.' 16. *priores*: adj. used as noun (*prior, -ior, -ius*), subj. of *ponerent*, see (258); 'and since those in front,' that is, those at the head of the retreating column. 17. *quod viderentur, continerentur*: subjunc. by attraction, as being part of the *cum ponerent* clause; 'because they seemed to be out of danger and were not restrained.' 18. *omnes*: mod. *priores*. 19. *tantam . . . spatium*: 'as great a number as the length of the day permitted.' 21. *sub occasum*: 'about the setting.' 22. *ut*: parenthetical, 'as they were commanded.'

CHAPTER XII.—1. *postridie eius diei*: 'on the next day,' lit., 'on the after day of that day.' *prius quam*: takes the subjunc. when the action is expected, intended or in suspense; 'before the enemy could recover (themselves).' Caesar now proceeded to subdue the enemy tribe by tribe, since his plans for separating them had been successful. 3. *magno*: 'by making a forced march.' 4. *Noviodunum*: about 20 miles west of Bibrax. *id (oppidum)*: obj. of *oppugnare*. *ex itinere*: as we say, 'on the fly,' without stopping to invest or besiege. 5. *quod*: acc. subj. of *esse*, 'which he kept hearing was.' 6. *paucis defendentibus*: abl. absol., denoting concession, see (364), example 3; 'although few were defending it.' 7. *vineas*: 'to bring up the vineae.' Movable sheds (*vineae*), with roofs and sides of wickerwork or planks covered with skins, were placed end to end, forming galleries through which the men passed back and forth when they were besieging a strongly fortified town. 8. *quae*: anteced. is *ea*, the dir. obj. of *comparare*, 'and to prepare those things which were useful.' *usui*: dat. of purpose, end, or service. 9. *ex fuga*: 'in their flight.' 10. *veneis . . . actis*: 'when the vineae were brought up.' 11. *iacto*: p. p. p. (from *iacio*), forming an abl. absol. with *aggere* (from *agger*). *magnitudine*: abl. of

cause, mod. **permoti**; 'being greatly alarmed on account of the extent of the works,' i.e. by the extent of these offensive operations. 12. **quae**: refers to **operum**, hence neut. plur.; it is dir. obj. of **viderant** and **audierant**, 'which (such as) the Gauls had neither seen nor heard of.' 13. **celeritate**: abl. of cause with **permoti**. 14. **petentibus Remis**: abl. absol., see (364), 'at the request of the Remi.' **ut conservarentur**: affirm. result clause, obj. of **impetrant**, 'they obtain the request that they should be spared.'

CHAPTER XIII.—1. **obsidibus**: apposition with **primis** and **filiis**, which are the principal words—the basis—of the abl. absol. with **acceptis**, 'after he had received as hostages the chief men of the state and the two sons.' 2. **ipsius**: adds emphasis to **Galbae**. 4. **in Bellovacos**: 'against the Bellovaci;' their territory lay west of the Suessiones. **qui**: the rel. pron. at the beginning of a paragraph, see (367); **qui** is translated after **cum**, 'now when these.' 5. **contulissent**: 'had betaken themselves with all their possessions;' **omnia** modifies **sua**, which is used as a noun; see (258). **atque**: joins **contulissent** and **abesset**, both following **cum**; 'and while Caesar was distant.' 7. **maiores**: comparative of **magnus**, used as a noun, subj. of **coeperunt**, etc.; 'all the older men,' lit., 'all the greater by birth.' **egressi**: mod. **maiores**. 8. **voce significare**: 'to declare,' what literally? They uttered cries of supplication in a tongue different from Latin. **sese . . . contendere**: indir. disc., **venire** and **contendere** being used in a *fut.* sense: 'that they would place themselves under his protection . . . and would not contend;' **sese** refers to the speakers (*reflexive*), **eius** to Caesar—the person addressed. 10. **cum accessisset, poneret**: 'after he had approached (time *antecedent*) and while he was pitching (time *contemporaneous*) his camp.' 11. **pueri**: 'the children.' **ex muro**: '(standing) on.' **passis manibus**: 'with outstretched hands,' abl. of manner. 12. **ab Romanis**: 'of the Romans.'

CHAPTER XIV.—1. **pro his**: 'in behalf of these'; i.e. the Bellovaci. **discessum**: noun, 'after the departure.' 2. **dimissis**: 'when the forces of the Aedui had been dismissed.' **reverterat**: notice the tense, 'he *had* come back.' **facit verba** = **dicit**. The rest of the chapter is in *indir. disc.*; for the 'Oratio Recta' form of this chapter, see (407). 3. **Bellovacos**: 'he said that the Bellovaci had been.' **omni tempore**: 'always.' 4. **impulsos**: p. p. p. mod. (**eos**) the subj. of **defecisse** and **intulisse**; notice the emphatic position of **impulsos**, 'he said that they (the Bellovaci), urged on (being urged

on) by their chiefs . . . had both revolted and brought war.' **qui dicerent**: 'who kept saying'; subord. clause in indir. disc., hence *subjunc.*, see (306). Following **dicerent** (a verb of 'saying') there is an infin. proposition, **Aeduos . . . perferre**; this makes indir. disc. *within* indir. disc. 5. **redactos**: p. p. p. mod. **Aeduos**, lit. 'having been (being) reduced,' but best rendered by a *finite verb*, see (381) 'who kept saying that the Aedui *had been reduced* . . . and were suffering' (*perferre*). 6. **et . . . et**: see note 4 above, 'both . . . and.' **defecisse**, **intulisse**: princ. verbs (infin.) in the indir. disc.; for the *time relation of tense*, see (305). **populo**: dat. with comp. verb, **intulisse**, see (337). 7. **qui**: anteced. is (**eos**), acc. subj. of **profugisse**; see O. R. (407); follows **facit verba**: 'he said that those, who had been (were) the leaders in(of) this scheme.' 8. **fuissent**: subord. clause in O. O., see (306); what tense in O. R.? see (407). It is *pluperf.* in the indir. disc. (for *past* time) since it follows **facit verba** (*historical pres.*) which is regarded as a *past tense* rather by its *meaning* than its form. **quod . . . intellegent**: subord. in O. O., 'because they knew'; what in the direct? 9. **civitati**: dat. with comp. verb. **intulissent**: indir. quest. remains *subjunc.* in O. R., see (407); its sequence is from **intellegent** and it denotes action *completed*; 'because they realized how great a disaster they *had* brought upon.' **profugisse**: see note 7, first part. **petere**: princ. verb in O. O.; notice that it denotes action *going on at the time of the action of facit verba* and that **facit verba** is treated, in the rest of the chapt., as a *pres. tense*, by its *form* rather than its meaning: 'he says that not only the Bellovaci *are pleading*.' 10. **Aeduos**: also subj. of **petere**. **ut . . . utatur**: depends upon **petere**, 'that he should exercise'—freely with **petere**, 'are begging him to exercise': direct, 'the Bellovaci beg *you to exercise*,' see (407). 11. **in eos**: 'toward them'; se would have appeared here, but for the interposition of **Aeduos**. **Quod si fecerit**: 'and (he says) that if he (Caesar) does this'; **fecerit** = *perf. subjunc.*, sequence from **facit verba** (*dicat*). 12. **amplificaturum esse**: subj. is (**eum**), 'that he will increase': for this *condit.* in O. R., see (223, 407); for change of mood and tense, in G. R., see (396). 13. **auxiliis**, etc.: 'by whose aid and assistance,' abl. of *means*, mod. **sustentare**. **si qua**, etc.: 'if any wars (whatever wars) arose.' **consuerint**: *perf. subjunc.*, 'they were (had become) accustomed to hold out.' See (407), for construction in O. R.

CHAPTER XV.—1. **honoris**: gen. depen. upon **causa**, see (7), 'for the sake of his regard.' **Divitiaci, Aeduorum**: objective genitives,

depen. upon *honoris*, 'for Divitiacus and the Aedui'; see chapter 8, note 2, '*virtutis*.' 2. *sese recepturum esse*: depen. upon *dixit*; see (318), 3 and 4. 3. *magna auctoritate*: 'abl. of quality,' see (376), 'because the state was (one) of great influence.' 5. *his . . . collatis* (from *confero*): two abls. absol. of time, mod. *pervenit*; translate by an '*after*' clause, 'after these were handed over,' etc. 6. *Ambianorum*: north of the Bellovaci; Caesar's route lay to the north, probably by way of Amiens. 7. *finis*: obj. of *attingebant*; observe the emphatic position of *finis eorum*. *Nervii*: considered the most savage of all the Belgae, occupying the basin of the Sambre river. 8. *quorum de natura*: adv. phrase mod. *quaereret*, 'when Caesar inquired about their nature and customs.' 9. *nullum aditum*: acc. of thing possessed. *mercatoribus*: dat. of possessor. *esse* = 'have', see (357); indir. disc. to the end of the chapter; 'he found out that merchants *have* no access to them,' lit. 'that no access to them is to merchants'; direct, '*nullus aditus (nom.) ad eos est mercatoribus*.' 10. *pati*: pres. infin. of *pator*, prin. verb (infin.) depen. upon *reperiebat*; the subj. of *pati* is (*eos*); 'that they allowed (were allowing) no wine to be imported (*inferri*).'  
*vini*: partitive gen., see (378). 11. *pertinentium*: pres. particip. gen. plur. mod. *rerum*. *inferri*: complementary infin. depen. upon *pati*. *quod . . . existimarent*: subjunc. because a subord. clause in indir. disc.; though modifying *pati* (a *pres.* tense), it derives its sequence from *reperiebat*, the main verb of saying. *rebus*: abl. of means, mod. the *two following infins.* which depend upon *existimarent*, 'because they believe that by these things.' *animos*: 'spirit,' as a quality of character. 12. *virtutem*: 'valor,' as a manifestation of courage in deeds; 'their spirit is (would be) weakened and their valor given up.' *esse*: follows *reperiebat*, 'he found out that the men were fierce.' 13. *que* connects *feros* (adj.) and *virtutis* (*gen. of quality*), the latter being used in the *sense* of an *adj.*; 'fierce and of great courage.' *increpitare, incusare*: princ. verbs in indir. disc., subj. (*eos*); 'he found out that they kept chiding and blaming.' 14. *qui*, etc.: would have a subjunc. verb in the direct disc. also, since it is a rel. causal clause; *qui* = *cum ei*, see (350, 368); 'since they had surrendered.' 15. *confirmare*: depen. upon *reperiebat*, and has as its subj. (*se*); 'that they declare.' *se missuros esse*: infin. in indir. disc. with *confirmare*, 'that they will neither send ambassadors nor accept.'

CHAPTER XVI.—1. *eorum*: i.e. of the *Nervii*. *triduum*: acc. of extent in time, 'for three days'; see (342). *inveniebat*: 'he con-

tinued to find out (further).’ 2. *non amplius*: adv. ‘not more (than)’ 3. *milia*: acc. of extent of space, mod. *abesse*; see (342). 4. *consedissee*, *expectare*: note the difference in time, with reference to the time of *inveniebat*; ‘that all the Nervii *had encamped and were awaiting*.’ 4. *una cum*: ‘along with.’ 6. *utrisque*: from *uterque*, dat. plur. mod. *his*: for declension of *uter*, see (286); for the case of *his*, see (345); ‘for they had persuaded each of these (tribes).’ *uti* (*ut*) . . . *experirentur*: clause of purpose depen. upon *persuaserant* (see preced. note and reference), ‘to try.’ 7. *expectari*: infin. in indir. disc. depen. upon *reperiebat*; ‘that the forces of the Aduatuci *were also being waited for*.’ 8. *esse*: ‘were.’ in *itinere*: ‘on the march.’ *mulieres*: acc. dir. obj. of *coniecisse*, whose subj. is (*Nervios*), the infin. clause depen. upon *reperiebat*; ‘that (the Nervii) had hurriedly placed the women.’ *qui*: anteced. is (*eos*), which is to be supplied as a second dir. obj. of *coniecisse*, ‘and those (men) who.’ *per aetatem*: ‘by reason of old age.’ 9. *viderentur*: as depon., ‘seemed.’ *quo*: rel. adv. = *ad quem*, ‘to which,’ ‘where.’ 10. *exercitui*, *aditus*: dat. of possessor, and nom. of thing possessed, see (357); ‘the army could not (did not) have access.’ *esset*: introduced by *quo*, a rel. clause of *characteristic*, which takes the *subjunc.*, even in the direct disc.

CHAPTER XVII.—2. *qui* . . . *deligant*: see (311); in what *four* ways may affirmative purpose be expressed? see (355). *ex dediticiis*: with *complures*, in place of the partitive gen., see (378), ‘exceptions’; ‘while several of the surrendered Belgians’: i.e. the Ambiani, Suessiones, and Bellovaci. 4. *secuti*: depon. particip. mod. *complures*, rendered by a finite verb, see (381), ‘were following Caesar and were marching along (with him).’ *quidam ex his*: ‘certain of these’—see note 2 above. *ut* . . . *cognitum est*: *ut* + indic. = ‘as’; parenthetical and verb impersonal, see (365); ‘as he afterwards found out’—what literally? 5. *consuetudine perspecta*: abl. absol. mod. *pervenerunt*; notice the accumulation of genitives; *dierum* and *exercitus limit itineris*, which in turn depends upon *consuetudine*, ‘after observing the army’s usual marching order during those days.’ 7. *atque his*: ‘and announced to the latter (the Nervii).’ *inter singulas legiones*: indir. disc. through *auderent* (line 12) depen. upon *demonstra(ve)runt*; ‘that between every two legions.’ 8. *intercedere*: depen. upon *demonstrarunt*, subj. *numerus*, ‘a great number of baggage (animals) passed (as a usual thing).’ *neque*: continues indir. disc., ‘and that it was not any trouble.’ 9. *negoti*: partitive

gen. depen. upon *quicquam* (for *quidquam*) acc. neut. in the predicate with *esse*. *venisset*: 'after the first legion had come.' 10. *abessent*: 'and while the rest of . . . were quite a good distance off.' 11. *adoriri*: infin. used as *subj.* of *esse*; *what* was no trouble? 'to attack this legion.' *qua pulsa* (from *pello*): abl. absol. rendered by a conditional, 'and that, if this should be routed;' see (364). 12. *futurum (esse)*: with *demonstrarunt*, 'that it would be,' or 'the result would be.' *ut non auderent*: neg. result clause, 'that the rest of the legions would not dare;' see (321). *futurum esse ut* + *subjunc.* = periphrasis or substitution for the *fut. infin.*; see (382). 13. *adiuvabat*: used impersonally, with the *quod . . . effecerant* clause as its *subj.*; 'the fact that (*quod*) the Nervii . . . helped the plan of those who reported the matter.' 14. *Nervii*: *subj.* of *effecerant*; 'the fact that the Nervii had caused these hedges to furnish,' lit. 'had made it so that (*ut*) these hedges furnished (*praeberent*).' *cum . . . possent*: 'since they could do nothing with cavalry.' 15. *neque enim*: 'and in fact . . . not.' *ei rei*: dat. obj. of *student*, 'do they care for this kind of service,' i.e. use of cavalry. *quic(d)quid*: adverbial accus., see (374); *quicquid . . . copiis*, freely translated, 'all the strength they possess lies in infantry.' 16. *quo* = *ut eo* (accompanied by the comparative *facilius*) introducing *impedirent*: translated and explained in (384). 17. *si . . . venissent*: for the *fut. perf. indic.* in the *direct*, see (223, 396); 'if they should come against them.' 18. *crebrisque . . . interiectis*: 'and, when their numerous branches had grown out on the sides (in *latitudinem*) and when brambles and thornbushes had been thrown into (*interiectis*) the spaces between the trees.' The trees were notched and bent when young and the branches were trained to grow out on the sides. In the spaces left between the trees and not covered up were placed brambles and bushes which made an impregnable hedge. 21. *quo . . . posset*: rel. clause of result, *quo* = rel. adv.; see (387). *ne . . . quidem*: give emphasis to the word between them, 'but not even *be seen*.' 22. *cum*: *causal*, see (350); 'since the march (advance) of our line would be checked.' 23. *omittendum sibi*: see (361, 362, 363).

CHAPTER XVIII.—2. *delegerant*: note the force of the pluperf. *collis*: the hill upon which the Roman camp was laid out. *ab summo*: 'from the top,' mod. *declivis*. *declivis*: 'sloping down uniformly.' 3. *vergebat*: 'inclined.' 4. *pari acclivitate*: 'of equal steepness,' with *collis*. *pari* = adj. of third declens. (one ending), from *par nascebatur*, etc.: 'rose up facing this and on the other side (of the

stream).’ 5. *ducentos passus*: acc. extent of space, mod. *apertus*; see (342). *infimus*, *apertus*: mod. *collis*, ‘open (bare of trees) for about 200 feet at the foot (*infimus*)’: the hill was bare of trees for 200 feet up the slope from the bank of the river. *ab superiore parte*: abl. with *ab*, giving the point of view from which; ‘along the upper part.’ 6. *silvestris*: mod. *collis*, ‘covered with trees.’ *ut non . . . posset*: neg. result clause, see (321); recast in the *act.*, ‘so that one could not easily see within.’ 7. *continebant*: imperf. of continued action, see (102). 8. *secundum*: prep. + acc. 9. *videbantur*: ‘there appeared a few squads.’ *pedum*: gen. of measure used in the predicate.

CHAPTER XIX.—1. *praemisso*: ‘after sending forward.’ 2. *copiis*: abl. of attendance or accompaniment; this abl. often omits *cum* in military phrases. *ratio ordoque*: since the two phrases convey a single idea, the verb is singular. *aliter ac*: ‘otherwise than;’ *atque*, *ac*, after words of likeness and unlikeness mean ‘than;’ translate, ‘was different from what the Belgae had reported.’ 5. *post eas* (*legiones*): ‘behind these (legions).’ *totius*: gen.; declined in (286). *colloca(ve)rat*: ‘he had placed (for safety).’ 7. *praesidioque impedimentis erant*. doub. dat., see (352), ‘and guarded the baggage.’ 9. *transgressi*: particip. (perf.) depon., see (340), mod. *equites*, the subj. of the sent., ‘having crossed.’ 10. *cum*: with *reciperent*, *facerent*, *auderent*, the clauses describing the situation and mod. *coeperunt munire*. *illi*: subj. of *reciperent* and *facerent*. *ad suos*: adj. used as noun, see (258); refers to the *subj.*, ‘while they (the enemy) would retreat . . . and would make an attack again.’ 11. *neque = et . . . non*; *nostri*: subj. of *auderent*. *longius*: adv. compar. degree (followed by *quam = ‘than’*), mod. *insequi*; ‘and while our men did not dare to pursue them as they were retreating farther than.’ 12. *quem ad finem = ad finem ad quem*, ‘to the limit where.’ *porrecta*, *aperta*: adjs. mod. *loca*: ‘the level (clear) open ground extended.’ 13. *cedentes*. pres. particip. acc. plur. mod. (*eos*), obj. of *insequi*. 14. *quae . . . venerant*: ‘which had been the first to arrive.’ *dimenso* (from *dimetior*): in *pass.* sense, abl. absol. 15. *ubi*: introduces a purely temporal clause: compare this with *cum* (line 10); see (203). *ubi . . . visa sunt*: ‘when the foremost (part of the) baggage of our army was seen.’ 16. *quod . . . convenerat*: ‘which had been agreed upon as the time.’ 17. *committendi*: see gerundive, (253). *ut . . . confirmaverant*: ‘just as they had arranged their line . . . and (as) they had resolved (to do)’—*sese confirmaverant = ‘had resolved.’* 20. *his*: abl. absol., ‘as these (our cavalry) were easily defeated.’ 21.

**decucurrerunt**: 'they ran down.' **ut . . . viderentur**: affirm. result, see (321); 'so that the enemy seemed (to be).' **paene uno** 'almost at one and the same time.' 22. **et ad silvas**: 'both near the woods.' **iam in manibus nostris**: 'and now close at hand.' Perhaps about twenty minutes, as the Roman camp was three-quarters of a mile from the river, in fording which there was no doubt some delay. It is a surprise that Caesar did not have troops ready to repel the enemies' charge. 23. **adverso colle**: 'up the hill (facing them).' 24. **eos**: with **ad**; 'and to those who were engaged;' **occupati** has the force of a pred. adj. **opere**: i.e. fortifying the camp.

CHAPTER XX.—1. **Caesari**: dat. of pers. agent, mod. **agenda erant**; see (361, 362, 363); 'Caesar had to do everything at once,' lit. 'all things had to be done by Caesar.' 2. **proponendum erat**: 'had to be raised;' supply **erat** or **erant** with each of the following verbs (periphrastic). The vexillum was the large banner hoisted to announce an intended engagement. **cum . . . oporteret**: lit., 'when it ought to be hurried,' freely, 'when the soldiers ought to hasten;' see (385). 3. **tuba**: 'the call had to be sounded with the trumpet;' the call to take their places in the line. **ab opere**: 'from their work.' 4. **qui**: its anteced. is the *subj.* contained in **arcessendi erant**, 'those who had proceeded.' These soldiers would need a special messenger since they were out of hearing of the usual signals. **paulo longius**: 'a little farther (than usual).' **aggeris**, etc.: 'for the sake of procuring material for the rampart;' see gerundive (253). 5. **cohortandi erant**: the *gerundive* of a *depon.* always has a *passive* meaning; 'had to be encouraged;' this was always done if possible. 6. **signum dandum (erat)**: here a signal for the attack made by horns and trumpets. **quarum rerum**: gen. depen. upon **partem**; **quarum** = 'but these,' see (367); 'but the shortness of the time and the approach of . . . prevented a great part of these things.' 7. **impediebat**: sing. agreeing with the nearer *subj.* 8. **difficultatibus**, **subsidio**: doub. dat., see (352); 'in (to) these difficulties two things were (for) a help:' first, the previous training of the soldiers; second, putting a lieutenant over each legion. **scientia atque usus**: apposition with **duae res**. 9. **quod . . . poterant**: 'because they themselves (**ipsi**) could.' **exercitati**: p. p. p. mod. **ipsi**, the *subj.* of the **quod** clause; see (316). **quid**: acc. *subj.* of **fieri**, depen. upon the impersonal verb **oporteret**—a subjunc. of *indir. quest.*, see (313). 10. **oporteret** gets its sequence from **poterant praescribere**; 'could give directions to themselves (**sibi**) as to what ought to be done.' **non minus**: 'no less.' **quam**: 'than.' 11.

doceri (poterant): 'could be directed by others.' 12. *singulis legionibus*: 'from (ab) the several legions.' *singulos legatos*: acc. subj. of *discedere*, depen. upon *vetuerat* (from *veto*); 'had forbidden the several lieutenants to withdraw.' 13. *nisi castris munitis*: idiom, 'until the camp had been fortified.' 14. *nihil imperium*: 'no command whatever;' 'not at all.' 15. *per se*: 'of their own efforts.' *quae*: anteced. is (*ea*), obj. of *administrabant*, 'attended to what (= those things which) seemed best.'

CHAPTER XXI.—1. *necessariis*, etc.: 'after giving (only) the necessary commands.' *ad cohortandos*: see (355), 'four ways to express *purpose*;' see (253), gerundive construction. 2. *quam in partem* = *in eam partem in quam*: 'into that quarter where fortune led him.' 3. *decimam*: Caesar's favorite legion; it was at the extreme left of the line; next came the IXth, then the XIth, VIIIth, XIIth, and lastly the VIIth. *milites*: acc. dir. obj. of *cohortatus*, which mod. *Caesar*; 'having encouraged his soldiers.' *non longiore quam ut*: 'with no longer an address than (to tell them) that.' 4. *suae*: refers to the subj. of *retinerent*; see (189, 214); 'of their usual.' 5. *neu*: negatives are continued by *neve* or *neu*, 'and that they should not.' 6. *sustinerent*: with *ut* understood depen. upon *cohortatus*. *quod . . . aberant*: mod. *dedit*. *non longius quam*: 'no farther than (the distance).' 7. *quo*: adverbial relative; 'to which a dart could be hurled.' *posset*: introduced by *quo*, a characteristic relative, taking the verb in the *subjunc.* 8. *profectus*: 'depon. perf. participle,' see (340); mod. the subj. of *occurrit*; 'having advanced into another quarter.' 9. *pugnantibus*: pres. particip. dat. plur. mod. (*suis*), the dat. obj. of *occurrit* (comp. verb—*ob-curro*); see (327); 'he came upon his men (already) fighting.' *tanta exiguitas*: 'such was the want of time.' 10. *hostium*: with *animus*; 'and the spirit of . . . so determined upon a battle.' *ut . . . defuerit* (from *desum*): affirm. result, 'that time was lacking;' note the use again of the *perf. subj.* (of result) after *fuit*, a verb of *past* time. 11. *ad insignia*: 'for putting on their decorations': to distinguish the different legions and officers. 12. *scutis*: mod. *detrudenda*, 'from their shields': for agreem. of these gerundives, see (253). 13. *quam in partem*: 'to whatever place each man from his work came.' *quaeque*, etc.: 'and whatever standards he first saw.' 14. *ad haec*: 'near these.' *ne . . . dimitteret*: neg. purpose, see (320); 'lest he should lose the opportunity (tempus).' *in quaerendis suis (signis)*: gerundive, 'in searching for his own standards.'

CHAPTER XXII.—1. *magis ut, quam ut*: ‘rather as,’ ‘than as,’ take the *indic* *postulabat*. *natura, delectus, necessitas*: subjects of *postulabat*. in the *magis ut* clause, the verb (singular) being in agreement with the nearest subj. 2. *ratio, ordo*: subj. in the *quam ut* clause, ‘than as the arrangement and order of military science.’ 3. *cum . . . resisterent*. ‘since the legions were resisting the enemy separately, some in one place and some in another’; this clause and the next, *cum . . . impediretur*, modify *poterant collocari* in the main clause. *aliae*: with *legiones* understood. 4. *hostibus*: dat. indir. obj. of *resisterent*; for case, see (348). *saepibus interiectis*: abl. absol. of *means* mod. *impediretur*; ‘by the interposition of very thick hedges.’ *ut*: ‘as.’ 5. *impediretur*: causal subjunc. introduced by *cum* (line 3), ‘since the view was cut off.’ *neque*: beginning of the main clause whose verb is *poterant*. 6. *subsidia*: subj. of *poterant collocari*; ‘neither could reserves be stationed regularly.’ *quid . . . esset*: indir. quest. *subj. of poterat provideri*; ‘nor could whatever was needed in each quarter be provided—for.’ 7. *administrari*: complementary infin. with *poterant*, ‘could all commands be executed by a single man’—notice the emphatic position of *ab uno*. 8. *itaque*: ‘and so.’ *tanta*: mod. *iniquitate*. *fortunae*: gen. depen. upon *eventus*, the subj. of *sequebantur*, ‘various issues of fortune also.’

CHAPTER XXIII.—1. *milites*: subj. of *compulerunt et interfecerunt*, ‘the soldiers of the ninth,’ etc., who were commanded by Labienus. *ut . . . constitierant*: ‘as they had taken their stand.’ 2. *acie* = *aciei* (gen.). *pilis emissis*: abl. absol. of *means* mod. *compulerunt*; best translated, ‘by throwing pikes.’ *pilum* = an offensive weapon, a strong and heavy pike six feet long and weighing ten or eleven pounds. This was the principal weapon of the legion soldiers, being thrown only at close range. *cursu ac lassitudine*: abl. of *means* mod. *exanimatos*, ‘made breathless by speed and fatigue.’ They had run about a mile and forded the river. 3. *exanimatos, confectos*: mod. *Atrebates*, the obj. of *compulerunt*; ‘drove the Atrebatians, made breathless . . . and exhausted with wounds.’ *his* = *Atrebates*; dat. after comp. verb *obvenerat*; see (337). *ea pars*: on the Roman side; ‘for that part (the Roman left wing) had encountered these (the latter).’ 5. *conantes*: pres. particip. (*act. form*) of *depon.*, acc. plur. mod. *eos*, i.e. *Atrebates*, to be supplied as the dir. object of *insecuti*; ‘and pursuing (them) as they were trying.’ 6. *impeditam*: mod. *partem*, ‘embarrassed (in the attempt to cross).’ *ipsi*: emphatic; the soldiers of the IXth and Xth legions. 8. *resistentes*: pres. particip. mod.

*hostes*, the obj. of *coniecerunt*, 'put to flight the enemy when they again offered resistance.' 10. *profigatis*: p. p. p. abl. absol.; 'after routing the Viromandui with whom they had been engaged.' 11. *in ipsis ripis*: 'on the very banks.' 12. *proeliabantur*: for the force of the impf. see (102); 'kept up the fight.' *at*: 'but.' *totis . . . castris*: abl. absol. of *time* or *cause* mod. *contenderunt* (line 16). Notice the emphatic position of *totis* modified by *ferē*, 'almost'; 'now that the camp was almost *entirely* laid bare along the front and on the left side.' The VIIIth and XIth had left the front of the camp, and the IXth and Xth the left, in pursuit of the enemy. 13. *cum . . . constitisset*: see causal *cum* (350)—'since the twelfth legion had taken its stand . . . and at no great distance from it.' 14. *ab ea*: *ea* refers to *duodecima legio*. *intervallo*: abl. of degree (measure) of difference. 15. *duce Boduognato*: abl. absol. composed of *two nouns*; see (364). 16. *summam*: noun, with limiting gen. *imperii* = 'the chief command.' 17. *aperto latere*: 'on the unprotected flank.' *circumvenire*: depen. upon *coepit*, which has the *first pars* as its subj., 'a part of whom began to surround.' 18. *summum castrorum locum*: 'the main point occupied by the camp.'

CHAPTER XXIV. — 1. *levis armaturae*: 'of light equipment' = 'light-armed,' limiting *pedites*. 2. *cum eis una*: 'along with them'; *una* = adv. *quos*: acc. subj. of *pulsos esse*, indir. disc. depen. upon *dixeram*, 'who (not *whom*) I had said (before) were routed at the first assault.' *eis* = *equites*, *quos* = *equites et pedites*. 3. *cum . . . se reciperent*: historical *cum*, (see 128, 203, 359); 'as they were retreating.' *adversis hostibus*: dat. indir. obj. of the comp. verb, *occurrebant*, see (337); 'met the enemy face to face.' 4. *aliam in partem*: 'in another direction.' 5. *fugam petebant*: 'took flight.' Observe the *descriptive* force of the *imperfects* in this chapter. Just as the Nervii entered the Roman camp from the right, the Roman cavalry and auxiliaries (*pedites levis armaturae*) who had returned by a circuitous route poured into the camp from the left side, face to face with the enemy. *ab decumana porta*: 'from the rear gate.' abl. of the point of view from which. 6. *summo*, etc.; 'and from the uppermost ridge of the hill.' The rear of the camp was higher than the front and the *calones*, stationed here, could see the legions at the left cross the stream. They started to follow, but on looking back saw the Nervii rushing into the Roman camp from the right. *victores*: in the predicate with *nostros*. *transisse* (from *transeo*): infin. of indir. disc. with *conspexerant*; the subj. is *nostros*; for mean-

ings of the *perf. infin.* in O. O., see (305), 'that our men *had crossed* the river as victors.' 7. *egressi*: depon. *perf. particip.*, see (340); mod. *calones*, 'having gone forth.' *cum respexissent et vidissent*: histor. *cum*, see (359): compare the *time* of the action in *these verbs*, with that of *reciperent*, note 3 (line 3): these clauses mod. *mandabant*, 'on looking back and seeing.' 8. *hostes . . . versari*: depen. upon *vidissent*, 'that the enemy were (*versari*).'  
*praecipites*: adj. nom. plur. mod. *calones*, but with an adverbial force, 'in haste.' 9. *eorum*: the drivers, etc., in charge of the baggage-train behind which the XIIIth and XIVth legions had been placed; it is gen. depen. upon *clamor fremitusque*, 'the din and noise of those who were coming.' 10. *criebatur*: sing., as *clamor* and *fremitus* contain one idea, 'arose.' 11. *perterriti*: p. p. p. mod. the subj. *alii*, see (316); 'and in great terror (thoroughly frightened) they fled (were borne), *some* in one direction, *some* in another.' *quibus*: see (367); mod. *rebus*, which in turn limits *permoti* (as an abl. of *means*); 'and thoroughly frightened by all *these* happenings.' 12. *permoti*: p. p. p. mod. *equites Treveri*, the subj. of *contenderunt* and *renuntiaverunt*. *virtutis opinio*: 'reputation for valor.' 14. *missi*: p. p. p. mod. *qui*, 'who had come being sent,' etc. *cum*: with *vidissent*, denoting time or cause, 'when or since they saw.' The infinitives (*indir. disc.*) depending upon *vidissent*, are: *compleri*, *premi*, *teneri*, and *fugere*; notice that these *infin.* are in the *pres. tense*, denoting action *going on* at the *time* of (*contemporaneous with*) the action of *vidissent*; see (301, 302, 392). *castra*: acc. subj. of *compleri*: 'that our camp was filling (was being filled).' 15. *legiones*: acc. subj. of *premi* and *teneri*. *circumventas*: p. p. p. mod. *legiones*, 'and that they *were being held* (*teneri*) almost surrounded.' 16. *calones*, etc.: acc. subj. of *fugere*, 'that the slaves, etc., were fleeing.' *diversos dissipatosque*: 'separated and scattered.' 17. *desperatis . . . rebus*: 'giving up our affairs as hopeless.' 18. *Romanos*: acc. subj. of *pulsos*, *superatos(esse)*, *indir. disc.* with *renuntiaverunt*; 'that the Romans had been defeated,' etc. 19. *castris impedimentisque*: abl. obj. of *potitos esse*, see (353). *hostes*: acc. subj. of *potitos esse*, *indir. disc.*, 'that the enemy had captured their camp,' etc.

CHAPTER XXV.—1. *ab cohortatione*: 'from the cheering of the tenth legion'; abl. of place from which, mod. *profectus*. 2. *profectus*: depon. mod. Caesar, 'having proceeded.' *ubi . . . vidit*: translate Caesar as the subj. of this clause, though in the Latin it is the subj. of *processit* (line 15)—the first principal verb: 'when Caesar saw that his men were hard pressed.' *signis . . . collatis* (from *confero*): abl.

absol. 'the standards being brought together'; better rendered as a clause of statement, 'and that the standards were brought together.'

3. *confertos milites*: acc. subj. of *esse*, with *vidit*. *sibi, ipsos*: reciprocally emphasizing, these words are kept together: *ipsos* mod. *milites*; *sibi* with *impedimento* = doub. dat., see (352), lit. 'for a hindrance to themselves'; translate, 'and (when he saw) that the crowded soldiers of . . . were in one another's way for fighting (in the fight).'

4. *cohortis*: gen. depen. upon *centurionibus*. 5. *occisis*: abl. absol. with *centurionibus*, 'after all the centurions of . . . had been cut down.'

6. *amisso*: abl. absol., '(and) after the standard was lost.' These ablatives absol. denote *time* and mod. *processit*. *ferē*: adv. mod. *omnibus* (another abl. absol.), 'after nearly all the centurions of . . . had been either killed or wounded.'

7. *in his*: 'among these.' *primipilo . . . confecto*: abl. absol. 'the chief centurion, P. Baculus, a very brave man, being disabled by many severe wounds.' The chief ambition of the centurions was to become a *primipilus*, the highest in rank of all the centurions who stood in regular gradation. He had charge of the standard and was a member of the council of war.

9. *ut non posset*: neg. result; see (321); 'so that he could no longer stand up'; the sequence of *posset* is from *confecto*, which denotes *past time*; the *imperf.* (*posset sustinere* = *sustineret*) denotes action *going on* at the time of (contemporaneous with) the action of *confecto*.

*reliquos*: adj. used as noun, see (258); acc. subj. of *esse* with *vidit*, which is repeated in line 13 because of the length of the sentence; 'that the rest were *losing spirit* (*tardiores*).'

10. *nonnullos ab novissimis*: acc. subj. of *excedere* and *vitare*, 'and that some of those in the rear were withdrawing.'

11. *vitare*: 'were avoiding'; for the meaning of the *pres. infin.* in O. O., see (301, 302). *hostis* = *hostes*, acc. subj. of *intermittere* and *instare*. *neque*: 'and . . . not.'

12. *subeuntes*: *pres. particip.* of *subeo*, acc. plur. mod. *hostis*; 'and (when he saw) that the enemy did not cease coming up along the front from.'

*instare*: 'and were pressing forward.'

13. *rem esse in angusto*: 'and that the matter had reached a crisis.' *neque subsidium*: 'and that there was no reserve force.'

14. *quod . . . posset*: characteristic rel. clause, 'that could be brought up.' *scuto . . . detracto*: abl. absol., 'jerking a shield.'

*uni militi*: dat. with a verb of *taking away*; see construction of *hostibus*, chap. 7, note 5; 'from a soldier.'

*ab novissimis*: '(among those) in the rear.'

16. *appellatis*: abl. absol., 'addressing the centurions by name.'

*cohortatus*: mod. Caesar, 'and encouraging the rest.'

17. *signa inferre*: 'to advance,' *infin.* with

iussit. By advancing they would increase the space between the ranks and obtain more room for the use of their swords. *quo . . . possent* : affirm. purpose ; *quo* = *ut eo* + comparative (*facilius*), see (384) ; 'so that they could use their swords to more advantage.' 18. *uti* : from *utor*. *cuius adventu* : see (367), 'now upon the arrival of this one. *spe illata* (from *infero*) : 'hope being inspired.' *militibus* : dat. with comp. verb, see (337) ; 'in the soldiers.' 19. *cum . . . cuperet* : causal clause, mod. *tardatus est* ; see (350) ; 'since each man on his own account . . . even (*etiam*) in the greatest peril to himself desired to do his best.' 21. *paulum* : adv., 'a little.'

CHAPTER XXVI.—1. *cum . . . vidisset* : although *Caesar* (in the Latin sent.) is the subj. of *monuit*, it is to be read as the subj. of the *cum* clause ; 'when Caesar saw that the seventh legion was likewise hard pressed.' 2. *tribunos* : dir. obj. of *monuit*, which is followed by the *ut* clause as a secondary object, 'he advised the tribunes . . . that the legions should gradually draw together.' 3. *conversa* : p. p. p. acc. plur. mod. *signa*, the acc. obj. of *inferrent* ; lit., 'the turned standards,' but best translated by a co-ordinate verb ; see (381) ; 'that they should face about and advance upon the enemy.' 4. *quo* : see (367) ; abl. absol., 'now when this was done.' *cum alius*, etc. : 'since one rendered assistance to one, another to another.' *alii* : dat., see (348). 5. *neque*, etc. : 'and since they did not fear (were not fearing).' *ne* : see (343), 'verbs of *fearing*' ; 'that (lest) they would be surrounded.' *aversi* : p. p. p. nom. plur. mod. the subj. of *circumvenirentur* ; 'in the rear' : i.e. with their backs turned towards the enemy. 8. *praesidio, impedimentis* : doub. dat., see (352) ; translate (with *fuerant*), 'which had guarded the baggage in the rear.' *proelio nuntiato* : 'on hearing a report of the battle.' *cursu incitato* : 'having quickened their pace.' 10. *Labienus* : modified by two depon. participles, *potitus* and *conspicatus*, 'and Labienus having captured . . . and having observed from his higher position.' He, with the IXth and Xth legions, had been pursuing the Atrebatas. 10. *castris* : abl. obj. of *potitus*, see (353). 11. *quaeres . . . gererentur* : indir. quest., see (313) ; sequence from *conspicatus* ; 'having observed what things were going on (lit. 'were being waged') in our camp.' 12. *qui* : i.e. the soldiers of the Xth legion. Translate *within the cum* clause, 'now when *these* had found out.' 13. *quo . . . esset* : *quo*, from interrog. *quis*, introducing an indir. quest. ; sequence from *cognovissent*, 'in what condition the affair was.' *quanto . . . versaretur* : indir. quest. (interrog. *quantus*), 'and in how great danger both the camp

... etc., *were* (*versaretur*).' 14. *versaretur*: sing. agreeing with the nearest of the *three* subjects. 15. *nihil... fecerunt*: 'they came up with the utmost possible speed.' *reliqui*: partitive gen. depen. upon *nihil*, lit. 'they made nothing of the rest as to (ad) quickness.'

CHAPTER XXVII.—1. *adventu*: abl. of cause, see (210), mod. *facta est*; 'upon (on account of) the arrival of these.' *rerum*: gen. with *commutatio*, 'change in things.' 2. *ut... redintegrarent*: affirm. result, see (321), sequence from *facta est*. *etiam qui*, etc.: 'even those who had fallen, exhausted with wounds.' *confecti*: p. p. p. mod. *qui*, see (316), and also (for *different* translation) see (381). 3. *scutis*: abl. known as the *locative ablative* (place where), mod. *innixi*. *innixi*: depon. perf. particip. mod. *nostri* (*qui*), 'leaning upon their shields.' *calones*: subj. of *occurrerunt*. 4. *perterritos*: p. p. p. mod. *hostes*, obj. of *conspicati*, which agrees with *calones*; 'then the slaves, seeing the enemy in utter confusion.' *inermes*: nom. plur. mod. *calones*, 'even though unarmed.' *armatis*: 'the armed'; p. p. p. of *armo*, mas. plur. *used as a substantive*, see (258); dat. with the compound verb *occurrerent*; see (337). 5. *equites vero*: 'and the cavalry too.' *ut... delerent*: affirm. purpose, 'so as to wipe out.' 6. *quo... praeferrent*: also affirm. purpose, *quo* = *ut eo*, rarely used without a comparative; 'so that thereby they might outdo.' *militibus*: dat. with a comp. verb, translated like an *accus.*; lit., 'place themselves before.' 7. *at*: 'but yet,' marks in an emphatic way a change in the point of view of the narrative, describing the maneuvers of the enemy. 8. *ut*: introduces *insisterent*, *pugnarent*, *conicerent*, *remitterent*, being repeated in line 12 (*ut non*) with *deberet*. *cum primi*, etc.; 'after their foremost men *had fallen*' (from *cado*). 9. *proximi*: adj. as noun, 'the next stood upon them as they lay prostrate.' *iacentibus*: pres. particip. dat. with *eis* understood after the comp. verb, *insisterent*. *ex corporibus*: i.e. from the tops of the dead bodies; *ex* = 'on.' 10. *his deiectis*: abl. absol., 'when these (*proximi*) were cut down.' 11. *qui superessent*: before this rel. clause supply *ut* going with *conicerent et remitterent*, the subj. of these verbs being the anteced. of *qui*; the *ut* clauses depend upon *praestiterunt*, in line 8; 'the enemy displayed such valor that those who survived hurled darts upon.' *ut ex tumulo*: 'as from a hill.' 12. *intercepta*: p. p. p. acc. plur. neut. mod. *pila*, but rendered by a verb co-ordinate with *remitterent*; 'picked up and threw back the pikes', or by a rel. clause, 'threw back the pikes which they picked up.' *ut non deberet*: neg. result, see (321), 'so that it ought not to be con-

sidered (iudicari).’ 13. nequiquam ausos esse : the subj. of the infin. is homines ; ‘had vainly dared.’ 15. quae : acc. plur. (mod. by facilia) obj. of redegerat ; ‘things (*bold deeds*) which their greatness of courage had made easy.’ ex : ‘from having been.’ difficillimis : for comparison, see (314).

CHAPTER XXVIII.—1. facto : ‘being finished.’ 2. gente ac nomine redacto : ‘the race and name of the Nervii being reduced almost to annihilation’ : redacto agrees with the nearer of the two nouns. maiores natu : ‘the older men,’ lit., ‘the greater by birth’ : subj. of miserunt, dediderunt, and dixerunt. quos : acc. subj. of coniectos esse, depend. upon dixeramus ; ‘who (not *whom*) I had said were hastily placed.’ 3. una cum : ‘along with.’ in : with acc., because of the idea of *motion* that prevails in coniectos. 4. hac, etc. : abl. absol., rendered, ‘upon hearing a report of this engagement.’ cum . . . arbitrarentur : causal clause, mod. miserunt, etc., see (350). arbitrarentur (a verb of *thinking*) governs two infin. propositions, nihil impeditum esse, and nihil tutum esse ; ‘that nothing was an obstacle to the victors and nothing secure for the conquered.’ 5. victis : p. p. p. used as a noun, lit., ‘for those having been conquered.’ omnium : depen. upon consensu ; ‘with the consent of . . . the older men (from line 2) sent ambassadors.’ 7. ei : dat. indir. obj., ‘to him.’ in commemoranda calamitate : gerundive, see (253). 8. ex sexcentis, ex hominum milibus LX : adverbial phrases limiting redactos esse : so with the two ad phrases. 9. vix : adv. restricting ad quingentos, ‘to barely 500.’ qui . . . posset : characteristic rel. clause and would take a subjunc. verb in the *direct*. sese redactos esse : for the *time relation* of this infin. with respect to the verb dixerunt, see (305) ; ‘they said that they *had been* reduced.’ 10. quos : obj. of conservavit, see (367) ; ‘*now* Caesar spared *these*.’ ut . . . videretur : ‘that he might appear to have shown (usus esse) mercy.’ usus (esse) : since the subj. of usus esse is the same as that of videretur, a *passive form*, the participial part of the *infin.* is retained in the *nom. case* (personal construction) : here usus (nom. sing.) agrees with the subj. of videretur. in : ‘toward.’ 12. finibus, oppidis : abl. obj. of uti (from utor). 13. finitimis : dat. obj. of imperavit, see (145). What is the relation of the *time* expressed by prohiberent to that of imperavit ? At the time he issued the command, were they not to execute it at some subsequent (fut.) time ?

CHAPTER XXIX.—3. domum : acc. of limit of motion without ad, see (386). 4. desertis : ‘after abandoning.’ sua : adj. (neut. plur.)

as a noun mod. by *omnia*, obj. of *contulerunt* : for its reflex. force, see (189, 214); 'all their possessions.' *egregie munitum* : p. p. p. mod. *oppidum*, 'remarkably fortified.' Perhaps this *oppidum* (name not given) was placed upon the plateau in an angle formed by the confluence of the Chambré and Meuse, about 35 miles northeast of the battlefield. 5. *quod . . . haberet* : 'now although *this* town had'; again the *relative* at the beginning of a paragraph, see (350, 367). *ex . . . partibus* : in brief, 'all round.' 7. *una ex parte* : 'on one side.' *leniter acclivis* : 'a gently sloping.' 8. *amplius* : acc. of ext. in space, used adverbially. *pedum* : the gen. (with numerals) is used to define measures of *length*, *width*, etc. 9. *duplici altissimo muro* : abl. of means, mod. *muni(v)erant*, 'with a very high double wall': meaning either two parallel walls, or a wall of double the usual thickness. *tum* : 'then,' i.e. at this particular time. *magni ponderis* : 'of great weight.' 10. *collocabant* : force of the imperfect? *ipsi* : emphatic or intensive pron. 11. *ex Cimbris* : abl. of source. *erant prognati* : 'were descended.' *qui* : subj. of *reliquerunt*. 12. *eis impedimentis* : abl. absol. with *depositis*; 'having placed those incumbrances, which they could not take along': cattle as well as baggage. 14. *custodiam, praesidium* : in apposition with *milia*, 'left six thousand men as a guard and garrison.' *ex suis* : 'of their own.' 15. *una* : 'together with these'; i.e. with the *impedimentis*. *hi* : 'the latter,' i.e. the six thousand. 16. *exagitati* : 'being harassed.' *cum alias inferrent* : 'when at one time they were waging war.' 17. *alias*, etc. : supply *bellum sibi* with *illatum*, 'at another time they warded off (the war) *waged* (upon them).' 18. *pace facta* : abl. absol., mod. *delegerunt*. *delegerunt* : note the force of the perfect—time indefinitely past.

CHAPTER XXX.—*adventu* : abl. of time, 'and upon the first arrival of our army.' 2. *faciebant* : 'they kept making'; see (102). 3. *postea* : 'afterwards.' *vallo, castellis* : abl. of means, mod. *circummuniti*. 4. *circummuniti* : p. p. p. mod. the subj. of *continebant*; 'being protected by a rampart 15 miles around and by numerous strongholds.' *oppido* : supply in. 5. *vineis actis* : 'after the vineae were brought up.' *aggere exstructo* : '(and) after the agger had been made': *agger* = a long sloping mound of earth leading up to the height of the walls. *turrim . . . constitui* : indir. disc. with *viderunt*; notice the *time* indicated by the tense of *constitui*, 'that a tower *was being* constructed,' see (301, 302). 6. *irridere, increpitare* : *historical infinitives*; the infin. is often used for the *impf. indic.*

(descriptive impf.) and takes a subj. in the *nom.*; 'they at first began to laugh at us . . . and to taunt' (*increpitare vocibus*). 7. *quod . . . instrueretur*: subjunc. because the reason is given upon the authority of some one other than Caesar; see (276); 'because (as they stated) such an engine of war *was being erected*.' Notice the time of the action of *instrueretur*, as it relates to the time of the action in *irridere*; *irridere* = impf. indic. (a past tense), hence the subjunc. must be either impf. or plupf.; here impf. to denote *action* going on at the time of the action of *irridere* (contemporaneous action). *ab tanto spatio*: *ab* = adv., 'away.' *spatio* = abl. of degree of difference, 'at such a distance.' 8. *quibusnam manibus confiderent*: a question in the indirect disc., with the verb in the subjunc., 'by what hands, pray, or with what strength did they hope'? *viribus*: from *vis*. 9. *praesertim homines*: 'especially being men of such small stature,' spoken contemptuously. The Gauls expected the Romans to lift the tower and place it upon the wall—which seemed amusing. This indicates their utter lack of civilization. 10. *Gallis, contemptui*: doub. dat., see (352), 'for our shortness (of stature) is an object of ridicule with the Gauls.' 11. *tanti oneris*: 'of such weight.' *moturos (esse) sese*: indir. disc. with *confiderent*; for *time* indicated by *moturos esse*, see (318)—3 and 4; 'did they hope that they *would* move'? i.e. did they expect to move?

CHAPTER XXXI.—1. *ubi vero*: 'when indeed.' *moveri et appropinquare*: subj. *turrim* understood, 'was moving and approaching.' *moenibus*: dat. with a comp. verb. 2. *specie*: abl. of cause, mod. *commoti* (p. p. p.), which in turn mod. the subj. of *miserunt*; 'being greatly alarmed by the new and unusual sight.' 3. *locuti*: depon. perf. particip. mod. *qui*, the subj. of *dixerunt* (line 7); 'speaking after (ad) this fashion, said.' For use (mood and tense) of infin. and subjunc.—princip. and subord. clauses—in O. O., see (301, 302, 305, 306, 318, 392). 4. *existimare*: princip. verb depen. upon *dixerunt*; subj. *se* understood; 'that they did not believe (were not believing).' *Romanos . . . gerere*: is indir. disc. with *existimare*, like a wheel within a wheel; 'that the Romans waged (were waging)'; note the force of the pres. infin. in O. O., see (302)—example 3. 5. *qui . . . possent*: a rel. clause denoting cause, *qui* = *cum ei* (see 350), which would take a subjunc. verb in the *direct*; 'since they could move forward.' 7. *permittere*: 'that they surrendered themselves,' etc. *unum*: 'one thing only,' acc. sing. neut. obj. of *petere*; notice the emphatic

position of *unum*, which is explained by the *ne . . . despoliaret* clause; indir. disc. to the end of the chapt. *petere*, etc.: subj. is *se* understood, 'that they asked (were asking) and begged for one thing.' *si*: in this condition *si statuisset* is the protasis, *ne . . . despoliaret* the apodosis: in the *direct disc.* they were, *si statueris* (fut. perf. indic.) see (223), and *noli despoliare* (for *ne despolia*—imperative). For 'commands and exhortations,' see (389, 390). In changing this sent. to indir. disc., the princip. verb (*noli despoliare*) becomes *subjunc.* (neg. *ne*), *pres.* after *dicunt*, *imperf.* after *dixerunt* (as in this instance); the subord. verb, representing time *completed* (in the future), becomes *perf. subjunc.* after *dicunt*, *pluperf.* after *dixerunt* (as in this instance): observe that the person changes from the *second* to the *third*; 'if perchance Caesar resolved . . ., (they begged) that he would not (*ne*) deprive them of their arms.' 8. *pro sua*, etc.: 'in accordance with his usual.' *quam . . . audirent*: subord. clause in O. O., hence *subjunc.*; though depending upon the *si statuisset* clause, it obtains its sequence from *dixerunt*, the main verb of saying. Observe the *time* indicated by *audirent*, 'which they themselves *were* (constantly) *hearing of* through others.' 9. *conservandos esse*: periphras. pass. infin., indir. disc. with *statuisset*; 'that the Aduatuci ought to be spared.' How is the periphras. act. formed? how the pass.? how express the *person. agent* with this pass.? 10. *sibi*: dat. with *inimicos*, see (126), 'were hostile to them.' 11. *virtuti*: dat. indir. obj. of *invidere*, see (348), 'were jealous of their valor.' 12. *traditis armis*: abl. absol., translated by a conditional, 'if their arms were given up.' *sibi praestare*: indir. disc. with *dixerunt*; impersonal verb having the infin. clause, *quamvis fortunam . . . pati*, as the *subj.*; 'that it would be better for them . . . to suffer (*pati*),' etc. *si . . . deducerentur*: move viv. fut. in the direct; was this *fut.* or *fut. pf.* indic. in the direct? see (223). Does the imperf. subjunc. (O. O.) denote *finished* time, such as would be indicated by the fut. pf. indic. (O. R.)? Find answers to these questions in (396). 14. *quam interfici*: 'than to be put to death.' *consue(vi)ssent*: subord. clause in O. O., plupf. denoting completed time, 'had been in the habit of.'

CHAPTER XXXII.—1. *respondit*: perf., not *pres.* *se*: indir. disc. through *inferrent*. 2. *consuetudine, merito*: 'rather in accordance with his usual habit (of merciful treatment of a foe) than on account of any act of theirs'; the former = abl. of manner, the latter = abl. of cause; both mod. *conservaturum esse. conservaturum esse*: 'that

he would spare': this is the *apodosis verb* of a more viv. fut. condition in indir. disc., the *protasis verb* being *dedidissent*. In the *direct* they are written, *ego conservabo, si dedideritis* (fut. perf. indic.): notice that there is a change of *mood, tense, and person* when turning direct into indir. disc., the principal verbs of *declarative statement* clauses becoming *infin.*, and all subord. verbs *subjunc.* In changing *conservabo* to the *infin.*, the *tense* remains the same (whether it follows *replies* or *replied*); but in changing *dedideritis* to the *subjunc.*, the *tense* must be changed (as there is no *fut. perf. subjunc.*); the representatives of *finished time* in the *subjunc.* (*dedideritis* = time *finished* in the fut. before another fut. action) are the *perf.* after *replies*, the *pluperf.* after *replied*; see rule of seq. (135), and condit. in indir. disc., (396); and specimens of indir. disc., (400, 401). 3. *prius quam*: introducing *attigisset*, subord. verb in O. O., 'before the battering ram touched (reached)': *attigisset* = *attigerit* (fut. perf. indic.) in the *direct*; why not *imperf. subjunc.*? 4. *nullam condicionem*: acc. subj. of *esse*, 'that there were (would be) no terms.' *nisi armis traditis*: idiom, translated, 'unless their arms were handed over.' Offers of submission must be made before the battering ram (*aries*) reached the wall, since a besieged place was looked upon as already captured when this stage of the siege was reached. 5. *id facturum esse*: *id*, obj. of *facturum*, and anteced. of *quod*, 'that he would do that thing.' *quod . . . fecisset*: subord. verb in O. O., 'which he did (had done).' *fecisset* = what, in the *direct*? 6. *ne . . . inferrent*: could *non* be used? see (228, 389, 390); 'that he would command them not to do any (*quam*) harm.' Although *ne . . . inferrent* depends upon *imperaturum (esse)*, which is *fut.*, yet the *sequence of tense* is determined by *respondit* (*past tense*); see (397). 7. *ad suos*: 'to their own people.' *quae*: anteced. is (*ea*), obj. of *facere*; *quae* = subj. of *imperarentur*. *facere*: *infin.* in indir. disc., subj. is (*se*); we should expect *facturos esse*, but the pres. tense is here used as an immediate future; 'they said that they would do those things which were being ordered.' 8. *magna multitudine . . . iacta*: abl. absol. of *time mod. usi sunt*, 'after they had thrown a large number.' 9. *sic ut*: 'so that.' *summam*: noun, dir. obj. of *adaequarent* (*subjunc.* of affirm. result). 10. *acervi*: subj. of *adaequarent*, 'the heaps of arms were almost as high as the top of the wall and the agger.' The deep space (*fossa*) between the wall and the end of the mound (*agger*) which gradually rose to a height equal to that of the wall of the town was almost filled with the arms.

11. *et tamen tertia . . . celata, retenta*: 'and yet about a third part being concealed and kept.' 12. *portis patefactis*: abl. absol. mod. *usi sunt*; 'after throwing the gates wide open they enjoyed peace.' 13. *pacē*: why abl.? see (353).

CHAPTER XXXIII.—1. *sub*: 'towards.' 2. *ne . . . acciperent*: neg. purpose; would non do? see (211, 320); 'lest they should receive.' *quam*: indefinite pron. after *si, nisi, ne, num*; 'any violence.' *ab*: 'at the hands of.' 3. *illi*: subj. of *fecerunt*, line 11. *inito*: p. p. p. of *ineo*, forming abl. absol. with *consilio*, the phrase modifying *fecerunt*; 'according to a plan formerly arranged.' *ut*, etc.: parenthetical and impersonal, 'as it was learned (later on).' 4. *quod . . . crediderant*: mod. *fecerunt*, 'because they had supposed.' *deducturos esse*: indir. disc. with *crediderant*. 6. *partim cum*: 'partly with those arms . . . partly with shields,' adverbial phrases mod. *fecerunt*. 7. *ex . . . factis*, etc.: *factis* limits *scutis*, 'made out of bark or twigs woven together.' *quae*: anteced. is *scutis*; it is the dir. obj. of *induxerant*. 8. *ut*: 'as.' 9. *tertia vigilia*: abl. of time mod. *fecerunt*. *qua*: adv., 'where.' This passage indicates that the Roman lines were on high ground. *minime*: adv. mod. *arduus*, 'least difficult.' 10. *ascensus*: subj. of *videbatur*, 'the approach to (ad) . . . seemed.' 11. *ut*, etc.: 'as Caesar had previously commanded'; *imperarat = imperaverat*. 12. *ignibus*: abl. of means mod. *facta*, which in turn limits *significatione* in the abl. sing. fem.; 'after fire-signals had been made.' 13. *eo concursum est*: impers., see (365). *pugnatum . . . est*: 'and the enemy fought,' what literally? *ita acriter ut*: 'just as bravely as.' 14. *ut*: goes with *pugnari debuit*, 'as it ought to have been fought.' For meaning of *pugnari* (pres. infin.), see (385), how ought and must are expressed, *past action*, example *a*. Translate freely 'as brave men ought to have fought.' *a viris*: pers. agent, see (240). 15. *qui . . . iacerent*: characteristic rel. clause which takes a *subjunc.* verb: 'who were casting.' 16. *cum . . . consisteret*: causal *cum*, see (350), 'since all hope depended (was depending)'; the clause mod. *pugnari debuit*. *in una virtute*: 'upon valor alone.' 17. *ad*: adv. mod. *quattuor*, 'after about four thousand.' 18. *cum . . . defenderent*: causal clause mod. *refractis*, 'at a time when no one any longer (iam) defended them.' 20. *sectionem . . . universam*: i.e. the whole people with all their possessions. According to ancient ideas this procedure of selling into slavery the captured foe as a punishment for treachery was perfectly justifiable. *ab eis*: regular pers. agent, see (240), mod. *relatus est*; 'the number of souls

reported to him by those who.' 21. *miliū*, etc.: pred. gen. of characteristic.

CHAPTER XXXIV.—1. *eodem tempore*: as the subjugation of the several tribes mentioned in this chapter was accomplished by the VIIth legion, which had been detached from the Roman army just after the battle of the Sambre, it would seem that the siege described in the few preceding chapters must have lasted a month or more. a *Crasso*: pers. agent mod. *certior factus est*. 2. *ad*: 'against.' 4. *certior factus est*: as a verb of hearing it takes the acc. + infin., *civitates . . . redactas esse*.

CHAPTER XXXV.—1. *tanta opinio . . . perlata est*: 'such a report of this war was spread.' Notice the emphasis given to the verb by the prefix *per*; the report went from tribe to tribe until it reached all of them. 2. *uti . . . mitterentur*: affirm. result, 'that ambassadors were sent.' 3. *incolerent*: subjunc. by attraction, see (276). Why is *quae* fem. plur.? 4. *qui . . . pollicerentur*: rel. clause of purpose, see (311). What is the *time* of the action of *pollicerentur* with respect to that of *mitterentur*, *present* (going on) at the *time of sending*, or *future* (subsequent to it)? *daturas (esse)*: why not *daturas*? To what does *se* refer? What is the gender of *nationibus*? 5. *quas Caesar iussit*: 'and Caesar ordered these.' *legationes* = *legatos*. in *Italian*: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul. Caesar's province extended to the Rubicon. 6. *Illyricum*: east of the Adriatic, also a part of Caesar's 'province,' where he usually spent the winter season. *inita*: from *ineo*, p. p. p. abl. absol. with *aestate*, 'at the beginning of the following summer,' 'early next summer.' 7. in *Carnutes*, etc.: adverbial phrases mod. *deductis*, which forms an abl. absol. with *legionibus*; 'after he had brought his legions into their winter-quarters among (in).' *quaeque civitates*: translate as if, *et civitates quae*, 'and among those states which were.' 8. *ubi*: 'where.' 10. *ob easque*: note the position of *que*. *ex litteris*: 'in accordance with letters from Caesar.' 11. *supplicatio*: a public thanksgiving, decreed by the Senate in honor of a victory, at first lasting only one day, then usually three or four. Caesar was granted a *supplicatio* which lasted for fifteen days, the longest time that had ever been granted. *quod*: = *id quod*, 'an honor (a thing) which.' 12. *nulli*: notice the emphatic position.

## 448. First-conjugation verbs.

For the principal parts of verbs marked \*, see vocabulary at end of the book; those unmarked are regular, like **portō**, **amō**, etc.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <b>accommodō</b> , <i>adjust</i>                  | 34. <b>dubitō</b> , <i>hesitate, doubt</i>  |
| 2. <b>adaequō</b> , <i>equal</i>                     | 35. <b>exagitō</b> , <i>harass</i>  |
| 3. <b>adiuvō</b> ,* <i>aïd</i>                       | 36. <b>exanimō</b> , <i>make breathless</i>   |
| 4. <b>administrō</b> , <i>execute</i>                | 37. <b>exercitō</b> , <i>train</i>  |
| 5. <b>appropinquō</b> , <i>draw near to</i>          | 38. <b>exīstimō</b> , <i>think</i>  |
| 6. <b>aedificō</b> , <i>build</i>                    | 39. <b>explōrō</b> , <i>find out</i>  |
| 7. <b>amplificō</b> , <i>increase</i>                | 40. <b>expūgnō</b> , <i>storm</i>   |
| 8. <b>appellō</b> , <i>call</i>                      | 41. <b>exspectō</b> , <i>await</i>  |
| 9. <b>arbitror</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>think</i>       | 42. <b>fugō</b> , <i>rout</i>   |
| 10. <b>armō</b> , <i>arm</i>                         | 43. <b>hiemō</b> , <i>winter</i>  |
| 11. <b>cēlō</b> , <i>conceal</i>                     | 44. <b>imperō</b> , <i>command</i>  |
| 12. <b>circumdō</b> ,* <i>surround</i>               | 45. <b>impetrō</b> , <i>obtain</i>  |
| 13. <b>coacervō</b> , <i>pile up</i>                 | 46. <b>incitō</b> , <i>quicken, excite</i>  |
| 14. <b>cohortor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>encourage</i>  | 47. <b>increpitō</b> , <i>taunt</i>   |
| 15. <b>commemorō</b> , <i>relate</i>                 | 48. <b>incūsō</b> , <i>blame</i>  |
| 16. <b>comparō</b> , <i>prepare</i>                  | 49. <b>īnstō</b> ,* <i>press forward</i>  |
| 17. <b>cōnfirmō</b> , <i>establish</i>               | 50. <b>intrō</b> , <i>enter</i>   |
| 18. <b>coniūrō</b> , <i>conspire</i>                 | 51. <b>iūdicō</b> , <i>suppose</i>  |
| 19. <b>conlocō</b> , <i>place</i>                    | 52. <b>iuvō</b> ,* <i>aïd</i>   |
| 20. <b>cōnor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>attempt</i>       | 53. <b>laxō</b> , <i>spread out</i>   |
| 21. <b>cōnservō</b> , <i>spare</i>                   | 54. <b>mandō</b> , <i>direct, instruct</i>  |
| 22. <b>convocō</b> , <i>summon</i>                   | 55. <b>mātūrō</b> , <i>hasten</i>   |
| 23. <b>cōnspicor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>see</i>       | 56. <b>moror</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>delay</i>  |
| 24. <b>dēcertō</b> , <i>contend</i>                  | 57. <b>nāvō</b> , <i>do with zeal</i> [ <b>operam</b><br><b>nāvāre</b> , <i>do one's best</i> ] |
| 25. <b>dēmōnstrō</b> , <i>explain</i>                | 58. <b>nōminō</b> , <i>name</i>   |
| 26. <b>dēpopulor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>lay waste</i> | 59. <b>nūdō</b> , <i>strip</i>  |
| 27. <b>dēprecor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>pray (for)</i> | 60. <b>nūntiō</b> , <i>announce</i>   |
| 28. <b>dēspērō</b> , <i>despair (of)</i>             | 61. <b>occupō</b> , <i>seize</i>  |
| 29. <b>dēspoliō</b> , <i>deprive (of)</i>            | 62. <b>oppūgnō</b> , <i>attack</i>  |
| 30. <b>dīmicō</b> , <i>fight</i>                     | 63. <b>pācō</b> , <i>subdue</i>   |
| 31. <b>dissipō</b> , <i>scatter</i>                  | 64. <b>perīclitor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>test, try</i> [ <b>order</b> ]                          |
| 32. <b>dō</b> ,* <i>give</i>                         | 65. <b>perturbō</b> , <i>throw into dis-</i>  |
| 33. <b>dominor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>rule</i>        |   |

<sup>1</sup> deponent verb; see (325) and vocabulary at end of the book.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 66. <b>populor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>plunder</i> | 80. <b>revocō</b> , <i>call back</i>               |
| 67. <b>portō</b> , <i>carry</i>                  | 81. <b>servō</b> , <i>watch</i>                    |
| 68. <b>postulō</b> , <i>demand</i>               | 82. <b>sīgnificō</b> , <i>show</i>                 |
| 69. <b>praedor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>plunder</i> | 83. <b>sollicitō</b> , <i>incite</i>               |
| 70. <b>praestō</b> ,* <i>excel</i>               | 84. <b>superō</b> , <i>overcome</i>                |
| 71. <b>proelior</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>fight</i>  | 85. <b>sustentō</b> , <i>hold out</i>              |
| 72. <b>prōflīgō</b> , <i>defeat</i>              | 86. <b>tardō</b> , <i>check</i>                    |
| 73. <b>properō</b> , <i>hasten</i>               | 87. <b>vāstō</b> , <i>lay waste</i>                |
| 74. <b>prōpūgnō</b> , <i>fight</i>               | 88. <b>versor</b> , <sup>1</sup> <i>remain, be</i> |
| 75. <b>prōturbō</b> , <i>repulse</i>             | 89. <b>vetō</b> ,* <i>forbid</i>                   |
| 76. <b>prōvolō</b> , <i>rush forth</i>           | 90. <b>vexō</b> , <i>harass</i>                    |
| 77. <b>pūgnō</b> , <i>fight</i>                  | 91. <b>vītō</b> , <i>avoid</i>                     |
| 78. <b>redintegrō</b> , <i>renew</i>             | 92. <b>vulnerō</b> , <i>wound</i>                  |
| 79. <b>renūntiō</b> , <i>announce</i>            |  |

#### 449. Second-conjugation verbs.

For the principal parts, see the vocabulary at end of the book.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. <b>audeō</b> , <i>dare</i>                        | 22. <b>persuādeō</b> , <i>persuade</i>                  |
| 2. <b>commoveō</b> , <i>alarm</i>                    | 23. <b>perterreō</b> , <i>frighten</i>                  |
| 3. <b>compleō</b> , <i>fill</i>                      | 24. <b>pertineō</b> , <i>reach</i>                      |
| 4. <b>contineō</b> , <i>keep, hold in</i>            | 25. <b>polliceor</b> , <i>promise</i>                   |
| 5. <b>dēbeō</b> , <i>ought, owe</i>                  | 26. <b>possideō</b> , <i>possess, occupy</i>            |
| 6. <b>dēleō</b> , <i>destroy</i>                     | 27. <b>praebeō</b> , <i>furnish, display</i>            |
| 7. <b>dēterreō</b> , <i>prevent</i>                  | 28. <b>prohibeō</b> , <i>prevent, cut off</i>           |
| 8. <b>distineō</b> , <i>separate, keep<br/>apart</i> | 29. <b>prōmoveō</b> , <i>move forward</i>               |
| 9. <b>doceō</b> , <i>explain</i>                     | 30. <b>prōvideō</b> , <i>provide</i>                    |
| 10. <b>habeō</b> , <i>have</i>                       | 31. <b>respondeō</b> , <i>reply</i>                     |
| 11. <b>iaceō</b> , <i>lie prostrate</i>              | 32. <b>retineō</b> , <i>restrain</i>                    |
| 12. <b>invideō</b> , <i>envy</i>                     | 33. <b>studeō</b> , <i>desire</i>                       |
| 13. <b>irrideō</b> , <i>mock</i>                     | 34. <b>supersedeō</b> , <i>refrain from</i>             |
| 14. <b>iubeō</b> , <i>order</i>                      | 35. <b>sustineō</b> , <i>withstand</i>                  |
| 15. <b>lateō</b> , <i>lie hid</i>                    | 36. <b>teneō</b> , <i>hold</i>                          |
| 16. <b>moneō</b> , <i>direct, advise</i>             | 37. <b>timeō</b> , <i>fear</i>                          |
| 17. <b>moveō</b> , <i>move</i>                       | 38. <b>urgeō</b> , <i>press hard</i>                    |
| 18. <b>obtimeō</b> , <i>hold, maintain</i>           | 39. <b>valeō</b> , <i>have influence, be<br/>strong</i> |
| 19. <b>oportet</b> , <i>ought, it behooves</i>       | 40. <b>vereor</b> , <i>fear</i>                         |
| 20. <b>pateō</b> , <i>extend</i>                     | 41. <b>videō</b> , <i>see</i>                           |
| 21. <b>permoveō</b> , <i>excite</i>                  | 42. <b>videor</b> , <i>seem</i>                         |

### 450. Third-conjugation verbs.

For the principal parts, see the vocabulary at end of the book.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>abdō, hide</i>                          | 35. <i>cōnspiciō, see</i>               |
| 2. <i>accēdō, approach</i>                    | 36. <i>cōstituō, determine, arrange</i> |
| 3. <i>accidō, happen</i>                      | 37. <i>cōnsuēscō, be accustomed</i>     |
| 4. <i>accipiō, receive</i>                    | 38. <i>contendō, hasten, struggle</i>   |
| 5. <i>addūcō, bring, influence</i>            | 39. <i>convertō, turn</i>               |
| 6. <i>adiciō, hurl</i>                        | 40. <i>crēdō, believe</i>               |
| 7. <i>aggredior, attack</i>                   | 41. <i>cupiō, desire</i>                |
| 8. <i>agō, do</i>                             | 42. <i>dēcernō, decree</i>              |
| 9. <i>āmittō, lose, let pass</i>              | 43. <i>dēcurrō, run down</i>            |
| 10. <i>arcessō, summon</i>                    | 44. <i>dēdō, surrender</i>              |
| 11. <i>ascendō, climb</i>                     | 45. <i>dēdūcō, lead away</i>            |
| 12. <i>attingō, border upon</i>               | 46. <i>dēfendō, defend</i>              |
| 13. <i>āvertō, turn back or away</i>          | 47. <i>dēficiō, revolt</i>              |
| 14. <i>cadō, fall, be killed</i>              | 48. <i>dēiciō, hurl down</i>            |
| 15. <i>cēdō, retreat</i>                      | 49. <i>dēligō, choose</i>               |
| 16. <i>circumiciō, place around</i>           | 50. <i>dēpōnō, set down</i>             |
| 17. <i>claudō, close</i>                      | 51. <i>dēserō, desert</i>               |
| 18. <i>cōgnōscō, find out</i>                 | 52. <i>dēsistō, cease</i>               |
| 19. <i>cōgō, collect, assemble</i>            | 53. <i>dētrahō, jerk, snatch (away)</i> |
| 20. <i>committō, begin</i>                    | 54. <i>dētrūdō, remove, strip off</i>   |
| 21. <i>compellō, drive</i>                    | 55. <i>dīcō, say</i>                    |
| 22. <i>concīdō, cut to pieces</i>             | 56. <i>dīmittō, dismiss</i>             |
| 23. <i>concurrō, hurry, rush</i>              | 57. <i>dīripiō, plunder</i>             |
| 24. <i>condūcō, hire, collect</i>             | 58. <i>discēdō, depart</i>              |
| 25. <i>cōnficiō, exhaust, furnish, finish</i> | 59. <i>dūcō, lead</i>                   |
| 26. <i>cōnfidō, trust, rely on</i>            | 60. <i>ēdūcō, lead out</i>              |
| 27. <i>cōnfligō, fight</i>                    | 61. <i>efficiō, bring about, cause</i>  |
| 28. <i>congregior, fight</i>                  | 62. <i>ēgredior, depart</i>             |
| 29. <i>cōniciō, place, hurl, drive</i>        | 63. <i>ēligō, choose</i>                |
| 30. <i>coniungō, join</i>                     | 64. <i>ēmittō, hurl</i>                 |
| 31. <i>cōnscrībō, enroll</i>                  | 65. <i>emō, buy</i>                     |
| 32. <i>cōnsequor, pursue</i>                  | 66. <i>ēnāscor, grow out</i>            |
| 33. <i>eōnsīdō, settle, encamp</i>            | 67. <i>excēdō, go away</i>              |
| 34. <i>cōnsistō, make a stand, rally</i>      | 68. <i>expellō, drive out</i>           |

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 69. <i>exstruō, construct</i>        | 107. <i>patefaciō, open wide</i>                                  |
| 70. <i>faciō, make</i>               | 108. <i>patior, allow</i>   |
| 71. <i>fallō, disappoint</i>         | 109. <i>pellō, defeat, drive</i>                                  |
| 72. <i>fugiō, flee</i>               | 110. <i>permittō, give up, entrust</i>                            |
| 73. <i>gerō, carry on</i>            | 111. <i>perspiciō, find out</i>                                   |
| 74. <i>iaciō, hurl, construct</i>    | 112. <i>petō, ask for, seek</i>                                   |
| 75. <i>impellō, urge on</i>          | 113. <i>pōnō, place</i>   |
| 76. <i>incendō, burn</i>             | 114. <i>poscō, demand</i>   |
| 77. <i>incidō, happen</i>            | 115. <i>præficiō, place in com-<br/>mand of</i>                   |
| 78. <i>incidō, cut into, notch</i>   | 116. <i>praemittō, send forward</i>                               |
| 79. <i>incipiō, begin</i>            | 117. <i>praescribō, give directions</i>                           |
| 80. <i>incolō, inhabit, live</i>     | 118. <i>premō, press hard</i>                                     |
| 81. <i>inducō, cover, draw on</i>    | 119. <i>prōcēdō, advance</i>                                      |
| 82. <i>induō, put on</i>             | 120. <i>prōcumbō, fall</i>  |
| 83. <i>īnfectō, bend</i>             | 121. <i>proficīscor, set out, go</i>                              |
| 84. <i>ingredior, enter</i>          | 122. <i>profugiō, flee</i>  |
| 85. <i>innītor, lean upon</i>        | 123. <i>prōgredior, advance</i>                                   |
| 86. <i>īnsequor, pursue</i>          | 124. <i>prōiciō, give up, abandon</i>                             |
| 87. <i>īnsistō, stand upon</i>       | 125. <i>prōpōnō, display</i>                                      |
| 88. <i>īnstruō, draw up, erect</i>   | 126. <i>prōsequor, pursue</i>                                     |
| 89. <i>intellegō, know [tween</i>    | 127. <i>quaerō, inquire</i>                                       |
| 90. <i>intercēdō, be or move be-</i> | 128. <i>recipiō, receive</i>                                      |
| 91. <i>intercipiō, pick up</i>       | 129. <i>reddō, give back, render</i>                              |
| 92. <i>interficiō, kill</i>          | 130. <i>redigō, reduce</i>  |
| 93. <i>intericiō, place between</i>  | 131. <i>reducō, lead back</i>                                     |
| 94. <i>intermittō, cease</i>         | 132. <i>refringō, break down</i>                                  |
| 95. <i>interscindō, cut down</i>     | 133. <i>rēiciō, throw or drive back</i>                           |
| 96. <i>intexō, weave in</i>          | 134. <i>relanguēscō, be weakened</i>                              |
| 97. <i>intrōducō, bring in</i>       | 135. <i>relinquō, leave</i>                                       |
| 98. <i>intrōmittō, let in</i>        | 136. <i>remittō, hurl back, relax</i>                             |
| 99. <i>inveterāscō, grow old</i>     | 137. <i>repellō, drive back</i>                                   |
| 100. <i>loquor, speak</i>            | 138. <i>resistō, resist</i>                                       |
| 101. <i>mittō, send</i>              | 139. <i>respiciō, look back [back</i>                             |
| 102. <i>nāscor, rise, spring up</i>  | 140. <i>revertō, revertor, turn</i>                               |
| 103. <i>obducō, dig, construct</i>   | Generally deponent in present<br>system, active in perfect system |
| 104. <i>occidō, slay</i>             | 142. <i>scribō, write</i>   |
| 105. <i>occurrō, meet</i>            | 143. <i>sequor, follow</i>  |
| 106. <i>omittō, overlook</i>         |   |

- |                                     |                                  |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 144. statuō, <i>determine</i>       | 151. trādō, <i>hand over</i>     |
| 145. submitto, <i>send</i>          | 152. trādūcō, <i>lead across</i> |
| 146. subruō, <i>undermine</i>       | 153. trānsgridior, <i>cross</i>  |
| 147. subsequor, <i>follow after</i> | 154. ūtor, <i>use, employ</i>    |
| 148. succēdō, <i>approach</i>       | 155. vēndō, <i>sell</i>          |
| 149. sūmō, <i>claim, assume</i>     | 156. vergō, <i>incline</i>       |
| 150. tendō, <i>stretch out</i>      | 157. vincō, <i>conquer</i>       |

#### 451. Fourth-conjugation verbs.

For the principal parts, see the vocabulary at end of the book.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. adōrior, <i>attack</i>                         | 10. experior, <i>try, risk</i>         |
| 2. audiō, <i>hear</i>                             | 11. impediō, <i>hinder</i>             |
| 3. circummūniō, <i>fortify</i><br><i>strongly</i> | 12. inveniō, <i>come upon</i>          |
| 4. circumveniō, <i>surround</i>                   | 13. mūniō, <i>fortify</i>              |
| 5. cōsentiō, <i>conspire</i>                      | 14. obveniō, <i>meet</i>               |
| 6. conveniō, <i>assemble</i>                      | 15. orior, <i>descend, spring from</i> |
| 7. dēveniō, <i>come</i>                           | 16. perveniō, <i>arrive at</i>         |
| 8. dīmētiōr, <i>measure off</i>                   | 17. potior, <i>capture</i>             |
| 9. exaudiō, <i>hear distinctly</i>                | 18. reperiō, <i>find out</i>           |
|   | 19. veniō, <i>come</i>                 |

#### 452. Irregular verbs.

For the principal parts, see the vocabulary at end of the book.

- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. absum, <i>be distant</i>          | 14. intersum, <i>impers., it con-</i>          |
| 2. adeō, <i>approach</i>             | 15. nōlō, <i>be unwilling</i> [ <i>cerns</i> ] |
| 3. afferō, <i>bring to</i>           | 16. offerō, <i>carry, bring</i>                |
| 4. coepī, <i>begin</i>               | 17. perferō, <i>endure</i>                     |
| 5. cōferō, <i>collect</i>            | 18. possum, <i>be able, can</i>                |
| 6. dēferō, <i>report</i>             | 19. praeferō, <i>prefer</i>                    |
| 7. dēsum, <i>be lacking, wanting</i> | 20. praesum, <i>be in command of</i>           |
| 8. eō, <i>go</i>                     | 21. redeō, <i>go back, descend,</i>            |
| 9. exeō, <i>go out</i>               | 22. referō, <i>report</i> [ <i>slope</i> ]     |
| 10. ferō, <i>bear</i>                | 23. subeō, <i>approach</i>                     |
| 11. fiō, <i>be made, happen</i>      | 24. sum, <i>be</i>                             |
| 12. ineō, <i>enter upon</i>          | 25. supersum, <i>survive</i>                   |
| 13. īferō, <i>wage, bring upon</i>   | 26. trānseō, <i>cross</i>                      |

## PARADIGMS OF DECLENSIONS.

453. First declension.—Most nouns are *feminine*. The stem ends in *a*.

*Silva, forest.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>silva</i>	<i>silvae</i>
<i>silvae</i>	<i>silvārum</i>
<i>silvae</i>	<i>silvīs</i>
<i>silvam</i>	<i>silvās</i>
<i>silva</i>	<i>silvae</i>
<i>silvā</i>	<i>silvīs</i>

*Galea, helmet.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>galea</i>	<i>galeae</i>
<i>galeae</i>	<i>galeārum</i>
<i>galeae</i>	<i>galeīs</i>
<i>galeam</i>	<i>galeās</i>
<i>galea</i>	<i>galeae</i>
<i>galeā</i>	<i>galeīs</i>

454. Second declension.—Nouns in *us*, *er*, and *ir* are *masculine*, those in *um* *neuter*. The stem ends in *o*.

*Gladius, sword.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>gladius</i>	<i>gladiī</i>
<i>gladiī</i>	<i>gladiōrum</i>
<i>gladiō</i>	<i>gladiīs</i>
<i>gladium</i>	<i>gladiōs</i>
<i>gladie</i>	<i>gladiī</i>
<i>gladiō</i>	<i>gladiīs</i>

*Ager, field.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>ager</i>	<i>agri</i>
<i>agri</i>	<i>agrōrum</i>
<i>agrō</i>	<i>agrīs</i>
<i>agrum</i>	<i>agrōs</i>
<i>ager</i>	<i>agri</i>
<i>agrō</i>	<i>agrīs</i>

*Vir, man.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>vir</i>	<i>virī</i>
<i>virī</i>	<i>virōrum</i>
<i>virō</i>	<i>virīs</i>
<i>virum</i>	<i>virōs</i>
<i>vir</i>	<i>virī</i>
<i>virō</i>	<i>virīs</i>

*Scūtum, shield.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>scūtum</i>	<i>scūta</i>
<i>scūtī</i>	<i>scūtōrum</i>
<i>scūtō</i>	<i>scūtīs</i>
<i>scūtum</i>	<i>scūta</i>
<i>scūtum</i>	<i>scūta</i>
<i>scūtō</i>	<i>scūtīs</i>

**455. Classification of third-declension nouns by stems.**—The stems are divided according to their last letter, called the *stem-characteristic*, into (1) *consonant stems* and (2) *vowel stems*.

**456. Consonant stems.**—*Consonant stems* are divided into—

- |                      |   |  |
|----------------------|---|--|
|                      | { | ending in <i>p-mute</i> , <b>b, p.</b> |
| 1. <i>Mute stems</i> |   | “ “ <i>k-mute</i> , <b>c, g.</b>       |
|                      |   | “ “ <i>t-mute</i> , <b>d, t.</b>       |
2. *Sibilant stems*, ending in **s**.  
 3. *Liquid stems*, ending in **l, n, r**.

**A. *Mute stems***, masculines and feminines, add **s** to form the nominative. Before **s**, a *p-mute* is retained, a *k-mute* unites with it as **x**, a *t-mute* is dropped. Most polysyllabic mute stems change the final vowel **i** to **e** in the nominative.

*p-mute*: **prīnceps, prīncipis**, stem **prīncip**.

*k-mute*: **lēx, lēgis**, stem **lēg**; **vōx, vōcis**, stem **vōc**.

*t-mute*: **mīles, mīlitis**, stem **mīlit**; **pēs, pedis**, stem **ped**.

**B. *Sibilant stems*** have no additional **s** in the nominative, masculines changing **e** to **i** before **s**, and neuters **e** or **o** to **u**; in the oblique cases the **s** of the stem changes to **r** between two vowels.

**pulvis, pulveris** (mas.), *powder*, stem **pulves**.

**latus, lateris**, stem **lates**; **corpus, corporis**, stem **corpos**.

**C. *Liquid stems*** in **l** or **r** do not change the stem to form the nominative; as, **sōl, sōlis**, *sun*, stem **sōl**; **rūmor, rūmōris**, stem **rūmōr**.

Most stems in **n** form the nominative by dropping the stem-characteristic and changing a preceding vowel to **o**. while most neuter and a few masculine nouns retain the stem-characteristic and change preceding **i** to **e**:

**homō, hominis**, stem **homin**; **flūmen, flūminis**, stem **flūmin**.

457. Vowel stems end in *i* or *u*.—Masculine and feminine nouns form the nominative in *s*, and have *ēs* and *is* in the accusative plural; neuters end in *e*, *al*, *ar* and have *ia* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, and *ī* in the ablative singular. Some masculine and feminine nouns also have *ī* in the ablative singular. A few feminines change the stem vowel *i* to *e* in the nominative before *s*, and neuters change the *i* to *e*, which is dropped in polysyllabics after *l* and *r*.

Vowel stems in *i* have *ium* in the genitive plural, masculines and feminines ending in *ēs*, *er*, *is*—neuters in *e*, *al*, *ar*.

*vātēs, vātis* (mas. and fem.), *seer*, stem *vāti*.

*hostis, hostis* (mas.), stem *hosti*.

*īnsigne, īnsignis* (neut.), stem *īnsigni*.

*animal, animālis, animal*, stem *animāli*.

458. Third declension.—General rules of gender for third-declension nouns, classed according to the nominative ending.

#### GROUP I.

*Masculines* are: (1) nouns in *es*, gen. *itis*: *mīles*, *mīlitis*;—(2) *es* or *is*, gen. *idis*: *obses*, *obsidis*; *lapis*, *lapidis*;—(3) *er* or *or*: *frāter*, *rūmor*;—(4) many *vowel stems* in *i*: *finis*, *finis*;—(5) some *monosyllables*: *pēs*, *mōs*, *pōns*;—(6) nouns in *ō* or *ōs*.

*Miles, soldier.*

*Lapis, stone.*

*Frāter, brother.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>mīles</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>lapis</i>	<i>lapidēs</i>	<i>frāter</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>
<i>mīlitis</i>	<i>mīlitum</i>	<i>lapidis</i>	<i>lapidum</i>	<i>frātris</i>	<i>frātrum</i>
<i>mīlitī</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>	<i>lapidī</i>	<i>lapidibus</i>	<i>frātrī</i>	<i>frātribus</i>
<i>mīlitem</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>lapidem</i>	<i>lapidēs</i>	<i>frātre</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>
<i>mīles</i>	<i>mīlitēs</i>	<i>lapis</i>	<i>lapidēs</i>	<i>frāter</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>
<i>mīlite</i>	<i>mīlitibus</i>	<i>lapide</i>	<i>lapidibus</i>	<i>frātre</i>	<i>frātribus</i>

**Hostis, enemy.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
hostis	hostēs
hostis	hostium
hostī	hostibus
hostem	hostēs, -īs
hostis	hostēs
hoste	hostibus

**Pēs, foot.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
pēs	pedēs
pedis	pedum
pedī	pedibus
pedem	pedēs
pēs	pedēs
pede	pedibus

For the mode of distinguishing *vowel stems*, which are parasyllabic, from *consonant stems*, which are imparisyllabic, see (131).

## GROUP II.

*Feminines* are: (1) nouns in *ās*, gen. *ātis*: *facultās*, *facultātis*;—(2) nouns in *iō* (*abstract and collective*): *legiō*, *legiōnis*;—(3) *ūs*, gen. *ūtis* or *ūdis*: *virtūs*, *virtūtis*;—(4) *dō* and *gō*, gen. *inis*: *multitūdō*, *multitūdinis*;—(5) most *monosyllables*: *pāx*, *lēx*;—(6) nouns in *ēs*, *ys*, *is*, and *s* (preceded by a *consonant*).

**Facultās, opportunity.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
facultās	facultātēs
facultātis	facultātum
facultātī	facultātibus
facultātem	facultātēs
facultās	facultātēs
facultāte	facultātibus

**Legiō, legion.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
legiō	legiōnēs
legiōnis	legiōnum
legiōnī	legiōnibus
legiōnem	legiōnēs
legiō	legiōnēs
legiōne	legiōnibus

**Virtūs, courage.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
virtūs	virtūtēs
virtūtis	virtūtum
virtūtī	virtūtibus
virtūtem	virtūtēs
virtūs	virtūtēs
virtūte	virtūtibus

**Lēx, law.**

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
lēx	lēgēs
lēgis	lēgum
lēgī	lēgibus
lēgem	lēgēs
lēx	lēgēs
lēge	lēgibus

Multitūdō, *multitude*.

SINGULAR	PLURAL.
multitūdō	multitūdinēs
multitūdinis	multitūdinum
multitūdinī	multitūdinibus
multitūdinem	multitūdinēs
multitūdō	multitūdinēs
multitūdine	multitūdinibus

## GROUP III.

*Neuters* are: (1) nouns in us, gen. eris or oris: *latus*, *lateris*; *corpus*, *corporis*;—(2) men, gen. *minis*: *flūmen*, *flūminis*;—(3) nouns in e, al, ar, ur.

*Latus, side.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>latus</i>	<i>latera</i>
<i>lateris</i>	<i>laterum</i>
<i>laterī</i>	<i>lateribus</i>
<i>latus</i>	<i>latera</i>
<i>latus</i>	<i>latera</i>
<i>latere</i>	<i>lateribus</i>

*Corpus, body.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>corpus</i>	<i>corpora</i>
<i>corporis</i>	<i>corporum</i>
<i>corporī</i>	<i>corporibus</i>
<i>corpus</i>	<i>corpora</i>
<i>corpus</i>	<i>corpora</i>
<i>corpore</i>	<i>corporibus</i>

*Flūmen, river.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>flūmen</i>	<i>flūmina</i>
<i>flūminis</i>	<i>flūminum</i>
<i>flūminī</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>
<i>flūmen</i>	<i>flūmina</i>
<i>flūmen</i>	<i>flūmina</i>
<i>flūmine</i>	<i>flūminibus</i>

*Īnsigne, badge.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>īnsigne</i>	<i>īnsignia</i>
<i>īsignis</i>	<i>īsignium</i>
<i>īsignī</i>	<i>īsignibus</i>
<i>īnsigne</i>	<i>īnsignia</i>
<i>īnsigne</i>	<i>īnsignia</i>
<i>īsignī</i>	<i>īsignibus</i>

## 459. Irregular nouns of the third declension.

*Milia, thousands. Vis, force, vigor. Iter, march, journey.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
<i>mille</i>	<i>mīlia</i>	<i>vīs</i>	<i>vīrēs</i>	<i>iter</i>	<i>itinerā</i>
<i>indeclinable</i>	<i>mīlium</i>	<i>vīs</i>	<i>vīrium</i>	<i>itineris</i>	<i>itinerum</i>
<i>adjective</i>	<i>mīlibus</i>	—	<i>vīribus</i>	<i>itinerī</i>	<i>itineribus</i>
	<i>mīlia</i>	<i>vim</i>	<i>vīrēs</i>	<i>iter</i>	<i>itinerā</i>
	<i>mīlia</i>	—	<i>vīrēs</i>	<i>iter</i>	<i>itinerā</i>
	<i>mīlibus</i>	<i>vī</i>	<i>vīribus</i>	<i>itinere</i>	<i>itineribus</i>

**460. Genitive plural in *um* and *ium*, third declension.**

*Vowel stems in i* have *ium*.

*Monosyllabic mute stems* with the characteristic preceded by a *consonant* have *ium*: *mōns, montium, urbs, urbium*.

*Monosyllabic mute stems* with characteristics preceded by a *long vowel* have *um*: *lēx, lēgis, lēgum*.

*Monosyllabic mute stems* with the characteristic preceded by a *short vowel* have *um*: *dux, ducis, ducum*.

*Polysyllabic stems* in *nt* and *rt* often have *ium*: *cohors, cohortis, cohortium*.

**461. Fourth declension.**—Nouns in *us* are *masculine*, a *few feminine*; those in *ū*, *neuter*. The stem ends in *u*.

**Manus, hand, band.**

SINGULAR.

**manus**

**manūs**

**manuī (ū)**

**manum**

**manus**

**manū**

PLURAL.

**manūs**

**manuum**

**manibus**

**manūs**

**manūs**

**manibus**

**Cornū, horn, wing.**

SINGULAR.

**cornū**

**cornūs**

**cornū**

**cornū**

**cornū**

**cornū**

PLURAL.

**cornua**

**cornuum**

**cornibus**

**cornua**

**cornua**

**cornibus**

**462. Fifth declension.**—Nouns are *feminine*, except *diēs, day*, which is *masculine* or *feminine* in the singular and *masculine* in the plural. The stem ends in *ē*.

**Diēs, day.**

SINGULAR.

**diēs**

**diēī**

**diēī**

**diem**

**diēs**

**diē**

PLURAL.

**diēs**

**diērum**

**diēbus**

**diēs**

**diēs**

**diēbus**

**Rēs, thing.**

SINGULAR.

**rēs**

**reī**

**reī**

**rem**

**rēs**

**rē**

PLURAL.

**rēs**

**rērum**

**rēbus**

**rēs**

**rēs**

**rēbus**

## PRONOUNS.

## 463 Personal pronoun, first person.

SINGULAR.		PLURAL.	
<i>Ego, I.</i>		<i>Nōs, we.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ego</i>	<i>nōs</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>meī</i>	{ <i>nostrum</i>	
		{ <i>nostrī</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	

## 464. Demonstrative pronouns.

*Is, ea, id, he, this, that, etc.*; sometimes used as the personal pronoun, third person.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>is, ea, id</i>		<i>eī (iī), eae, ea</i>		
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ēius</i>		<i>eōrum, eārum, eōrum</i>		
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>eī</i>		<i>eīs (iīs)</i>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eum, eam, id</i>		<i>eōs, eās, ea</i>		
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eō, eā, eō</i>		<i>eīs (iīs)</i>		

*Hīc, this* (near the speaker).

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hīc, haec, hōc</i>		<i>hī, hae, haec</i>		
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hūius</i>		<i>hōrum, hārum, hōrum</i>		
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>		<i>hīs</i>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc, hanc, hōc</i>		<i>hōs, hās, haec</i>		
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc, hāc, hōc</i>		<i>hīs</i>		

*Ille, that* (remote from the speaker).

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ille, illa, illud</i>		<i>illī, illae, illa</i>		
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illīus</i>		<i>illōrum, illārum, illōrum</i>		
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illī</i>		<i>illīs</i>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illum, illam, illud</i>		<i>illōs, illās, illa</i>		
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illō, illā, illō</i>		<i>illīs</i>		

*Īdem, the same.*

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>īdem,</i>	<i>eadem,</i>	<i>idem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>ēiusdem</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>		<i>eīdem</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eundem,</i>	<i>eandem,</i>	<i>idem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eōdem,</i>	<i>eādem,</i>	<i>eōdem</i>

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>eidem (iīdem),</i>	<i>eaedem,</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>eōrundem,</i>	<i>eārundem,</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>Dat.</i>		<i>eīsdem (iīsdem)</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eōsdem,</i>	<i>eāsdem,</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Abl.</i>		<i>eīsdem (iīsdem)</i>	

*Ipsē, he, self (with intensive force).*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ipse,</i>	<i>ipsa,</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī,</i>	<i>ipsae,</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>ipsīus</i>		<i>ipsōrum,</i>	<i>ipsārum,</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>		<i>ipsī</i>			<i>ipsīs</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>ipsum,</i>	<i>ipsam,</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs,</i>	<i>ipsās,</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>ipsō,</i>	<i>ipsā,</i>	<i>ipsō</i>		<i>ipsis</i>	

## 465. Relative, Interrogative, and Indefinite pronouns.

Relative *quī, quae, quod, who, which, that.*

## SINGULAR.

## PLURAL.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quī,</i>	<i>quae,</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī,</i>	<i>quae,</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>cūius</i>		<i>quōrum,</i>	<i>quārum,</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>		<i>cui</i>			<i>quibus</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem,</i>	<i>quam,</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs,</i>	<i>quās,</i>	<i>quae</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō,</i>	<i>quā,</i>	<i>quō</i>		<i>quibus</i>	

Interrogative and Indefinite *quis (quī), who?—any one.*

## SINGULAR.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>quis (quī),<sup>1</sup></i>	<i>quae,</i>	<i>quid (quod)</i>
<i>Gen.</i>		<i>cūius</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>		<i>cui</i>	
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>quem,</i>	<i>quam,</i>	<i>quid (quod)</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>quō,</i>	<i>quā,</i>	<i>quō</i>

The plural is the same as that of the *relative*.

<sup>1</sup> *quis* is a substantive, *who*? *quī* is an adjective, *what, which*?

## 466. Adjectives.—First and second declensions.

*Altus, high, tall.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
altus,	-a,	-um	altī,	-ae,	-a
altī,	-ae,	-ī	altōrum,	-ārum,	-ōrum
altō,	-ae,	-ō	altīs,	-īs,	-īs
altum,	-am,	-um	altōs,	-ās,	-a
alte,	-a,	-um	altī,	-ae,	-a
altō,	-ā,	-ō	altīs,	-īs,	-īs

*Crēber, frequent.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
crēber,	-bra,	-brum	crēbrī,	-brae,	-bra
crēbrī,	-brae,	-brī	crēbrōrum,	-brārum,	-brōrum
crēbrō,	-brae,	-brō	crēbrīs,	-brīs,	-brīs
crēbrum,	-bram,	-brum	crēbrōs,	-brās,	-bra
crēber,	-bra,	-brum	crēbrī,	-brae,	-bra
crēbrō,	-brā,	-brō	crēbrīs,	-brīs,	-brīs

## 467. Adjectives continued.—Third declension.

*Duplex, double—adjective of one ending.*

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
duplex, duplex, duplex	duplicēs, duplicēs, duplicia
duplicis	duplicium
duplicī	duplicibus
duplicem, -cem, duplex	duplicēs (-īs), -cēs (-īs), -cia
duplex	duplicēs, duplicēs, duplicia
duplicī	duplicibus

*Fortis, brave—adjective of two endings.*

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
fortis,	-tis,	-te	fortēs,	fortēs,	fortia
fortis			fortium		
fortī			fortibus		
fortem,	-tem,	-te	fortēs (-īs),	fortēs (-īs),	fortia
fortis,	-tis,	-te	fortēs,	fortēs,	fortia
fortī			fortibus		

**Equester**, of *cavalry*—adjective of *three endings*.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
equester,	-tris,	-tre	equestrēs,	-trēs,	-tria
equestris			equestrium		
equestrī			equestribus		
equestrem,	-trem,	-tre	equestrēs (-īs),	-trēs (-īs),	-tria
equester,	-tris,	-tre	equestrēs,	-trēs,	-tria
equestrī			equestribus		

**Pūgnāns** (present participle), declined like an *adjective* of the *third declension*, with *one ending* in the nominative singular.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
pūgnāns,	pūgnāns,	pūgnāns	pūgnantēs,	-tēs,	-tia
pūgnantis			pūgnantium		
pūgnantī			pūgnantibus		
pūgnantem,	-tem,	pūgnāns	pūgnantēs (-īs),	-tēs (-īs),	-tia
pūgnāns			pūgnantēs,	-tēs,	-tia
pūgnante (-ī)			pūgnantibus		

**Altior**, *taller*—comparative of **altus**.

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
altior,	-ior,	-ius	altiōrēs,	-ōrēs,	-ōra
altiōris			altiōrum		
altiōrī			altiōribus		
altiōrem,	-ōrem,	altius	altiōrēs,	-ōrēs,	-ōra
altior,	-ior	-ius	altiōrēs,	-ōrēs,	-ōra
altiōre (-ī)			altiōribus		

Adjectives of the third declension, parissyllabic and imparissyllabic, such as **duplex**, **fortis**, **equester**, etc., have **ī** in the *ablative singular*, **ia** in the *nominative plural neuter*, and **īs** or **ēs** in the *accusative plural masculine and feminine*.

Note carefully the corresponding endings of these cases in the present participle (**pūgnāns**), and the comparative of the adjective (**altior**).

## 468. Numeral adjectives.

Ūnus,<sup>1</sup> *one*.Duo, *two*.Trēs, *three*.

<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus, -a, -um	duo, duae, duo	trēs, trēs, tria
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnūs	duōrum, -ārum, -ōrum	trium
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	duōbus, -ābus, -ōbus	tribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum, -am, -um	duōs (duo), -ās, -o	trēs, trēs, tria
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō, -ā, -ō	duōbus, -ābus, -ōbus	tribus

The numeral adjectives 4-100 are indeclinable; hundreds are declined like the *plural* of *altus*.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

## 469. Regular adjectives.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>altus, tall</i>	altior, -ior, -ius	altissimus, -a, -um
<i>certus, certain</i>	certior, -ior, -ius	certissimus, -a, -um
<i>dēnsus, dense</i>	dēnsior, -ior, -ius	dēnsissimus, -a, -um
<i>inīquus, unfair</i>	inīquior, -ior, -ius	inīquissimus, -a, -um
<i>parātus, ready</i>	parātior, -ior, -ius	parātissimus, -a, -um
<i>tardus, slow</i>	tardior, -ior, -ius	tardissimus, -a, -um
<i>tūtus, safe</i>	tūtior, -ior, -ius	tūtissimus, -a, -um
<i>fortis, brave</i>	fortior, -ior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
<i>gravis, severe</i>	gravior, -ior, -ius	gravissimus, -a, -um
<i>potēns, powerful</i>	potentior, -ior, -ius	potentissimus, -a, -um
<i>amāns, loving</i>	amantior, -ior, -ius	amantissimus, -a, -um

470. Adjectives ending in *er*.—These add *rimus*, -a, -um to the *nominative singular masculine* of the positive.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>ācer, sharp</i>	ācrior, -ior, -ius	ācerrimus, -a, -um
<i>asper, rough</i>	asperior, -ior, -ius	asperrimus, -a, -um
<i>celer, swift</i>	celerior, -ior, -ius	celerrimus, -a, -um
<i>miser, wretched</i>	miserior, -ior, -ius	miserrimus, -a, -um
<i>pulcher, beautiful</i>	pulchrior, -ior, -ius	pulcherrimus, -a, -um

<sup>1</sup> The voc. sing. mas. ūne is found but rarely.

**471. Adjectives ending in *ilis*.**—*Six* adjectives in *ilis* add the superlative ending *limus* to the *stem*, stripped of its final vowel, viz.: *facilis*, *easy*; *difficilis*, *difficult*; *similis*, *like*; *dissimilis*, *unlike*; *gracilis*, *slender*; *humilis*, *low*.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>facilis</i>	<i>facilior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>facillimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>difficilis</i>	<i>difficilior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>difficillimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>similis</i>	<i>similior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>simillimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>dissimilis</i>	<i>dissimilior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>dissimillimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>gracilis</i>	<i>gracilior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>gracillimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>humilis</i>	<i>humilior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>humillimus</i> , -a, -um

#### 472. Irregular adjectives.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>bonus</i> , <i>good</i>	<i>melior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>optimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>malus</i> , <i>bad</i>	<i>pēior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>pessimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>māgnus</i> , <i>great</i>	<i>māior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>māximus</i> , -a, -um
<i>multus</i> , <i>much</i>	<i>no mas. or fem.</i> , <i>plūs</i>	<i>plūrimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>parvus</i> , <i>small</i>	<i>minor</i> , -or, -us	<i>minimus</i> , -a, -um
<i>īferus</i> , <i>low</i>	<i>īferior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>īfimus</i> or <i>īmus</i>
<i>superus</i> , <i>upper</i>	<i>superior</i> , -ior, -ius	<i>suprēmus</i> or <i>summus</i>
<i>novus</i> , <i>new</i>	<i>no comparative</i>	<i>novissimus</i> , -a, -um

Most adjectives ending in *us* preceded by a vowel, except those ending in *quus*, have no terminational comparison, and are compared by prefixing *magis*, *more*, and *māximē*, *most*; as,

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<i>idōneus</i> , <i>suitable</i>	<i>magis idōneus</i>	<i>māximē idōneus</i>

Adjectives ending in *quus* are regular; as,

<i>antīquus</i> , <i>ancient</i>	<i>antīquior</i>	<i>antīquissimus</i>
----------------------------------	------------------	----------------------

See also *inīquus*, (469).

## 473. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
<b>ācriter</b> , <i>fiercely</i>	<b>ācrius</b>	<b>ācerrimē</b>
<b>audācter</b> , <i>boldly</i>	<b>audācius</b>	<b>audācissimē</b>
<b>celeriter</b> , <i>quickly</i>	<b>celerius</b>	<b>celerrimē</b>
<b>dīligerter</b> , <i>promptly</i>	<b>dīligentius</b>	<b>dīligentissimē</b>
<b>diū</b> , <i>a long time</i>	<b>diūtius</b>	<b>diūtissimē</b>
<b>facile</b> , <i>easily</i>	<b>facilius</b>	<b>facillimē</b>
<b>fortiter</b> , <i>bravely</i>	<b>fortius</b>	<b>fortissimē</b>
<b>longē</b> , <i>far</i>	<b>longius</b>	<b>longissimē</b>
<b>māgnum</b> , <i>greatly</i>	<b>magis</b>	<b>māximē</b>
<b>multum</b> , <i>much</i>	<b>plūs</b>	<b>plūrimum</b>
<b>parvum</b> , <i>a little, slightly</i>	<b>minus</b>	<b>minimē</b>
<b>prope</b> , <i>nearly</i>	<b>propius</b>	<b>proximē</b>

1. The accusatives of adjectives and pronouns are sometimes used as adverbs; as, **multum**, **multa**, *much*; **facile**, *easily*; **aliās**, *otherwise*.

2. Some adverbs were originally ablatives; as, **vērō**, *in truth, but, however*; **forte**, *by chance*; **iūre**, *rightly*.

3. Most adverbs are derived from adjectives, upon which they depend for comparison. Adjectives of the first and second declensions form the adverbs in **ē**, **ō**, **um**; as, **longus**, **longē**; **multus**, **multō**, and **multum**. Adjectives of the third declension form the adverbs in **ter**; as, **audāx**, **audāc-ter**; **fortis**, **forti-ter**; **diligens**, **dīligen-ter**.

4. Some adverbs are formed by the union of prepositions with case forms; as, **inter-eā**, *meanwhile*; **post-eā**, *afterwards*; **paulis-per**, *for a little while*.

5. The comparative of the adverb is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; the superlative of the adverb is formed by changing the ending **us** of the superlative of the adjective to **ē**.

## THE LATIN VERB.

## FIRST CONJUGATION.

474. Active voice.—Amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, *to love.*

## Present indicative.

*I love, do love, am loving.*

amō  
amās  
amat  
amāmus  
amātis  
amant

## Pluperfect indicative.

*I had loved.*

amāveram  
amāverās  
amāverat  
amāverāmus  
amāverātis  
amāverant

## Imperfect indicative.

*I was loving, loved.*

amābam  
amābās  
amābat  
amābāmus  
amābātis  
amābant

## Future-perfect indicative.

*I shall have loved.*

amāverō  
amāveris  
amāverit  
amāverimus  
amāveritis  
amāverint

## Future indicative.

*I shall love.*

amābō  
amābis  
amābit  
amābimus  
amābitis  
amābunt

## Present subjunctive.

*I may love.*

amem  
amēs  
amet  
amēmus  
amētis  
ament

## Perfect indicative.

*I have loved, loved, did love.*

amāvī  
amāvistī  
amāvit  
amāvimus  
amāvistis  
amāvērunt (-ēre)

## Imperfect subjunctive.

*I might love.*

amārem  
amārēs  
amāret  
amārēmus  
amārētis  
amārent

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have loved.*

amāverim  
 amāveris  
 amāverit  
 amāverimus  
 amāveritis  
 amāverint

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have loved.*

amāvissem  
 amāvissēs  
 amāvisset  
 amāvissēmus  
 amāvissētis  
 amāvissent

**Imperative.**

amā, *love (thou)*  
 amātō, *thou shalt love*  
 amātō, *he shall love*

amāte, *love (ye)*  
 amātōte, *ye shall love*  
 amantō, *they shall love*

**Participle.***Present. amāns, loving**Future. amātūrus, -a, -um, being about to love***Infinitive.***Present. amāre, to love**Perfect. amāvisse, to have loved**Future. amātūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to love***Gerund.***Gen. amandī, of loving**Dat. amandō, to or for loving**Acc. ad amandum, for loving**Abl. amandō, by loving***Supine.***amātum, to love**amātū, to love***475. Passive voice.—Amor, amārī, amātus sum.****Present indicative.***I am (being) loved.*

amor  
 amārīs (-re)  
 amātur  
 amāmur  
 amāminī  
 amantur

**Imperfect indicative.***I was (being) loved.*

amābar  
 amābārīs (-re)  
 amābātur  
 amābāmur  
 amābāminī  
 amābantur

**Future indicative.***I shall be loved.*

amābor  
 amāberis (-re)  
 amābitur  
 amābimur  
 amābiminī  
 amābuntur

**Present subjunctive.***I may be loved.*

amer  
 amēris (-re)  
 amētur  
 amēmur  
 amēminī  
 amentur

**Perfect indicative.***I have been loved, was loved.*

amātus, -a, -um sum  
   es  
   est  
 amātī, -ae, -a sumus  
   estis  
   sunt

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be loved.*

amārer  
 amārēris (-re)  
 amārētur  
 amārēmur  
 amārēminī  
 amārentur

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been loved.*

amātus, -a, -um eram  
   erās  
   erat  
 amātī, -ae, -a erāmus  
   erātis  
   erant

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been loved.*

amātus, -a, -um sim  
   sīs  
   sit  
 amātī, -ae, -a sīmus  
   sītis  
   sint

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been loved.*

amātus, -a, -um erō  
   eris  
   erit  
 amātī, -ae, -a erimus  
   eritis  
   erunt

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been loved.*

amātus, -a, -um essem  
   essēs  
   esset  
 amātī, -ae, -a essēmus  
   essētis  
   essent

**Imperative.***amāre, be thou loved**amāminī, be ye loved**amātor, thou shalt be loved**amātor, he shall be loved**amantor, they shall be loved***Present infinitive.***amārī, to be loved***Perfect infinitive.***amātum, -am, -um esse, to have been loved***Future infinitive.***amātum irī to be about to be loved***Perfect participle.***amātus, -a, -um, having been loved***Gerundive.***amandus, -a, -um, worthy to be loved***SECOND CONJUGATION.**

**476. Active voice.—Moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, to advise.**

**Present indicative.***I advise, do advise, am advising.**moneō**monēs**monet**monēmus**monētis**monent***Imperfect indicative.***I was advising, advised.**monēbam**monēbās**monēbat**monēbāmus**monēbātis**monēbant*

**Future indicative.***I shall advise.*

monēbō  
 monēbis  
 monēbit  
 monēbimus  
 monēbitis  
 monēbunt

**Present subjunctive.***I may advise.*

moneam  
 moneās  
 moneat  
 moneāmus  
 moneātis  
 moneant

**Perfect indicative.***I have advised, advised, did advise.*

monuī  
 monuistī  
 monuit  
 monuimus  
 monuistis  
 monuērunt (-ēre)

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might advise.*

monērem  
 monērēs  
 monēret  
 monērēmus  
 monērētis  
 monērent

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had advised.*

monueram  
 monuerās  
 monuerat  
 monuerāmus  
 monuerātis  
 monuerant

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have advised.*

monuerim  
 monueris  
 monuerit  
 monuerimus  
 monueritis  
 monuerint

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have advised.*

monuerō  
 monueris  
 monuerit  
 monuerimus  
 monueritis  
 monuerint

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have advised.*

monuissē  
 monuissēs  
 monuisset  
 monuissēmus  
 monuissētis  
 monuissent

**Imperative.**

<b>monē</b> , <i>advise (thou)</i>	<b>monēte</b> , <i>advise (ye)</i>
<b>monētō</b> , <i>thou shalt advise</i>	<b>monētōte</b> , <i>ye shall advise</i>
<b>monētō</b> , <i>he shall advise</i>	<b>monentō</b> , <i>they shall advise</i>

**Participle.**

*Present.* **monēns**, *advising*

*Future.* **monitūrus**, -a, -um, *being about to advise*

**Infinitive.**

*Present.* **monēre**, *to advise*

*Perfect.* **monuisse**, *to have advised*

*Future.* **monitūrum**, -am, -um **esse**, *to be about to advise*

**Gerund.**

**monendī**, *of advising*

**monendō**, *to or for advising*

**ad monendum**, *for advising*

**monendō**, *by advising*

**Supine.**

**monitum**, *to advise*

**monitū**, *to advise*

**477. Passive voice.—Moneor, monēri, monitus sum.****Present indicative.**

*I am (being) advised.*

**moneor**

**monēris** (-re)

**monētur**

**monēmur**

**monēmini**

**monentur**

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was (being) advised.*

**monēbar**

**monēbāris** (-re)

**monēbātur**

**monēbāmur**

**monēbāmini**

**monēbantur**

**Future indicative.***I shall be advised.*

monēbor  
 monēberis (-re)  
 monēbitur  
 monēbimur  
 monēbiminī  
 monēbuntur

**Present subjunctive.***I may be advised.*

monear  
 moneāris (-re)  
 moneātur  
 moneāmur  
 moneāminī  
 moneantur

**Perfect indicative.***I have been advised, was advised.*

monitus, -a, -um sum  
                                   es  
                                   est  
 monitī, -ae, -a sumus  
                                   estis  
                                   sunt

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be advised.*

monērer  
 monērēris (-re)  
 monērētur  
 monērēmur  
 monērēminī  
 monērentur

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been advised.*

monitus, -a, -um eram  
                                   erās  
                                   erat  
 monitī, -ae, -a erāmus  
                                   erātis  
                                   erant

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been advised.*

monitus, -a, -um sim  
                                   sīs  
                                   sit  
 monitī, -ae, -a sīmus  
                                   sītis  
                                   sint

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been advised.*

monitus, -a, -um erō  
                                   eris  
                                   erit  
 monitī, -ae, -a erimus  
                                   eritis  
                                   erunt

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been advised.*

monitus, -a, -um essem  
                                   essēs  
                                   esset  
 monitī, -ae, -a essēmus  
                                   essētis  
                                   essent

**Imperative.****monēre**, *be thou advised***monēmini**, *be ye advised***monētor**, *thou shalt be advised***monētor**, *he shall be advised***monentor**, *they shall be advised***Present infinitive.****monērī**, *to be advised***Perfect infinitive.****monitum**, -am, -um **esse**, *to have been advised***Future infinitive.****monitum irī**, *to be about to be advised***Perfect participle.****monitus**, -a, -um, *having been advised***Gerundive.****monendus**, -a, -um, *worthy to be advised***THIRD CONJUGATION.**

478. Active voice.—**Pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positum**, *to place.*

**Present indicative.***I place, do place, am placing.***pōnō****pōnis****pōnit****pōnimus****pōnitis****pōnunt****Imperfect indicative.***I was placing, placed.***pōnēbam****pōnēbās****pōnēbat****pōnēbāmus****pōnēbātis****pōnēbant**

**Future indicative.***I shall place.*

pōnam  
 pōnēs  
 pōnet  
 pōnēmus  
 pōnētis  
 pōnent

**Present subjunctive.***I may place.*

pōnam  
 pōnās  
 pōnat  
 pōnāmus  
 pōnātis  
 pōnant

**Perfect indicative.***I have placed, placed, did place.*

posuī  
 posuistī  
 posuit  
 posuimus  
 posuistis  
 posuērunt (-ēre)

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might place.*

pōnerem  
 pōnerēs  
 pōneret  
 pōnerēmus  
 pōnerētis  
 pōnerent

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had placed.*

posueram  
 posuerās  
 posuerat  
 posuerāmus  
 posuerātis  
 posuerant

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have placed.*

posuerim  
 posueris  
 posuerit  
 posuerimus  
 posueritis  
 posuerint

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have placed.*

posuerō  
 posueris  
 posuerit  
 posuerimus  
 posueritis  
 posuerint

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have placed.*

posuissē  
 posuissēs  
 posuisset  
 posuissēmus  
 posuissētis  
 posuissent

**Imperative.****pōne**, *place (thou)***pōnitō**, *thou shalt place***pōnitō**, *he shall place***pōnite**, *place (ye)***pōnitōte**, *ye shall place***pōnuntō**, *they shall place***Participle.***Present.* **pōnēns**, *placing**Future.* **positūrus**, -a, -um, *being about to place***Infinitive.***Present.* **pōnere**, *to place**Perfect.* **posuisse**, *to have placed**Future.* **positūrum**, -am, -um **esse**, *to be about to place***Gerund.****pōnendī**, *of placing***pōnendō**, *to or for placing***ad pōnendum**, *for placing***pōnendō**, *by placing***Supine.****positum**, *to place***positū**, *to place***479. Passive voice.—Pōnor, pōnī, positus sum.****Present indicative.***I am (being) placed.***pōnor****pōneris** (-re)**pōnitur****pōnimur****pōnimini****pōnuntur****Imperfect indicative.***I was (being) placed.***pōnēbar****pōnēbāris** (-re)**pōnēbātur****pōnēbāmur****pōnēbāmini****pōnēbantur**

**Future indicative.***I shall be placed.*

pōnar  
 pōnēris (-re)  
 pōnētur  
 pōnēmur  
 pōnēminī  
 pōnentur

**Present subjunctive.***I may be placed.*

pōnar  
 pōnāris (-re)  
 pōnātur  
 pōnāmur  
 pōnāminī  
 pōnantur

**Perfect indicative.***I have been placed, was placed.*

positus, -a, -um sum  
                                   es  
                                   est  
 positī, -ae, -a sumus  
                                   estis  
                                   sunt

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be placed.*

pōnerer  
 pōnerēris (-re)  
 pōnerētur  
 pōnerēmur  
 pōnerēminī  
 pōnerentur

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been placed.*

positus, -a, -um eram  
                                   erās  
                                   erat  
 positī, -ae, -a erāmus  
                                   erātis  
                                   erant

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been placed.*

positus, -a, -um sim  
                                   sīs  
                                   sit  
 positī, -ae, -a sīmus  
                                   sītis  
                                   sint

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been placed.*

positus, -a, -um erō  
                                   eris  
                                   erit  
 positī, -ae, -a erimus  
                                   eritis  
                                   erunt

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been placed.*

positus, -a, -um essem  
                                   essēs  
                                   esset  
 positī, -ae, -a essēmus  
                                   essētis  
                                   essent

**Imperative.**

<b>pōnere</b> , <i>be thou placed</i>	<b>pōniminī</b> , <i>be ye placed</i>
<b>pōnitor</b> , <i>thou shalt be placed</i>	
<b>pōnitor</b> , <i>he shall be placed</i>	<b>pōnuntor</b> , <i>they shall be placed</i>

**Infinitive.**

<i>Present.</i>	<b>pōnī</b> , <i>to be placed</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<b>positum</b> , <b>-am</b> , <b>-um esse</b> , <i>to have been placed</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<b>positum irī</b> , <i>to be about to be placed</i>

**Perfect participle.**

**positus**, **-a**, **-um**, *having been placed*

**Gerundive.**

**pōnendus**, **-a**, **-um**, *worthy to be placed*

**THIRD CONJUGATION. THE 'IŌ' VERB.**

**480. Active voice.—Capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, to take.**

**Present indicative.**

*I take, do take, am taking.*

**capiō**  
**capis**  
**capit**  
**capimus**  
**capitis**  
**capiunt**

**Future indicative.**

*I shall take.*

**capiam**  
**capiēs**  
 [etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.**

*I have taken, did take, took.*

**cēpī**  
**cēpistī**  
 [etc., regular]

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was taking, took.*

**capiēbam**  
**capiēbās**  
 [etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had taken.*

**cēperam**  
**cēperās**  
 [etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have taken.***cēperō****cēperis**

[etc., regular]

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have taken.***cēperim****cēperis**

[etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.***I may take.***capiam****capiās**

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have taken.***cēpisse****cēpissēs**

[etc., regular]

**Imperative.****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might take.***caperem****caperēs**

[etc., regular]

**cape, take (thou)****capitō, thou shalt take****capitō, he shall take****capite, take (ye)****capitōte, ye shall take****capiuntō, they shall take****Participle.***Present. capiēns, taking**Future. captūrus, -a, -um, being about to take***Infinitive.***Present. capere, to take**Perfect. cēpisse, to have taken**Future. captūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to take***Gerund.****capiendī, of taking****capiendō, to or for taking****ad capiendum, for taking****capiendō, by taking****Supine.****captum, to take****captū, to take**

## 481. Passive voice.—Capior, capī, captus sum.

**Present indicative.***I am (being) taken.*

capior  
 caperis (-re)  
 capitur  
 capimur  
 capimini  
 capiuntur

**Imperfect indicative.***I was (being) taken.*

capiēbar  
 capiēbāris (-re)  
 [etc., regular]

**Future indicative.***I shall be taken.*

capiar  
 capiēris (-re)  
 [etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have been taken, was taken.*

captus, -a, -um sum  
 " " " es

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been taken.*

captus, -a, -um eram  
 " " " erās

[etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been taken.*

captus, -a, -um erō  
 " " " eris

[etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.***I may be taken.*

capiar  
 capiāris (-re)  
 [etc., regular]

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be taken.*

caperer  
 caperēris (-re)  
 [etc., regular]

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been taken.*

captus, -a, -um sim  
 " " " sis

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been taken.*

captus, -a, -um essem  
 " " " essēs

[etc., regular]

**Imperative.**

capere, be thou taken  
 capitor, thou shalt be taken  
 capitor, he shall be taken  
 capimini, be ye taken  
 capiuntor, they shall be taken

## Infinitive.

*Present. capī, to be taken**Perfect. captum, -am, -um esse, to have been taken**Future. captum irī, to be about to be taken*

## Perfect participle.

*captus, -a, -um, having been taken*

## Gerundive.

*capiendus, -a, -um, worthy to be taken*

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

482. Active voice.—*Mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītum, to fortify.*

## Present indicative.

*I fortify, do fortify, am fortifying.*

mūniō  
mūnīs  
mūnit  
mūnīmus  
mūnītis  
mūniunt

## Future indicative.

*I shall fortify.*

mūniam  
mūniēs  
mūniet  
mūniēmus  
mūniētis  
mūnient

## Imperfect indicative.

*I was fortifying, fortified.*

mūniēbam  
mūniēbās  
mūniēbat  
mūniēbāmus  
mūniēbātis  
mūniēbant

## Perfect indicative.

*I have fortified, did fortify, fortified.*

mūnīvī  
mūnīvistī  
mūnīvit  
mūnīvimus  
mūnīvistis  
mūnīvērunt (-ēre)

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had fortified.*

mūnīveram

mūnīverās

mūnīverat

mūnīverāmus

mūnīverātis

mūnīverant

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might fortify.*

mūnīrem

mūnīrēs

mūnīret

mūnīrēmus

mūnīrētis

mūnīrent

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have fortified.*

mūnīverō

mūnīveris

mūnīverit

mūnīverimus

mūnīveritis

mūnīverint

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have fortified.*

mūnīverim

mūnīveris

mūnīverit

mūnīverimus

mūnīveritis

mūnīverint

**Present subjunctive.***I may fortify.*

mūniam

mūniās

mūniat

mūniāmus

mūniātis

mūniant

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have fortified.*

mūnīvissem

mūnīvissēs

mūnīvisset

mūnīvissēmus

mūnīvissētis

mūnīvissent

**Imperative.**

mūnī, fortify (thou)

mūnītō, thou shalt fortify

mūnītō, he shall fortify

mūnīte, fortify (ye)

mūnītōte, ye shall fortify

mūniuntō, they shall fortify

**Participle.***Present.* mūniēns, fortifying*Future.* mūnītūrus, -a, -um, being about to fortify

## Infinitive.

*Present.* mūnīre, to fortify

*Perfect.* mūnīvisse, to have fortified

*Future.* mūnītūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to fortify

## Gerund.

mūniendī, of fortifying

mūniendō, to or for fortifying

ad mūniendum, for fortifying

mūniendō, by fortifying

## Supine.

mūnītum, to fortify

mūnītū, to fortify

## 483. Passive voice.—Mūnior, mūnirī, mūnitus sum.

## Present indicative.

*I am (being) fortified.*

mūnior

mūnīris (-re)

mūnītur

mūnīmur

mūnīminī

mūniuntur

## Future indicative.

*I shall be fortified.*

mūniar

mūniēris (-re)

mūniētur

mūniēmur

mūniēminī

mūnientur

## Imperfect indicative.

*I was (being) fortified.*

mūniēbar

mūniēbāris (-re)

mūniēbātur

mūniēbāmur

mūniēbāminī

mūniēbantur

## Perfect indicative.

*I have been, was fortified.*

mūnītus, -a, -um sum

es

est

mūnītī, -ae, -a sumus

estis

sunt

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been fortified.*

mūnītus, -a, -um	eram
	erās
	erat
mūnītī, -ae, -a	erāmus
	erātis
	erant

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be fortified.*

mūnīrer
mūnīrēris (-re)
mūnīrētur
mūnīrēmur
mūnīrēminī
mūnīrentur

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been fortified.*

mūnītus, -a, -um	erō
	eris
	erit
mūnītī, -ae, -a	erimus
	eritis
	erunt

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been fortified.*

mūnītus, -a, -um	sīm
	sīs
	sit
mūnītī, -ae, -a	sīmus
	sītis
	sint

**Present subjunctive.***I may be fortified.*

mūniar
mūniāris (-re)
mūniātur
mūniāmur
mūniāminī
mūniantur

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been fortified.*

mūnītus -a, -um	essem
	essēs
	esset
mūnītī, -ae, -a	essēmus
	essētis
	essent

**Imperative.**

mūnīre,	be thou fortified
mūnītor,	thou shalt be fortified
mūnītor,	he shall be fortified
mūnīminī,	be ye fortified
mūniuntor,	they shall be fortified

**Infinitive.**

<i>Present.</i>	mūnīrī, to be fortified
<i>Perfect.</i>	mūnītum, -am, -um esse, to have been fortified
<i>Future.</i>	mūnītum īrī, to be about to be fortified

**Perfect participle.**

**mūnītus, -a, -um, *having been fortified***

**Gerundive.**

**mūniendus, -a, -um, *worthy to be fortified***

**IRREGULAR VERBS.****484. Sum, esse, fui, *to be*.****Present indicative.**

*I am.*

sum

es

est

sumus

estis

sunt

**Perfect indicative.**

*I have been, was.*

fuī

fuistī

fuit

fuimus

fuistis

fuērunt (-ēre)

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was*

eram

erās

erat

erāmus

erātis

erant

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had been.*

fueram

fuerās

fuerat

fuerāmus

fuerātis

fuerant

**Future indicative.**

*I shall be.*

erō

eris

erit

erimus

eritis

erunt

**Future-perfect indicative.**

*I shall have been.*

fuerō

fueris

fuerit

fuerimus

fueritis

fuerint

**Present subjunctive.***I may be.*

sim

sīs

sit

sīmus

sītis

sint

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been.*

fuerim

fueris

fuerit

fuerimus

fueritis

fuerint

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be.*

essem

essēs

esset

essēmus

essētis

essent

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been.*

fuissem

fuissēs

fuisset

fuissēmus

fuissētis

fuissent

**Imperative.**es, *be thou*estō, *thou shalt be*estō, *he shall be*este, *be ye*estōte, *ye shall be*suntō, *they shall be***Participle.***Future. futūrus, -a, -um, being about to be***Infinitive.***Present. esse, to be**Perfect. fuisse, to have been**Future. futūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to be***485. Possum, posse, potui, to be able.****Present indicative.***I am able.*

possum

potes

potest

possumus

potestis

possunt

**Imperfect indicative.***I was able.*

poteram  
 poterās  
 [etc., regular]

**Future indicative.***I shall be able.*

poterō  
 poteris  
 [etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have been, was able.*

potuī  
 potuisti  
 [etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been able.*

potueram  
 potuerās  
 [etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been able.*

potuerō  
 potueris  
 [etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.***I may be able.*

possim  
 possīs  
 possit  
 possīmus  
 possītis  
 possint

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be able.*

possem  
 possēs  
 posset  
 possēmus  
 possētis  
 possent

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been able.*

potuerim  
 potueris  
 [etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been able.*

potuissem.  
 potuissēs  
 [etc., regular]

**Infinitive.***Present. posse, to be able**Perfect. potuisse, to have been able*

486. Eō, īre, īvī, itum, *to go*.**Present indicative.***I go, am going, do go.*

eō  
īs  
it  
īmus  
ītis  
eunt

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had gone.*

īveram  
īverās  
īverat  
īverāmus  
īverātis  
īverant

**Imperfect indicative.***I was going, went.*

ībam  
ībās  
ībat  
ībāmus  
ībātis  
ībant

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have gone.*

īverō  
īveris  
īverit  
īverimus  
īveritis  
īverint

**Future indicative.***I shall go.*

ībō  
ībīs  
ībit  
ībimus  
ībitis  
ībunt

**Present subjunctive.***I may go.*

eam  
eās  
eat  
eāmus  
eātis  
eant

**Perfect indicative.***I have gone, went.*

īvī  
īvistī  
īvit  
īvimus  
īvistis  
īvērunt (-ēre)

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might go.*

īrem  
īrēs  
īret  
īrēmus  
īrētis  
īrent

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have gone.*

īverim

īveris

īverit

īverimus

īveritis

īverint

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have gone.*

īvissem

īvissēs

īvisset

īvissēmus

īvissētis

īvissent

**Imperative.**ī, go (*thou*)

ītō, thou shalt go

ītō, he shall go

īte, go (*ye*)

ītōte, ye shall go

euntō, they shall go

**Participle.***Present.* iēns (*gen. euntis*), going*Future.* itūrus, -a, -um, being about to go**Infinitive.***Present.* ire, to go*Perfect.* īvisse, to have gone*Future.* itūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to go**Gerund.**

eundī, of going

eundō, to or for going

ad eundum, for going

eundō, by going

**Supine.**

itum, to go

itū, to go

**487. Volō, velle, voluī, to wish.****Present indicative.***I wish, am wishing, do wish.*

volō

vīs

vult

volumus

vultis

volunt

**Imperfect indicative.***I was wishing, wished.*

volēbam

volēbās

volēbat

volēbāmus

volēbātis

volēbant

**Future indicative.***I shall wish.*

volam

volēs

volet

volēmus

volētis

volent

**Present subjunctive.***I may wish.*

velim

velis

velit

velimus

velitis

velint

**Perfect indicative.***I have wished, wished.*

voluī

voluistī

voluit

voluimus

voluistis

voluērunt (-ēre)

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might wish.*

vellem

vellēs

vellet

vellēmus

vellētis

vellent

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had wished.*

volueram

voluerās

voluerat

voluerāmus

voluerātis

voluerant

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have wished.*

voluerim

volueris

voluerit

voluerimus

volueritis

voluerint

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have wished.*

voluerō

volueris

voluerit

voluerimus

volueritis

voluerint

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have wished.*

voluissem

voluissēs

voluisset

voluissēmus

voluissētis

voluissent

**Present participle.**volēns, *wishing*

**Infinitive.***Present.* **velle**, to wish*Perfect.* **voluisse**, to have wished**488. Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, to be unwilling.****Present indicative.***I am unwilling.***nōlō****nōn vīs****nōn vult****nōlumus****nōn vultis****nōlunt****Imperfect indicative.***I was unwilling.***nōlēbam****nōlēbās**

[etc., regular]

**Future indicative.***I shall be unwilling.***nōlam****nōlēs**

[etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have been, was, unwilling.***nōluī****nōluistī**

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been unwilling.***nōlueram****nōluerās**

[etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have been unwilling.***nōluerō****nōlueris**

[etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.***I may be unwilling.***nōlim****nōlīs****nōlit****nōlīmus****nōlītis****nōlint****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be unwilling.***nōllem****nōllēs**

[etc., regular]

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been unwilling.***nōluerim****nōlueris**

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been unwilling.***nōluissem****nōluisēs**

[etc., regular]

**Imperative.****nōlī**, *be (thou) unwilling***nōlitō**, *thou shalt be unwilling***nōlitō**, *he shall be unwilling***nōlīte**, *be (ye) unwilling***nōlitōte**, *ye shall be unwilling***nōluntō**, *they shall be unwilling***Present participle.****nōlēns**, *being unwilling***Infinitive.***Present.* **nōlle**, *to be unwilling**Perfect.* **nōluisse**, *to have been unwilling***489. Mālō, mälle, māluī, to prefer.****Present indicative.***I prefer, am preferring, do prefer.***mālō****māvīs****māvult****mālumus****māvultis****mālunt****Imperfect indicative.***I was preferring, preferred.***mālēbam****mālēbās**

[etc., regular]

**Future indicative.***I shall prefer.***mālam****mālēs**

[etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have preferred, preferred.***māluī****māluistī**

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had preferred.***mālueram****māluerās**

[etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have preferred.***māluerō****mālueris**

[etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.***I may prefer.***mālim****mālīs****mālit****mālīmus****mālītis****mālīnt****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might prefer.***māllem****māllēs****māllet****māllēmus****māllētis****māllent**

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have preferred.*mālu<sup>er</sup>immālu<sup>er</sup>is

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have preferred.*mālu<sup>issem</sup>mālu<sup>issēs</sup>

[etc., regular]

**Infinitive.***Present.* mālle, to prefer*Perfect.* māluisse, to have preferred**490. Active voice.—Ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, to bear.****Present indicative.***I bear, am bearing, do bear.*

ferō

fers

fert

ferimus

fertis

ferunt

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had borne.*

tuleram

tulerās

[etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have borne.*

tulerō

tuleris

[etc., regular]

**Imperfect indicative.***I was bearing, bore.*

ferēbam

ferēbās

[etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.***I may bear.*

feram

ferās

[etc., regular]

**Future indicative.***I shall bear.*

feram

ferēs

[etc., regular]

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might bear.*

ferrem

ferrēs

[etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have borne, bore.*

tulī

tulistī

[etc., regular]

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have borne.***tulerim****tuleris**

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have borne.***tulissem****tulissēs**

[etc., regular]

**Imperative.****fer**, bear (*thou*)**fertō**, *thou shalt bear***fertō**, *he shall bear***ferte**, bear (*ye*)**fertōte**, *ye shall bear***feruntō**, *they shall bear***Participle.***Present.* **ferēns**, bearing*Future.* **lātūrus**, -a, -um, being about to bear**Infinitive.***Present.* **ferre**, to bear*Perfect.* **tulisse**, to have borne*Future.* **lātūrum**, -am, -um **esse**, to be about to bear**Gerund.****ferendī**, of bearing, etc.**Supine.****lātum**, to bear**lātū**, to bear**491. Passive voice.—Feror, ferri, lātus sum.****Present indicative.***I am (being) borne.***feror****ferris** (-re)**fertur****ferimur****feriminī****feruntur****Future indicative.***I shall be borne.***ferar****ferēris** (-re)

[etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.***I have been, was, borne.***lātus**, -a, -um **sum****es**

[etc.]

**Imperfect indicative.***I was (being) borne.***ferēbar****ferēbāris** (-re)

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.***I had been borne.***lātus, -a, -um eram****erās**

[etc.]

**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might be borne.***ferrer****ferrēris (-re)**

[etc., regular]

**Future perfect indicative.***I shall have been borne.***lātus, -a, -um erō****eris**

[etc.]

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been borne.***lātus, -a, -um sim****sīs**

[etc.]

**Present subjunctive.***I may be borne.***ferar****ferāris (-re)**

[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been borne.***lātus, -a, -um essem****essēs**

[etc.]

**Imperative.****ferre**, *be thou borne***feriminī**, *be ye borne***fertor**, *thou shalt be borne***fertor**, *he shall be borne***feruntor**, *they shall be borne***Infinitive.***Present.* **ferrī**, *to be borne**Perfect.* **lātum, -am, -um esse**, *to have been borne**Future.* **lātum irī**, *to be about to be borne***Perfect participle.****lātus, -a, -um**, *having been borne***Gerundive.****ferendus, -a, -um**, *worthy to be borne*

492. Active voice.—Faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, *to make*.

**Present indicative.**

*I make, am making, do make.*

faciō  
facis  
facit  
facimus  
facitis  
faciunt

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was making, made.*

faciēbam  
faciēbās  
[etc., regular]

**Future indicative.**

*I shall make.*

faciam  
faciēs  
[etc., regular]

**Perfect indicative.**

*I have made, made.*

fēcī  
fēcistī  
[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had made.*

fēceram  
fēcērās  
[etc., regular]

**Future-perfect indicative.**

*I shall have made.*

fēcērō  
fēcēris  
[etc., regular]

**Present subjunctive.**

*I may make.*

faciam  
faciās  
[etc., regular]

**Imperfect subjunctive.**

*I might make.*

facerem  
facerēs  
[etc., regular]

**Perfect subjunctive.**

*I may have made.*

fēcērim  
fēcēris  
[etc., regular]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.**

*I might have made.*

fēcissem  
fecissēs  
[etc., regular]

**Imperative.**

fac, *make (thou)*  
facitō, *thou shalt make*  
facitō, *he shall make*

facite, *make (ye)*  
facitōte, *ye shall make*  
faciuntō, *they shall make*

## Participle.

*Present.* **faciēns**, *making*

*Future.* **factūrus**, -a, -um, *being about to make*

## Infinitive.

*Present.* **facere**, *to make*

*Perfect.* **fēcisse**, *to have made*

*Future.* **factūrum**, -am, -um **esse**, *to be about to make*

## Gerund.

**faciendī**, *of making*, etc.

## Supine.

**factum**, *to make*

**factū**, *to make*

493. Passive voice.—**Fīō**, **fierī**, **factus sum**.

## Present indicative.

*I am (being) made, become.*

**fīō**

**fīs**

**fit**

**fīmus**

**fitis**

**fīunt**

## Pluperfect indicative.

*I had been made.*

**factus**, -a, -um **eram**

**erās** [etc.]

## Future-perfect indicative.

*I shall have been made.*

**factus**, -a, -um **erō**

**eris** [etc.]

## Imperfect indicative.

*I was (being) made, became*

**fīēbam**

**fīēbās** [etc.]

## Future indicative.

*I shall be made, shall become.*

**fīam**

**fīēs** [etc.]

## Present subjunctive.

*I may be made, may become.*

**fīam**

**fīās**

**fīat**

**fīāmus**

**fīātis**

**fīant**

## Perfect indicative.

*I have been made, was made. I might be made, might become.*

**factus**, -a, -um **sum**  
**es** [etc.]

## Imperfect subjunctive.

**fierem**

**fierēs** [etc.]

**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have been made.***factus, -a, -um sim****sīs [etc.]****Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have been made.***factus, -a, -um essem****essēs [etc.]****Imperative.****fī, be thou made****fīte, be ye made****Infinitive.***Present. fierī, to be made, to become**Perfect. factum, -am, -um esse, to have been made**Future. factum irī, to be about to be made***Perfect participle.****factus, -a, -um, having been made****Gerundive.****faciendus, -a, -um, worthy to be made****DEPONENT VERBS.****494. First conjugation.—Populor, populārī, populātus sum, to plunder.****Present indicative.***I plunder, am plundering, etc.***populor****populārīs (-re)****populātur [etc.]****Imperfect indicative.***I was plundering.***populābar [etc.]****Future indicative.***I shall plunder.***populābor [etc.]****Perfect indicative.***I have plundered.***populātus sum [etc.]****Pluperfect indicative.***I had plundered.***populātus eram [etc.]****Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have plundered.***populātus erō [etc.]****Present subjunctive.***I may plunder.***populer****populēris (-re)****populētur [etc.]****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might plunder.***populārer [etc.]****Perfect subjunctive.***I may have plundered.***populātus sim [etc.]****Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have plundered.***populātus essem [etc.]**

**Imperative.**

<b>populāre</b> , <i>plunder (thou)</i>	<b>populāminī</b> , <i>plunder ye</i>
<b>populātor</b> , <i>thou shalt plunder</i>	
<b>populātor</b> , <i>he shall plunder</i>	<b>populantor</b> , <i>they shall plunder</i>

**Infinitive.**

<i>Present.</i>	<b>populārī</b> , <i>to plunder</i>
<i>Perfect.</i>	<b>populātum</b> , -am, -um <b>esse</b> , <i>to have plundered</i>

**Perfect participle.**

**populātus**, -a, -um, *having plundered*

**Gerundive.**

**populandus**, -a, -um, *worthy to be plundered*

**Active forms.**

<i>Present participle.</i>	<b>populāns</b> , <i>plundering</i>
<i>Future participle.</i>	<b>populātūrus</b> , -a, -um, <i>being about to plunder</i>
<i>First supine.</i>	<b>populātum</b> , <i>to plunder</i>
<i>Second supine.</i>	<b>populātū</b> , <i>to plunder</i> [plunder
<i>Future infinitive.</i>	<b>populātūrum</b> , -am, -um <b>esse</b> , <i>to be about to</i>
<i>Gerund.</i>	<b>populandī</b> , <i>of plundering [etc.]</i>

**495. Second conjugation.—Vereor, verērī, veritus sum, to fear.**

<b>Present indicative.</b>	<b>Perfect indicative.</b>
<i>I fear, am fearing, etc.</i>	<i>I have feared.</i>
<b>vereor</b>	<b>veritus sum</b> [etc.]
<b>verēris</b> (-re)	
<b>verētur</b> [etc.]	<b>Pluperfect indicative.</b>
<b>Imperfect indicative.</b>	<i>I had feared.</i>
<i>I was fearing.</i>	<b>veritus eram</b> [etc.]
<b>verēbar</b> [etc.]	
<b>Future indicative.</b>	<b>Future-perfect indicative.</b>
<i>I shall fear.</i>	<i>I shall have feared.</i>
<b>verēbor</b> [etc.]	<b>veritus erō</b> [etc.]

**Present subjunctive.***I may fear.***vereā****vereāris (-re)****vereātur [etc.]****Imperfect subjunctive.***I might fear.***verērer [etc.]****Perfect subjunctive.***I may have feared.***veritus sim [etc.]****Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have feared.***veritus essem [etc.]****Imperative.****verēre, fear (thou)****verēmini, fear (ye)****verētor, thou shalt fear****verētor, he shall fear****verentor, they shall fear****Infinitive.***Present. verērī, to fear**Perfect. veritum, -am, -um esse, to have feared***Perfect participle.****veritus, -a, -um, having feared****Gerundive.****verendus, -a, -um, worthy to be feared****Active forms.***Present participle. verēns, fearing**Future participle. veritūrus, -a, -um, being about to fear**First supine. veritum, to fear**Second supine. veritū, to fear**Future infinitive. veritūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to fear**Gerund. verendī, of fearing, etc.***496. Third conjugation.—Ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, to use.****Present indicative.***I use, am using, etc.***ūtor****ūteris (-re)****ūtitur****ūtimur****ūtiminī****ūtantur****Imperfect indicative.***I was using.***ūtēbar [etc.]****Future indicative.***I shall use.***ūtar****ūtēris (-re)****ūtētur [etc.]**

**Perfect indicative.***I have used.***ūsus sum** [etc.]**Imperfect subjunctive.***I might use.***ūterer** [etc.]**Pluperfect indicative.***I had used.***ūsus eram** [etc.]**Perfect subjunctive.***I may have used.***ūsus sim** [etc.]**Future-perfect indicative.***I shall have used.***ūsus erō** [etc.]**Present subjunctive.***I may use.***ūtar****ūtāris** (-re)**ūtātur** [etc.]**Pluperfect subjunctive.***I might have used.***ūsus essem** [etc.]**Imperative.****ūtere**, (*use thou*)**ūtiminī**, (*use (ye)*)**ūtitor**, (*thou shalt use*)**ūtitor**, (*he shall use*)**ūtuntor**, (*they shall use*)**Infinitive.***Present.* **ūtī**, *to use**Perfect.* **ūsum**, -am, -um **esse**, *to have used***Perfect participle.****ūsus**, -a, -um, *having used***Gerundive.****ūtendus**, -a, -um, *worthy to be used***Active forms.***Present participle.* **ūtēns**, *using**Future participle.* **ūsūrus**, -a, -um, *being about to use**First supine.* **ūsum**, *to use**Second supine.* **ūsū**, *to use**Future infinitive.* **ūsūrum**, -am, -um **esse**, *to be about to use**Gerund.* **ūtendī**, *of using*, etc.

497. Fourth conjugation.—Potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *to capture.*

**Present indicative.**

*I capture, am capturing, etc.*

potior

potīris (-re)

potītur

potīmur

potīmini

potiuntur

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was capturing.*

potiēbar [etc.]

**Future indicative.**

*I shall capture.*

potiar

potiēris (-re)

potiētur [etc.]

**Perfect indicative.**

*I have captured.*

potītus sum [etc.]

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had captured.*

potītus eram [etc.]

**Future-perfect indicative.**

*I shall have captured.*

potītus erō [etc.]

**Present subjunctive.**

*I may capture.*

potiar

potiāris (-re)

potiātur [etc.]

**Imperfect subjunctive.**

*I might capture.*

potīrer [etc.]

**Perfect subjunctive.**

*I may have captured.*

potītus sim [etc.]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.**

*I might have captured.*

potītus essem [etc.]

**Imperative.**

potīre, *capture (thou)*

potīmini, *capture (ye)*

potītor, *thou shalt capture*

potītor, *he shall capture*

potiuntor, *they shall capture*

**Infinitive.**

*Present.* potīrī, *to capture*

*Perfect.* potītum, -am, -um esse, *to have captured*

**Perfect participle.**

potītus, -a, -um, *having captured*

**Gerundive.**

potiendus, -a, -um, *worthy to be captured*

## Active forms.

<i>Present participle.</i>	<b>potiēns</b> , capturing
<i>Future participle.</i>	<b>potītūrus</b> , -a, -um, being about to capture
<i>First supine.</i>	<b>potītum</b> , to capture
<i>Second supine.</i>	<b>potītū</b> , to capture <span style="float: right;">[ture</span>
<i>Future infinitive.</i>	<b>potītūrum</b> , -am, -um <b>esse</b> , to be about to cap-
<i>Gerund.</i>	<b>potiendī</b> , of capturing, etc.

## PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATION.

The *active voice* of the 'Periphrastic' is formed by annexing forms of **sum** to the *future active participle*; the *passive*, by annexing these forms to the *gerundive*.

**498. Active voice.**—**Amātūrus sum**, *I am about to love.*

**Present indicative.**

*I am about to love.*

<b>amātūrus</b> , -a, -um <b>sum</b>
<b>es</b>
<b>est</b>
<b>amātūrī</b> , -ae, -a <b>sumus</b>
<b>estis</b>
<b>sunt</b>

**Imperfect indicative.**

*I was about to love.*

<b>amātūrus</b> , -a, -um <b>eram</b>
<b>erās</b> [etc.]

**Future indicative.**

*I shall be about to love.*

<b>amātūrus</b> , -a, -um <b>erō</b>
<b>eris</b> [etc.]

**Perfect indicative.**

*I have been, was, about to love.*

<b>amātūrus</b> , -a, -um <b>fuī</b>
<b>fuisti</b> [etc.]

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had been about to love.*

<b>amātūrus</b> , -a, -um <b>fueram</b>
<b>fuerās</b> [etc.]

**Future-perfect indicative.**

*I shall have been about to love.*

<b>amātūrus</b> , -a, -um <b>fuerō</b>
<b>fueris</b> [etc.]

**Present subjunctive.**

*I may be about to love.*

<b>amātūrus</b> , -a, -um <b>sim</b>
<b>sīs</b> [etc.]

**Imperfect subjunctive.**

*I might be about to love.*

<b>amātūrus</b> , -a, -um <b>essem</b>
<b>essēs</b> [etc.]

**Perfect subjunctive.**

*I may have been about to love.*  
**amātūrus, -a, -um fuerim**  
 fueris [etc.]

**Pluperfect subjunctive.**

*I might have been about to love.*  
**amātūrus, -a, -um fuisset**  
 fuissēs [etc.]

**Infinitive.**

*Present. amātūrum, -am, -um esse, to be about to love*

*Perfect. amātūrum, -am, -um fuisse, to have been about to love*

**499. Passive voice.—Amandus sum, I deserve to be loved.****Present indicative.**

*I am to be, ought to be, loved.*  
**amandus, -a, -um sum**  
 es  
 est  
**amandī, -ae, -a sumus**  
 estis  
 sunt

**Pluperfect indicative.**

*I had deserved to be loved.*  
**amandus, -a, -um fueram**

**Future-perfect indicative.**

*I shall have deserved to be loved.*  
**amandus, -a, -um fuerō**

**Present subjunctive.**

*Imperfect indicative.*  
*I was to be, deserved to be,*  
*loved.*  
**amandus, -a, -um eram**

*I may be worthy to be loved.*  
**amandus, -a, -um sim**

**Imperfect subjunctive.**

*I might be worthy to be loved.*  
**amandus, -a, -um essem**

**Future indicative.**

*I shall deserve to be, ought to be, loved.*

**amandus, -a, -um erō**

**Perfect subjunctive.**

*I may have deserved to be loved.*  
**amandus, -a -um fuerim**

**Perfect indicative.**

*I was worthy to be, have deserved to be, loved.*

**amandus, -a, -um fui**

**Pluperfect subjunctive.**

*I might have deserved to be loved.*  
**amandus, -a, -um fuisset**

**Infinitive.**

*Present. amandum, -am, -um esse, to deserve to be loved*

*Perfect. amandum, -am, -um fuisse, to have deserved to be loved*

## QUANTITY RULES OF LATIN VOWELS AND SYLLABLES.

**500. General rules of quantity.**—1. A vowel before another vowel or *h* is *short*: except in the fifth declension, where *ē* follows a vowel, as *diēī*; *ī* in the genitive singular *īus*, see (286); *ī* in some forms of *fiō*, see (493).

2. Diphthongs and vowels formed by contraction are *long*: as *ae* in *fossae*, and *ō* in the penult of *cōgō* (= *con* + *agō*).

3. A syllable ending in a *short* vowel before a mute followed by *l* or *r* is *common*, i.e., long or short; as, *pātris*.

4. A vowel is *always long* before *ns*, *nf*, *gn*, and often long before *scō*, *scor* in inceptive verbs; as, *regēns*, *inferō*, *rēgnum*, *proficīscor*.

5. Compounds retain their *long* vowels; as, *dē-dūcō*.

6. Vowels are *long* in the nominative singular ending of nouns and adjectives which *increase long* in the genitive: *vōx*, *vōcis*; *ferāx*, *ferācis*.

7. A syllable is long by *nature* when it contains a long vowel or diphthong; long by *position* when it precedes two or more consonants or a double consonant.

**501. Quantity of final syllables ending in a vowel.**—In words of *more than one* syllable, final *a*, *e*, *y* are *short*, final *i*, *o*, *u* are *long*.

1. Final *a* is *short*, as *vālla*: except ablative of first declension, as *tubā*; imperative of first conjugation, as *portā*; most uninflected words, as *posteā*, *intrā*, but not so *ita*.

2. Final *e* is *short*, as *mīlite*: except ablative of fifth declension, as *spē*; imperative of second conjugation, as

dēlē; most adverbs derived from adjectives of second declension, as *māximē*.

3. Final *i* is *long*, as *flūminī*: except *nisi*, *cui*; final *i* is common in *mihī*, *tibī*, *sibī*, *ibī*, *ubī*.

4. Final *o* is *long*, as *pōnō*: except *homo*, *ego*, *modo*, *octo*, *duo*.

5. Final *u* is always *long*, as *adventū*.

## 502. Quantity of final syllables ending in a consonant.—

1. All final syllables ending in a *single* consonant *other than s* are *short*, as *amātur*, *reget*.

2. Of final syllables in *s*, *as*, *es*, *os* are *long*, *is*, *us*, *ys* are *short*.

3. Final *as* is *long*, as *tubās*, *audiās*.

4. Final *es* is *long*, as *amēs*, *diēs*: except nominative and vocative singular, third declension, where the genitive ending is *-etis*, *-idis*, *-itis*, as *obses*, *mīles*; *es* (from *sum*) and compounds of *sum*, as *potes*.

5. Final *os* is *long*, as *virōs*.

6. Final *is* is *short*, as *militis*, *amātis*: except dative and ablative plural, as *puerīs*, *altīs*; accusative plural, third declension, as *finīs* (= *finēs*); second person singular, present indicative active, fourth conjugation, as *audīs*; *vīs* (noun and verb from *volō*), *fīs*, *sīs*, *velīs*, *nōlīs*, *mālīs*, *possīs*, and *īs* (from *eō*).

7. Final *us* is *short*, as *mūrus*, *amātus*: except genitive singular, and nominative and accusative plural, fourth declension, as *exercitūs*; nominative third declension, when long *u* occurs in the genitive, as *virtūs*, *virtūtis*.

503. Quantity of monosyllables.—1. All monosyllables that end in a *vowel* are *long*, as *ā*, *sī*, *dē*, *sē*, etc.: except the enclitic *que*.

2. Declined or conjugated monosyllables that end in a *consonant* follow the rules given.

3. Monosyllabic nouns and adjectives have a *long* vowel in the nominative when they end in a *consonant*, as *mōs*, *sōl*, *pēs*, *pār*: but not so *vir*.

4. Monosyllabic *particles* that end in a consonant are *short*, as *cis*, *in*, *nec*, *per*, etc.: except *nōn*, *quīn*, and adverbs in *e*, as *sic*.

**504. Quantity of verb stems and endings.**—1. A vowel is always *short* before final *m*, *r*, and *t*.

2. A vowel is always *short* before another vowel (except in certain forms of *fiō*), *nd*, and *nt*.

3. Final *a*, *i*, *o*, and *u* are *long*; final *e* is *short*, except in the imperative active, second person singular, in the second conjugation; as, *monē*.

4. Before final *s*, *a* and *e* are *long*; *i* and *u* are *short*, except that in the present indicative active, second person singular, in the fourth conjugation, *ī* is long; as, *audīs*: see also (502), 6.

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

- ā, ab**, prep. + *abl.*, *from, by* ;  
 chapt. 7 (last sentence), *away*.  
**abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditum**,  
*hide*.  
**absum, abesse, āfuī, be distant**.  
**ac** (before consonants only), conj.,  
*and* ; chapt. 19 (first sentence),  
*than*.  
**accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum**,  
*go towards, approach* ; chapt.  
 13 (with *ad* + *acc.*) ; chapt. 7,  
*be inspired in* (with *dat.*).  
**accidō, -cidere, -cidī, (no supine)**,  
*happen*.  
**accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum**,  
*receive, accept* ; chapt. 33, *suffer*.  
**acclivis, -is, -e, adj.** (of two ter-  
 minations), *sloping upward*.  
**acclivitās, -tātis, fem.**, *slope (up-  
 ward)*.  
**accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**,  
*adjust, fit, put on*.  
**acervus, -ī, mas.**, *a pile, a heap*.  
**aciēs, -ēī, fem.**, *line of battle, an  
 army*.  
**ācritēr, adv.**, *sharply, desperately*.  
**ad**, prep. + *acc.*, *to, towards, near* ;  
*ad* + gerundive, *for* ; chapt. 1,  
*ad eōs, against them* ; chapt. 31,  
*according to*.  
**adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, make**  
*equal to, equal*.  
**addūcō**, see *dūcō, lead to, bring,*  
*lead* (with *ad* + *acc.*).  
**adeō, -īre, -īvī -īī, -itum, go to** ;  
 chapt. 7, *reach*.  
**adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum**,  
*throw to, hurl*.  
**aditus, -ūs, mas.**, *access, approach,*  
*admittance*.  
**adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum**,  
*aid, help*.  
**administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**,  
*execute, attend to*.  
**adorior, -orīrī, -ortussum, depon.**,  
*rise up against, attack*.  
**Aduatuci, -ōrum, mas.**, a Belgic  
 tribe living on the west bank  
 of the Meuse.  
**adventus, -ūs, mas.**, *approach,*  
*arrival*.  
**adversus, -a, -um, adj.**, *opposite* ;  
*literally, turned to or towards*.  
**aedificium, -ī, neut.**, *a building*.  
**aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, build**  
**Aeduī, -ōrum, mas.**, a Gallic  
 tribe living between the upper  
 waters of the Saone and Loire.  
**Aeduus, -a, -um, adj.**, *Aeduan*.  
**aegrē, adv.**, *with difficulty, barely*.  
**aequālīter, adv.**, *uniformly,*  
*evenly*.  
**aestās, -tātis, fem.**, *summer*.  
**aestuārium, -ī, neut.**, *a sea-marsh* ;

literally, *relating to the tide or sea.*

aetās, -tātis, fem., *age, old age.*

afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum, *bring to, carry to.*

affinitās, -tātis, fem., *relationship (by marriage).*

ager, agrī, mas., *a field, land (which is cultivated).*

agger, aggeris, mas., *a mound, materials for a mound (chapt. 20).*

aggredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, depon., *approach, attack.*

agmen, -minis, neut., *the line of march (the marching column).*

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *drive; chapt. 12, 30, bring up; 20, do; 21, carry.*

aliās . . . aliās, adv., *at one time . . . at another.*

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj., *another's, of others.*

aliter, adv., *otherwise.*

alius, alia, aliud, adj., *other, another, different; alius aliam in partem, one in one direction, another in another.*

alter, -era, -erum, adj., *the other (of two); other, another.*

altitudō, -dinis, fem., *height.*

altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, tall, deep.*

Ambiānī, -ōrum, mas., *a Belgic tribe, from whose name is derived the modern Amiens.*

amicitia, -ae, fem., *friendship.*

amicus, -ī, mas., *a friend.*

amicus, -a, -um, adj., *friendly.*

āmittō, see mittō, *lose, let go (away).*

amplificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *increase.*

amplius, neut. compar., used adverbially or as noun, *more.*

Andēs, -ium, mas., *a Gallic tribe north of the Loire.*

Andocumborius, -ī, mas., *a chief man among the Remi.*

angustus, -a, -um, adj., *narrow, difficult; chapt. 25, in angustō, at a crisis.*

animus, -ī, mas., *mind, courage, feelings; chapt. 1, character.*

annus, -ī, mas., *a year.*

ante, adv., *formerly; prep. + acc., before (of place and time).*

antiquitus, adv., *in olden times.*

apertus, -a, -um, adj., *open; chapt. 23, exposed, unprotected.*

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *call (name); chapt. 25, address.*

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to draw near, approach.*

apud, prep. + acc., *near, among.*

arbitror, -trārī, -trātus sum, depon., *think, suppose.*

arbor, arboris, fem., *a tree.*

arcessō, -cessere, -cessivī, -cessitum, *summon, invite.*

arduus, -a, -um, adj., *high, difficult (of ascent), steep.*

ariēs, -ietis, mas., *a battering ram*

arma, -ōrum, neut., *arms, weapons.*

armātūra, -ae, fem., *equipment.*

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *arm equip.*

ascendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēns sum, *climb, ascend.*

ascēnsus, -ūs, mas., *an ascent;*

chapt. 33, *the way up, means of ascent.*

at, conj., *but.*

atque, conj., *and also, and;*  
chapt. 6, *as.*

Atrebātēs, -um, mas., a tribe in  
Northeastern Gaul.

attingō, -tingere, attigī, attāc-  
tum, *touch upon, reach, border*  
*upon.*

auctōritās, -tātis, fem., *influence,*  
*power, authority* (not military  
or political).

audācter, adv., *boldly.*

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, semi-  
depon., *dare, venture.*

audiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, *listen to;*  
chapt. 12, *hear;* 31, *hear of or*  
*about.*

Aulerci, -ōrum, mas., a people  
of Central Gaul, consisting of  
several tribes.

Aurunculēius, -ī, mas., a lieu-  
tenant of Caesar.

aut, conj., *or;* aut . . . aut, *either*  
*. . . or.*

autem, conj., *but, moreover.*

auxilia, -ōrum, neut., *auxiliaries*  
(as opposed to the regular  
heavy-armed Roman infantry).

auxilium, -ī, neut., *help, aid,*  
*assistance.*

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -ver-  
sum, *turn away from.*

Axona, -ae, fem., a river of  
Northern Gaul (now called  
Aisne) flowing into the Isara.

Baculus, -ī, mas., a centurion in  
Caesar's army.

Baleāris, -is, -e, adj., *Balearic;*  
the Balearic islands, famous  
for their slingers, lie in the  
Mediterranean off the coast of  
Spain.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *barba-*  
*rian;* plur., *the barbarians*  
(used of the Gauls).

Belgae, -ārum, mas., *the Bel-*  
*gians*, a warlike people in the  
northern part of Gaul.

Bellovacī, -ōrum, mas., a pow-  
erful Belgic tribe, between the  
Seine and the Oise.

bellum, -ī, neut., *war.*

Bibrax, -actis, fem., a town of  
the Remi.

Boduōgnātus, -ī, mas., a leader  
of the Nervii.

Bratuspantium, -ī, neut., a town  
of the Bellovaci.

brevitās, -tātis, fem., *shortness;*  
with temporis, *want of time.*

Britannia, -ae, fem., *Britain.*

cadāver, -eris, neut., *a dead*  
*body.*

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum,  
*fall, be killed.*

Caeroesī, -ōrum, mas., a tribe  
in Northern Gaul.

Caesar, -aris, mas., *Caesar,*  
Caius Julius Caesar, conqueror  
of Gaul.

calamitās, -tātis, fem., *calamity,*  
*disaster.*

Caletī, -ōrum, mas., a tribe in  
Normandy, on the Seine.

cālō, -ōnis, mas., *a camp-servant,*  
*groom.*

- captivus**, -a, -um, adj., *taken captive*; mas. as noun, *captive, prisoner*.
- caput**, **capitis**, neut., *the head*; less exactly, *person*.
- Carnutēs**, -um, mas., *a tribe in Central Gaul*.
- castellum**, -ī, neut., *a redoubt, stronghold*.
- castra**, -ōrum, neut., *a camp*.
- cāsus**, -ūs, mas., *event*; chapt. 21, *chance*; 31, *misfortune*.
- causa**, -ae, fem., *a cause, a reason*; *causā*, *for the sake of*, used like a prep., following the genitive.
- cēdō**, **cēdere**, **cessī**, **cessum**, *retreat, give way*.
- celeritās**, -tātis, fem., *swiftness, quickness*.
- celeriter**, adv., *quickly, speedily*.
- cēlō**, -āre, -āvi, ātum, *conceal, hide*.
- centum**, indeclin. num. adj., *a hundred*.
- centuriō**, -ōnis, mas., *a centurion*; a subordinate officer commanding a century (a hundred men).
- certus**, -a, -um, adj., *certain*; **certiōrem** (-ēs) **facere**, *inform* (with acc. + infin.).
- (**cēterus**), -a, -um, adj., *the rest of*; usually plur. as noun, *the rest*.
- Cimbri**, -ōrum, mas., *a German tribe in Jutland, defeated by Marius B.C. 101*.
- circiter**, adv., *about, not far from*.
- circuitus**, -ūs, mas., *a circuit, a circumference*.
- circum**, prep. + acc., *around, about*.
- circumdō**, see **dō**, *put around*; less exactly, *surround*.
- circumiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *place around, throw around*.
- circummūniō**, see **mūniō**, *fortify around, fortify*.
- circumveniō**, see **veniō**, *surround, outflank*.
- cis**, prep. + acc., *on this side of*.
- citerior**, -ior, -ius, adj. (comparative — two terminations), *hither, nearer*.
- citrā**, prep. + acc., *on this side of*.
- civitās**, -tātis, fem., *a state*.
- clāmor**, ōris, mas., *a shout*.
- claudō**, **claudere**, **clausī**, **clausum**, *close, bring up*.
- clēmentia**, -ae, fem., *kindness, clemency*.
- coacervō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *pile up*.
- coepī**, **coepisse**, **coeptus sum**, *began*.
- cōgnōscō**, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum, *find out, ascertain*.
- cōgō**, **cōgere**, **coēgī**, **coāctum**, *collect, assemble, force*.
- cohors**, -hortis, fem., *a cohort* (the tenth part of a legion).
- cohortātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *an encouraging, encouragement*.
- cohortor**, -tārī, -tātus sum, *depon.*, *encourage, urge*.
- collis**, -is, mas., *a hill*.
- comes**, **comitis**, mas., *a comrade*.

- commeātus, -ūs, mas., *supplies, provisions.*
- commemorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *remind one of, state, relate.*
- committō, see mittō, *join*; with proelium, *begin the battle.*
- commodē, adv., *easily, readily.*
- commoveō, see moveō, *alarm, disturb.*
- commūnis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *common, general.*
- commūtātiō, -ōnis, fem., *a change.*
- comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *prepare, get ready.*
- compellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *drive together, drive.*
- compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, *fill.*
- complūrēs, -rēs, -ria (-ra), adj. (of two terminations), *very many, a great many.*
- concīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *cut to pieces.*
- concilium, -ī, neut., *a council* (of war), *an assembly.*
- concurrō, -currere, -curri (-curri), -cursum, *run together, rush up.*
- condiciō, -ōnis, fem., *terms, condition.*
- Condrūsī, -ōrum, mas., *a Belgic tribe on the Meuse.*
- condūcō, see dūcō, *bringt together, hire.*
- cōnferō, -ferre, -tuli, collātum, *bring together, collect*; sē cōnferre, *betake one's self.*
- cōnfectus, -a, -um, adj., *crowded, dense.*
- cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *accomplish*; chapt. 4, *raise*; 23, 25, 27, *exhaust.*
- cōnfidō, -fidere, -fīsus sum, semi-depon., *believe in, trust.*
- cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *establish*; chapt. 15, *assure*; 19, *encourage.*
- cōnfligō, -fligere, -flīxī, -flīctum, *fight, contend.*
- congregior, -gredi, -gressus sum, depon., *engage* (in battle), *fight.*
- cōniciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw together*; chapt. 6, 27, *hurt*; 23, *drive*; 16, 28, *place.*
- coniungō, -iungere, -iūnxī, -iūnc-tum, *join, unite.*
- coniūrō, -iūrāre, -iūrāvi, -iūrā-tum, *conspire, swear together.*
- conlocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *place, station* (of troops).
- cōnor, -nārī, -nātus sum, depon., *attempt, undertake, try.*
- cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, adj., *akin* (by blood); plur. as noun, *kinsmen.*
- cōnscrībō, see scrībō, *enroll, enlist.*
- cōnsēnsus, -ūs, mas., *consent, agreement.*
- cōnsentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēn-sum, *agree, combine, conspire.*
- cōnsequor, see sequor, depon., *follow, secure, obtain.*
- cōnservō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *spare, save.*
- cōnsidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum, *settle, encamp.*
- cōnsilium, -ī, neut., *wise counsel, a plan*; chapt. 17, *a suggestion.*

- cōnsimilis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *very like, quite similar*.
- cōnsistō, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum, *halt, make a stand*; chapt. 33, *depend upon*.
- cōnspectus, -ūs, mas., *sight, view*.
- cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spēxi, -spectum, *see, behold*.
- cōnspicor, -cāri, -cātus sum, depon., *see, observe*.
- cōnstanter, adv., *uniformly, steadily*.
- cōnstituō, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtum, *decide*; chapt. 12, 30, *set up*; 8, 19, *arrange, station*.
- cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, *become accustomed*; in the perf. tenses, *be accustomed*.
- cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, fem., *custom, habit*.
- contemptus, -ūs, mas., *contempt, scorn*.
- contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *struggle, fight, hasten*.
- contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *hold in, keep* (within bounds), *keep*.
- contrā, adv. and prep. + acc., *against, in opposition*.
- contrārius, -a, -um, adj., *opposite*.
- contumēlia, -ae, fem., *an insult, an outrage*.
- conveniō, see veniō, *meet, assemble*; chapt. 19, *be agreed upon*.
- convertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *turn*; signa *convertere*, *face about*.
- convocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *summon, call together*.
- cōpia, -ae, fem., *an abundance, plenty*; (plur.) *forces*.
- cornū, -ūs, neut., *a horn, a wing* (of an army).
- corpus, -oris, neut., *the body*; chapt. 10, 27, *a (dead) body*.
- cortex, -ticis, mas. and fem., *bark*.
- cotidiē, adv., *daily, every day*.
- Cotta, -ae, mas., *a lieutenant of Caesar*.
- Crassus, -ī, mas., *a son of the Triumvir and a lieutenant in Caesar's army*.
- crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *frequent, numerous, thick*.
- crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum, *believe, trust*.
- Crēs, Crētis, mas., *a Cretan* (an inhabitant of Crete).
- cruciātus, -ūs, mas., *torture, suffering*.
- cum, prep. + abl., *with*; conj., *when, while, after, since*; chapt. 29, second sentence, *although*; cum primum, *as soon as*.
- cūctus, -a, -um, adj., *all, all together*.
- cupiō, cupere, -pīvi, -pītum, *desire eagerly, be eager*.
- Curiosolitēs, -um, mas., *a people of the West of Gaul*.
- cursus, -ūs, mas., *a running, speed*.
- custōdia, -ae, fem., *protection, guard* (the state of being guarded).

- dē, prep. + *abl.*, from, with respect to; chapt. 7, about, for; 32, from.
- dēbeō, -bēre, -buī, -bitum, owe, ought, must.
- decem, indecl. num. adj., ten.
- dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, decree, decide.
- dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, contend, fight.
- decimus, -a, -um, num. adj., tenth.
- dēclivis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), sloping down.
- decumānus, -a, -um, adj., decuman (belonging to the tenth): porta decumāna, the rear gate of the camp, near which the tenth legion was posted.
- dēcurrō, -currere, -currī (-currī), -cursum, run down.
- dēditicius, -a, -um, adj., surrendered; chapt. 17, as noun, prisoners; 32, subjects.
- dēditio, -ōnis, fem., surrender.
- dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum, surrender.
- dēdūcō, see dūcō, lead down or away; chapt. 10, 31, bring; 33, take away; 35, place.
- dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsūm, defend, protect.
- dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, fem., a defence, a protection.
- dēfēnsor, -ōris, mas., a defender.
- dēferō, see ferō, carry down, report; chapt. 4, confer, bestow.
- dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, fail, fall away; chapt. 14, revolt.
- dēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, throw down.
- dēiectus, -ūs, mas., a slope, a declivity.
- deinde, adv., then, next.
- dēleō, -lēre, -lēvī, -lētum, destroy.
- dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, choose, select.
- dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, explain, show, state.
- dēnique, adv., at last, finally; chapt. 33, at any rate.
- dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., dense, thick.
- dēpōnō, see pōnō, lay down (aside).
- dēpopulor, -lārī, -lātus sum, depop., lay waste.
- dēprecor, -cārī, -cātus sum, depop., avert by prayer, beseech, beg.
- dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, desert, abandon, give up.
- dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, stop, desist from, cease.
- dēspectus, -ūs, mas., a view (from above), a prospect.
- dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, give up hope; chapt. 24, despair of.
- dēspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, despoil, strip, deprive.
- dēsum, -esse, -fui, be lacking, be wanting.
- dēterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, frighten off, prevent.
- dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum, take, snatch (away).
- dētrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsum, remove, slip off.

**dēveniō**, see **veniō**, *come away, come* (from one place to another).

**dexter**, -tra, -trum, adj., *right*.

**diciō**, -ōnis, fem., *control, sway*.

**dicō**, **dicere**, **dixī**, **dictum**, *say, mention, speak*.

**diēs**, -ēī, mas. and fem., *a day*.

**difficilis**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *difficult*.

**difficultās**, -tātis, fem., *difficulty*.

**diligenter**, adv., *carefully, with care*.

**dīmētiōr**, -mētīrī, -mēnsus sum, depon., *measure, measure off*.

**dīmiciō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight, contend* (to a finish).

**dīmittō**, see **mittō**, *let go away, send out, dismiss*.

**dīripiō**, -ripere, -ripiū, -reptum, *plunder, pillage*.

**discēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *depart*.

**discessus**, -ūs, mas., *a departure*.

**dissipō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *scatter, disperse*.

**distineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *keep apart, separate, divide*.

**diū**, adv., *for a long time*; **diūtius**, *longer*.

**dīversus**, -a, -um, adj., *diverse*; chapt. 22, *separated*; 23, *different*; 24, *routed*.

**dīvinus**, -a, -um, adj., *divine*.

**Dīvitiācus**, -ī, mas., a leader of the Aedui, brother of Dumnorix.

**dō**, **dare**, **dedī**, **datum**, *give*; **obsidēs inter sē dare**, *exchange hostages*.

**doceō**, -cēre, -cuī, **doctum**,

*teach*; chapt. 5, *explain*; 20, *direct*.

**domesticus**, -a, -um, adj., (*of the house*), *domestic, native*.

**domicilium**, -ī, neut., *an abode, a dwelling-place*.

**dominor**, -nārī, -nātus sum, depon., *rule*.

**domus**, -ūs, (-ī), fem., *a home, a house*; locative **domī**, *at home*.

**dubitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *have doubt*; with the infin., *hesitate*; with the subjunc., *doubt*.

**ducentī**, -ae, -a, num. adj., *two hundred*.

**dūcō**, **dūcere**, **dūxī**, **ductum**, *lead, conduct*.

**dum**, conj., *while*.

**duo**, -duae, -duo, num. adj., *two*.

**duodecimus**, -a, -um, num. adj., *twelfth*.

**duodēviginti**, indecl. num. adj., *eighteen*.

**duplex**, gen. **duplicis**, adj. of one termination, *double, two-fold*.

**dux**, **ducis**, mas., *a leader, a guide, a commander*.

**ē**, **ex**, prep. + *abl.*, *from, out of*; chapt. 6, second sent., *after*.

**Eburōnēs**, -um, mas., a Belgic tribe situated between the Meuse and the Rhine.

**ēditus**, -a, -um, adj., *raised, elevated*.

**ēdūcō**, see **dūcō**, *lead out, lead forth*.

**efficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *accomplish, bring (it) about*.

**ēgredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, depon., *go forth, march out.*

**ēgregiō**, adv., *remarkably, excellently.*

**ēligō**, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *select, choose.*

**ēmittō**, see mittō, *let go, hurl.*

**emō**, **emere**, **ēmī**, **ēemptum**, *buy.*

**ēnāscor**, -nāscī, -nātus sum, depon., *grow out, sprout forth.*

**enim**, conj., *for.*

**eō**, adv., *thither, there.*

**eō**, **ire**, **ivī** (ii), **itum**, *go.*

**eques**, **equitis**, mas., *a horse-man*, plur., *cavalry* (consisting of Roman troops).

**equester**, -tris, -tre, gen., **equestris**, adj. (of three terminations), *of cavalry, cavalry.*

**equitātus**-ūs, mas., *cavalry.*

**ergō**, adv., *therefore, then.*

**ēruptiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a sally, a sortie.*

**Esuvii**, -ōrum, mas., *a Gallic tribe in Normandy.*

**et**, conj., *and; et . . . et, both . . . and.*

**etiam**, conj., *also, even.*

**ēventus**, -ūs, mas., *result, issue.*

**ex**, see ē.

**exagitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *harass, persecute.*

**exanimō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *make breathless, exhaust.*

**exaudiō**, see audiō, *hear distinctly.*

**excēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *withdraw, retire.*

**excursiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a sally.*

**excūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *excuse.*

**exeō**, -īre, -ivī -iī, -itum, *go out, go forth.*

**exercitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *train, drill.*

**exercitus**, -ūs, mas., *an army.*

**exiguitās**, -tātis, fem., *scantiness; with temporis, want of time.*

**eximius**, -a, -um, adj., *excellent, remarkable.*

**existimō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *think, suppose, believe.*

**expeditus**, -a, -um, adj., *unincumbered, light-armed.*

**expellō**, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *drive out.*

**experior**, -perīrī, -pertus sum, depon., *try, risk.*

**explōrātor**, -tōris, mas., *a scout.*

**explorō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *search, find out.*

**expūgnō**, see pūgnō, *storm.*

**exspectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *await, wait to see (sī, whether, etc.).*

**exstruō**, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *pile up, build up.*

**extrēmus**, -a, -um, adj., *farthest.*

**facile**, adv., *easily.*

**facilis**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *easy.*

**faciō**, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factum**, *make, do.*

**facultās**, -tātis, fem., *opportunity; chapt. 1, means.*

**fallō**, **fallere**, **fefellī**, **falsum**, *fail, deceive, disappoint.*

**fastigātus**, -a, -um, adj., *sloping, inclined.*

**ferāx**, gen., **ferācis**, adj. (of one termination), *fertile*.

**ferē**, adv., *nearby, almost*.

**ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, *carry, bear, endure*.

**fertilitās**, **-tātis**, fem., *fertility, productiveness*.

**ferus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *wild, fierce*.

**fidēs**, **-eī**, fem., *faith, confidence, protection*.

**filius**, **-ī**, mas., *a son*.

**fīnis**, **-is**, mas., *an end*; (plur.) *boundaries, territory*.

**fīnitimus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *neighbouring*; mas. plur. as noun, *neighbours*.

**fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum**, *be made, happen, become*.

**flūmen**, **-minis**, neut., *a river*.

**fors**, **fortis**, fem., *chance, fate*.

**forte**, old abl. as adv., *by chance*.

**fortis**, **-is**, **-e**, adj. (of two terminations), *brave, courageous*.

**fortiter**, adv., *bravely*.

**fortūna**, **-ae**, fem., *fortune, fate*.

**fossa**, **-ae**, fem., *a ditch, a trench*.

**frāter**, **frātris**, mas., *a brother*.

**fremitus**, **-ūs**, mas., *a noise, an uproar*.

**frōns**, **frontis**, fem., *brow, front*; **ā fronte**, *in front*.

**frūmentārius**, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *of grain*; **rēs frūmentāria**, fem., *supply*.

**frūmentum**, **-ī**, neut., *corn, grain*.

**fuga**, **-ae**, fem., *flight*.

**fugiō**, **fugere**, **fūgī**, **fugitum**, *flee, fly, escape*.

**fugō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, *rout, put to flight*.

**fūmus**, **-ī**, mas., *smoke*.

**funditor**, **-tōris**, mas., *a slinger*.

**furor**, **-ōris**, mas., *madness, frenzy*.

**Galba**, **ae**, mas., *a legatus of Caesar*; chapt. 4, 13, *King of the Suessiones*.

**galea**, **-ae**, fem., *a helmet* (of leather, worn by cavalry).

**Gallia**, **-ae**, fem., *Gaul* (country occupying all Northern Italy).

**Gallus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *of Gaul*; as noun, *a Gaul, the Gauls*.

**gēns**, **gentis**, fem., *a tribe, a class*.

**Germānus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *German*; plur. as noun, *the Germans*.

**gerō**, **gerere**, **gessī**, **gestum**, *carry on, wage* (war).

**gladius**, **-ī**, mas., *a sword*.

**grātia**, **-ae**, fem., *favor, influence, popularity*.

**gravis**, **-is**, **-e**, adj. (of two terminations), *heavy, severe, serious*.

**habeō**, **-bēre**, **-buī**, **-bitum**, *have, hold, possess*.

**hibernācula**, **-ōrum**, neut., *winter-quarters*.

**hibernus**, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *of winter*; neut. plur. (with *castra*), *winter-quarters*.

**hīc**, **haec**, **hōc**, *demons. pron., this, he, etc.*

**hiemō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, *winter, pass the winter*.

**homō**, **hominis**, mas., *a man*.

**honor**, **-ōris**, mas., *honor, respect*.

**hostis, -is, mas.,** *an enemy (of the state), the enemy.*

**iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, iacitum,** *lie, lie dead;* chapt. 27, **iacentibus,** (pres. participle), *the slain.*

**iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum,** *hurl;* chapt. 12, *throw up.*

**iam, adv.,** *now, already.*

**ibi, adv.,** *there.*

**Iccius, -ī, mas.,** *a nobleman of the Remi.*

**idem, eadem, idem,** *demons. pron., the same.*

**identidem, adv.,** *again and again.*

**idōneus, -a, -um, adj.,** *suitable, fit.*

**ignis, -is, mas.,** *fire;* chapt. 7, *camp-fire;* 33, *signal-fire.*

**ille, illa, illud,** *demons. pron., he, that.*

**Illyricum, -ī, neut.,** *Illyria (country east of the Adriatic, belonging to Caesar's province).*

**impedimentum, -ī, neut.,** *a hindrance;* plur., *baggage, baggage-train, pack-animals.*

**impediō, -dīre, -dīvī, -dītum,** *entangle, hinder.*

**impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum,** *drive on, incite, influence.*

**imperātor, -tōris, mas.,** *a commander (in chief), a general.*

**imperātum, -ī, neut.,** *a command, an order.*

**imperium, -ī, neut.,** *command, control, power.*

**imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *command, require, direct.*

**impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *obtain*

*(a request), obtain (anything by a request).*

**impetus, -ūs, mas.,** *an attack, a charge;* chapt. 6, *fury.*

**imprōvisus, -a, -um, adj.,** *unforeseen;* **dē imprōvisō,** *unexpectedly.*

**in, prep. + acc and abl.;** with acc., *into, against, upon* (with verbs of motion); with abl., *in, on, among;* chapt. 32, *in the case of.*

**incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēsum,** *burn, set fire to.*

**incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsum,** *fall in with, befall, happen.*

**incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum,** *notch, cut into.*

**incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** *begin.*

**incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *urge on;* **incitātō cursū,** *at full speed.*

**incolō, -colere, -coluī, (no supine),** *inhabit, live.*

**incrēdibilis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations),** *incredible, marvellous.*

**increpitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *taunt, upbraid.*

**incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** *blame, chide.*

**inde, adv.,** *thence, after that, then.*

**indignitās, -tātis, fem.,** *disgrace, outrage.*

**indiligenter, adv.,** *carelessly, negligently.*

**indūcō, see dūcō,** *draw on, cover.*

**induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum,** *put on.*

- ineō, -ire, -ivī (-iī), -itum**, *enter upon, undertake, begin.*
- inermis, -is, -e**, adj. (of two terminations), *unarmed.*
- inferior, -ior, -ius**, adj. (comparative—two terminations), *lower*; chapt. 8, *inferior.*
- inferō, -ferre, -tulī, illātum**, *bring in*; chapt. 14, *bring upon*; 15, *import*; 25, (signa) *inferre, carry forward*; 25, (spē) *illātā, inspire in*; 29, *wage*; 32, *inflict.*
- infimus, -a, -um**, adj., *lowest*; chapt. 18, *at the bottom.*
- inflectō, -flectere, -flēxī, -flexum**, *bend down.*
- ingredior, -gredī, -gressus sum**, depon., *enter, march in.*
- inimicus, -a, -um**, adj., *unfriendly*; as noun, *an enemy* (personal).
- iniquitās, -tātis**, fem., *unevenness, inequality.*
- iniquus, -a, -um**, adj., *unfavourable, unfair.*
- initium, -ī, neut.**, *a beginning.*
- iniūria, -ae**, fem., *injustice, wrong.*
- innitor, -nitī, -nisus (-nixus) sum**, depon., *lean upon.*
- insequor**, see **sequor**, depon., *pursue, follow up.*
- insidiae, -ārum**, fem., *an ambush, a trap.*
- insigne, -is**, neut., *a badge, a decoration.*
- insistō, -sistere, -stitī**, (no supine), *stand upon.*
- instar**, neut. indeclin. (*an image*); *like, in the manner of* (with gen.).
- instō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum**, *press forward, press on.*
- instruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum**, *draw up* (of troops); chapt. 30, *build.*
- intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum**, *know, learn.*
- inter**, prep. + acc., *between, among.*
- intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum**, *go between, move between.*
- intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum**, *intercept* (obstruct in motion).
- interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum**, *cut off, shut off.*
- intereā**, adv., *meanwhile, in the mean time.*
- interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum**, *kill, put to death.*
- intericiō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum**, *throw in* (between); chapt. 17, *place among*; 22, *intervene.*
- interim**, adv., *meanwhile.*
- interior, -ior, -ius**, adj. (comparative—two terminations), *interior, inner.*
- intermittō**, see **mittō**, *cease, discontinue.*
- interneciō, -ōnis**, fem., *extermination, annihilation.*
- interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum**, *cut down, demolish.*
- intersum**, see **sum**, *be between*; **impers.**, *it concerns* (with gen.).
- intervāllum, -ī, neut.**, *distance* (between two things).

intexō, -texere, -texuī -textum, *weave together.*

intrā, prep. + acc., *within.*

intrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *enter, penetrate.*

intrōdūcō, see dūcō, *lead in, bring in.*

intrōmittō, see mittō, *let go in, send in.*

intrōrsus, adv., *within, inside.*

inūsītātus, -a, -um, adj., *unusual, unthought.*

inūtilis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *useless; chapt. 16, incapable.*

inveniō, see veniō, *come upon, find, learn.*

inveterāscō, -rāscere, -rāvī, (no supine), *grow old in, gain a firm footing.*

invideō, see videō, *envy (with dat), be jealous of.*

ipse, -a, -um, intensive pron., *he, self.*

irrideō, -ridēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *laugh at, taunt.*

is, ea, id, demons. or personal pron., *he, that.*

ita, adv., *thus, so; chapt. 1, ita utī, as, just as.*

Italia, -ae, fem., *Italy.*

itaque, adv., *therefore.*

item, adv., *likewise.*

iter, itineris, neut., *a road, a march; iter facere, to march.*

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *order, bid, command.*

iūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *judge, think, decide.*

iugum, -ī, neut., *a yoke; a ridge (of a row or chain of hills).*

iūs, iūris, neut., *right, justice, law.*

iūstitia, -ae, fem., *justice, fair dealing.*

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum, *aid, help, assist.*

iūxtā, adv., *near by, next.*

**L**, initial letter of Lūcius.

Labiēnus, -ī, mas., *a legatus of Caesar in Gaul.*

lapis, lapidis, mas., *a stone.*

lassitūdō, -dinis, fem., *fatigue.*

lateō, -tēre, -tuī, (no supine), *lie concealed, be concealed.*

lātītūdō, -dinis, fem., *width, breadth.*

lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide.*

latus, -eris, neut., *the side; ab latere, on the flank.*

laxō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *open out, widen, extend.*

lēgātiō, -ōnis, fem., *an embassy, a legation.*

lēgātus, -ī, mas., *an ambassador, an envoy, a lieutenant.*

legiō, -ōnis, fem., *a legion.*

legiōnārius, -a, -um, adj., *legionary, of a legion.*

lēniter, adv., *gently.*

levis, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *light.*

levitās, -tātis, fem., *lightness, fickleness, inconstancy.*

lēx, lēgis, fem., *a law, a statute.*

liberāliter, adv., *kindly, generously.*

liberī, -ōrum, mas., *children (of free parents).*

**littera**, -ae, fem., *a letter* (of the alphabet); plur., *letters, letter* (an epistle).

**locus**, -ī, mas., *a place*; neut. plur., *loca*, -ōrum; chapt. 26, *condition*.

**longē**, adv., *far, at a distance*.

**longus**, -a, -um, adj., *long*.

**loquor**, **loquī**, **locūtus sum**, **depon.**, *speak, talk*.

**Lūcius**, -ī, mas., *a Roman praenomen* (the first name).

**lūx**, **lūcis**, fem., *light*; **primā lūce**, *at early dawn, at day-break*.

**lūxuria**, -ae, fem., *luxury*.

**māchinātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a machine, an engine, a contrivance*.

**magis**, adv., *more, rather*; **magis . . . quam**, *rather . . . than*.

**magistrātus**, -ūs, mas., *a magistracy, a magistrate*.

**māgnitūdō**, -dinis, fem., *greatness, size*.

**māgnopere**, adv., *very much, very earnestly*; **māgnō opere** (see **opus**).

**māgnus**, -a, -um, adj., *great, large*.

**māior**, **māior**, **māius**, adj., *greater*; **māiōrēs** (**nātū**), *elders*.

**maleficium**, -ī, neut., *harm, mischief*.

**mālō**, **mālle**, **māluī**, (no supine), *prefer, wish rather*.

**mandō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *direct, instruct*; chapt. 24, *consign*.

**manipulus**, -ī, mas., *a company* (a third of a cohort), *a manipule*.

**mānsuētūdō**, -dinis, fem., *kindness, gentleness*.

**manus**, -ūs, fem., *the hand*; *a band, a company*.

**maritimus**, -a, -um, adj., *maritime, of the sea*.

**mātūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *hasten, make haste*.

**māximē**, adv., *especially, very*.

**medius**, -a, -um, adj., *middle of*.

**memoria**, -ae, fem., *memory, recollection*.

**Menapii**, -ōrum, mas., *a Gallic tribe between the Meuse and the Scheldt*.

**mercātor**, -tōris, mas., *a trader* (who carries his own goods abroad).

**meritum**, -ī, neut., *merit, desert*.

**miles**, -itis, mas., *a soldier*.

**militāris**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *of the soldiers, military*; see **rēs**.

**mille**, indecl. num. adj., *a thousand*; plur. as noun, **mīlia**, **mīlium**.

**minimē**, adv., *least, very little*.

**minus**, neuter acc. of the comparative minor, used as an adv., *less*; chapt. 9, *not*.

**miser**, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched, miserable*.

**misericordia**, -ae, fem., *pity, clemency, compassion*.

**mittō**, **mittere**, **misi**, **missum**, *send, despatch*.

**mōbilitās**, -tātis, fem., *inconstancy, mobility*.

**modo**, adv., *merely, only*; **nōn modo**, *not only*.

**modus**, -ī, mas., *manner*; **ad hunc modum**, *after this fashion*.

**moenia**, -ium, neut., *fortifications, walls* (of a city).

**molestē** adv., *heavily*; **molestē ferre**, *be vexed or annoyed*.

**moneō**, **monēre**, **monuī**, **monitum**, *direct, advise, warn*.

**mōns**, **montis**, mas., *a mountain*.

**mora**, -ae, fem., *delay*.

**Morini**, -ōrum, mas., *a Belgic tribe on the seacoast opposite Kent*.

**moror**, -rārī, -rātus sum, depon., *delay, linger, stay*.

**mōs**, **mōris**, mas., *custom*; plur., *habits, character*.

**moveō**, **movēre**, **mōvī**, **mōtum**, *move*; **castra movēre**, *break camp*.

**mulier**, -eris, fem., *a woman*.

**multitūdō**, -dinis, fem., *a multitude, a great number*.

**multus**, -a, -um, adj., *much, many*.

**mūnimentum**, -ī, neut., *a defence, a fortification*.

**mūniō**, -īre, -ivī, -itum, *fortify*; with **castra**, *make*.

**mūnitiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a fortification, works*.

**mūrus**, -ī, mas., *a wall* (a city wall).

**nam**, conj., *for*.

**nāscor**, **nāscī**, **nātus sum**, depon., *be born, spring up*.

**nātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a nation, a tribe*.

**nātūra**, -ae, fem., *nature, character*.

**nātus**, -ūs, mas., *birth*; **māiōrēs** (nātū), *elders, old men*.

**nāvō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *do with zeal*; **operam nāvāre**, *do one's best*.

**nē**, conj., *that . . . not*; with verbs of fearing, *that, lest*; with imperative, *not* (neg. **ne**), **nec**, conj., *nor*.

**necessārius**, -a, -um, adj., *necessary, urgent*.

**necessitās**, -tātis, fem., *necessity*; chapt. 11, *compulsion*; 22, *urgency*.

**negōtium**, -ī, neut., *business*; chapt. 17, *trouble*; **negōtium dare**, *employ*.

**nēmō**, **nēminis**, mas. and fem., *no one*.

**neque** (**nec**), adv., *and not*; **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor*.

**nēquiquam**, adv., *in vain*.

**Nervius**, -a, -um, adj., *Nervian*; plur., *the Nervii*, a powerful tribe of Belgic Gaul.

**neuter**, -tra, -trum, gen. **neutrius**, adj., *neither*; plur. mas., as a noun, *neither party*.

**nēve** (**neu**), conj., *and . . . not* (continuing a negative); chapt. 21, *and that . . . not*.

**nihil**, indecl. neut., *nothing*; acc. as adv., *not at all*.

**nisi**, conj., *unless, if not, except*.

**nōbilitās**, -tātis, fem., *nobility*; concretely, *the nobles*.

**noctū**, abl. used adverbially, *by night*.

**nōlō, nōlle, nōluī**, (no supine), *be unwilling, not wish.*

**nōmen, -minis**, neut., *a name.*

**nōminātim**, adv., *by name* (individually).

**nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *name, mention, call by name.*

**nōn**, adv., *not*; **nōn modo**, *not only.*

**nōndum**, adv., *not yet.*

**nōnnūllus, -a, -um**, adj., *some*; plur., as a noun, *some persons.*

**nōnus, -a, -um**, num. adj., *ninth.*

**nōs**, pers. pron. of the first pers. (plur. of ego), *we.*

**noster, -tra, -trum**, poss. adj. pron., *our*; plur., **nostrī**, *our men* (as a noun).

**novem**, indecl. num. adj., *nine.*

**Noviodūnum, -ī**, neut., *a town of the Suessiones on the Aisne.*

**novus, -a, -um**, adj., *new*; chapt. 31, *strange, novel.*

**novissimus, -a, -um** (superl. of **novus**), *the last, latest*; with **agmen**, *the rear*; plur. mas. as a noun, **novissimī**, *men or soldiers in the rear.*

**nox, noctis**, fem., *night.*

**nūdō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *strip, lay bare*; chapt. 23, *expose, leave unguarded.*

**nūllus, -a, -um**, gen. **nūllius**, adj., *not any, no*; as a noun, *no one.*

**numerus, -ī**, mas., *a number.*

**Numida, -ae**, mas., *a Numidian* (employed in the Roman army as cavalry).

**nunc**, adv., *now.*

**nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *announce, report, send news.*

**nūntius, -ī**, mas., *message, messenger, news.*

**ob**, prep. + acc., *on account of.*

**obdūcō**, see **dūcō**, *lead against*; with **fossam**, *dig, construct.*

**obitus, -ūs**, mas., *a going to* (death), *destruction, death.*

**obses, -idis**, mas. and fem., *hostage* (one under guard).

**obtimeō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum**, *hold, occupy, possess.*

**obveniō**, see **veniō** (with dat.), *encounter, fall in with, meet.*

**occāsus, -ūs**, mas., *a falling, a setting* (of the sun).

**occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum**, *slay, kill.*

**occultus, -a, -um**, adj., *concealed*; in **occultō**, *in secret.*

**occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum**, *seize, occupy* (in a military sense); chapt. 19, *be engaged.*

**occurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum** (with dat.), *meet, come upon, fall in with.*

**Oceanus, -ī**, mas., *the ocean.*

**octāvus, -a, -um**, num. adj., *eighth.*

**octō**, indecl. num. adj., *eight.*

**offerō, offerre, obtuli, oblātum**, *bring before, offer, carry, bring.*

**omittō**, see **mittō**, *let go by, neglect* (with **cōnsilium**).

**omnis, -is, -e**, adj. (of two terminations), *all, the whole of.*

**onus, -eris**, neut., *a burden, a load.*

**opera**, -ae, fem., *pains, service*; **operam nāvāre**, *do one's best*.

**opiniō**, -ōnis, fem., *notion*; **chapt. 3**, *expectation*; **8, 24**, *reputation*; **35**, *impression*.

**oportet**, **oportēre**, **oportuit**, **impers.**, *it behooves, it ought*.

**oppidānus**, -a, -um, adj., *of the town*; plur. mas. as a noun, *the townsmen*.

**oppidum**, -ī, neut., *a town* (usually fortified).

**opportūnus**, -a, -um, adj., *convenient, opportune, suitable*

**oppugnātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a siege, an attack* (in a formal manner against a fortified place).

**oppugnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *attack* (a defended position).

(**ops**), **opis**, fem., *help*; **chapt. 14**, *resources*; **31**, *aid*.

**optimus**, -a, -um, adj. (superl. of **bonus**), *best*.

**opus**, -eris, neut., *work*; **māgnō opere** (**māgnopere**), *very much*; **quantō opere** (**quantopere**), *how greatly*.

**opus**, indecl. neut., *need*; **opus est**, *there is need*.

**ōrātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a speech, a talk, an address*.

**ōrdō**, **dinis**, mas., *a row, an order, a company, a rank* (of soldiers).

**orior**, **orīrī**, **ortus sum**, **depon.**, *arise*; **chapt. 4**, *be descended from*.

**Osismī**, -ōrum, mas., *a Gallic tribe in Brittany*.

**P.**, initial letter of **Pūblius**.

**pābulum**, -ī, neut., *fodder* (for animals).

**pācō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *subdue, pacify*.

**Paemānī**, -ōrum, mas., *a tribe of the Belgians*.

**paene**, adv., *almost, nearly*.

**palūs**, -ūdis, fem., *a swamp, a marsh*.

**pandō**, **pandere**, **pandī**, **passum**, *spread out*; perf. particip., **passus**, *outstretched* (as an adj.).

**pār**, **paris**, adj. (of one termination), *equal*.

**parātus**, -a, -um, adj., *prepared, ready*.

**pars**, **partis**, fem., *part, side*; less exactly, *direction*.

**partim**, acc. as adv., *partly, in part*.

**parvulus**, -a, -um, adj., *slight, small, unimportant*.

**passus**, -a, -um, see **pandō**.

**passus**, -ūs, mas., *a pace* (five Roman feet); **mīlia passuum**, *a mile*.

**patefaciō**, see **faciō**, *open, lay open*.

**pateō**, -tēre, -tuī, (no supine), *extend, be open, spread*.

**pater**, **patris**, mas., *a father*; plur., *ancestors*.

**pator**, **patī**, **passus sum**, **depon.**, *endure, permit*; **chapt. 15**, *allow*; **31**, *suffer*.

**patrius**, -a, -um, adj., *ancestral, of one's fathers*.

**paucus**, -a, -um, adj. (mostly in the plur.), *few; a few*.

paulātim, adv., *gradually, little by little.*

paulisper, adv., *a short while.*

paulō, abl. as adv., (by) *a little, just a little.*

paululum, adv., *slightly, a very little.*

paulum, adv., *a little, somewhat.*

pāx, pācis, fem., *peace.*

pedes, -itis, mas., *a footman;*  
 plur. collectively, *the infantry.*

pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. (of  
 three terminations), *of infantry, infantry.*

Pedius, -ī, mas., *a nephew and legatus of Caesar.*

pellis, -is, fem., *a skin, a hide*  
 (of an animal).

pellō, pellere, pepuli, pulsum,  
*drive, defeat, rout.*

per, prep. + acc., *through, by means of;* chapt. 10, *over.*

perferō, see ferō, *carry through;*  
 chapt. 14, *endure;* 35, *spread among.*

periclitōr, -tārī, -tātus sum,  
 depon., *test, try, make a trial.*

periculum, -ī, neut., *a trial, an attempt;* hence, *danger, peril.*

permittō, see mittō, *give up*  
 (over), *entrust.*

permovēō, see movēō, *alarm,*  
 (move thoroughly).

perspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī,  
 -spectum, *see through, learn, find, see.*

persuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsī,  
 -suāsum, *persuade* (with dat.),  
*induce.*

perterreō, -terrēre, -terrui,  
 -territum, *terrify, frighten greatly.*

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinui, (no supine), *extend, reach (out), tend.*

perturbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum,  
*throw into disorder, alarm.*

pervenio, see venio, *reach, arrive at.*

pēs, pedis, mas., *a foot.*

petō, petere, petivī or petiī,  
 petitum, *seek, ask for, beg.*

pilum, -ī, neut., *a javelin.*

plānitiēs, -ēī, fem., *a plain.*

plērumque, acc. sing. neut. as  
 adv., *generally, usually.*

plērusque, -aque, -umque, adj.  
 (only in the plur.), *most of, very many.*

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj. (superl.  
 of multus), *most;* acc. sing.  
 neut. as adv. (plūrimum), *most, very much;* plūrimum valēre,  
*have very great influence;*  
 plūrimum posse, *be very powerful.*

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus sum,  
 depon., *promise, offer.*

pondus, -eris, neut., *weight.*

pōnō, pōnere, posui, positum,  
*place, put, pitch.*

pōns, pontis, mas., *a bridge.*

populor, -lārī, -lātus sum,  
 depon., *lay waste, plunder.*

populus, -ī, mas., *a people.*

porrēctus, -a, -um, adj., *stretch-  
 ed forth, extensive, long.*

porta, -ae, fem., *a gate.*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *carry, bring.*

poscō, poscere, poposci, (no supine), *demand, claim.*

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdi, -sesum, *possess, occupy* (in a military sense).

possum, posse, potuī, *can, be able*; plurimum posse, *be very powerful.*

post, prep. + acc., *after, behind.*

postea, adv., *afterwards.*

postquam, adverbial conj., *after, after that, when.*

postrēmō, adv., *finally, lastly, at last.*

postridiē, adv., *the next day.*

postridiē, adv., *the next day*;

postridiē eius diēi, adv. phrase, *the next day after that.*

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *demand, claim, ask.*

potēns, potentis, adj. (of one termination), *powerful, mighty.*

potestās, -tātis, fem., *power, control*; chapt. 6, *ability.*

potior, potiri, potitus sum, depon., *capture* (with abl.), *get control of.*

potius, adv., *rather*; potius . . . quam, *rather . . . than.*

prae, prep. + abl., *in comparison with.*

praeacūtus, -a, -um, adj., *sharp-ened* (to a point), *pointed.*

praebeō, -bēre, -buī, -bitum, *furnish, offer.*

praeceps, -cipitis, adj. (of one termination), *headlong, in haste.*

praedor, -dārī, -dātus sum, depon., *plunder, raid, take booty.*

praefectus, -ī, mas., *a general, an officer, a commander.*

praeferō, see ferō, *place before*; with sē, *outdo* (*show one's self better than*).

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *place in command of.*

praemittō, see mittō, *send forward, send ahead.*

praescribō, see scribō, *give directions, order, direct.*

praesertim, adv., *especially.*

praesidium, -ī, neut., *defence, guard, protection.*

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum, *stand before*; chapt. 15, *excel*; 27, *display*; 31, *impers., it is better.*

praesum, see sum, *be in command of* (with the dat.).

praeterea, adv., *besides, furthermore.*

premō, premere, pressī, pressum, *press hard, attack fiercely.*

prīnipilus, -ī, mas., *the chief or first centurion.*

prīmō, adv., *at first.*

prīmum, adv., *first, in the first place*; cum prīmum, *as soon as.*

prīmus, -a, -um, adj., *first*; plur. mas., *prīmī, the foremost men, the chief or leading men.*

prīnceps, -ipis, mas. (adj. of one termination used as a noun), *chief man, chief, leader.*

prior, -ior, -ius, adj. (comparative—two terminations), *former*; plur. mas. as a noun, *prīorēs, men (soldiers) in front.*

**prīstinus**, -a, -um, adj., *former, old, old time.*

**priusquam**, conj., adv., *before*;  
**prius** and **quam** are often separated by intervening words.

**prō**, prep. + *abl.*, *in front of*;  
 chapt. 14, *in behalf of*; 25, *in proportion to*; 31, *according to*.

**prōcēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *go forward, advance, proceed.*

**procul**, adv., *afar off, at a distance.*

**prōcumbō**, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, *lean forward, fall, sink down (to the ground).*

**proelior**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *depon.*, *fight (in war).*

**proelium**, -ī neut., *a battle, contest, engagement.*

**profectiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a departure, a setting out.*

**proficīscor**, **proficīscī**, **profectus sum**, *depon.*, *set out, go.*

**prōflīgō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *rout, put to flight, defeat.*

**profugiō**, see **fugiō**, *flee, escape.*

**prōgnātus**, -a, -um, adj., *descended from, sprung from.*

**prōgredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, *depon.*, *advance, march forward, go forward.*

**prohibeō**, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibitum, *prevent, cut off, keep from.*

**prōiciō**, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, *throw away, abandon, give up.*

**prōmoveō**, see **moveō**, *move forward, push forward.*

**prope**, adv., *almost, nearly.*

**properō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *hasten.*

**propīnquitās**, -tātis, fem., *nearness, relation (by blood), kinship.*

**propīnquus**, -a, -um, adj., *near, close, related (by blood).*

**prōpōnō**, see **pōnō**, *place before*;  
 chapt. 2, *display, raise.*

**propter**, prep. + *acc.*, *on account of.*

**propterea**, adv., *on this account*;  
 with **quod**, *because.*

**prōpūgnō**, see **pūgnō**, *fight (rush out fighting), fight in defence.*

**prōsequor**, see **sequor**, *pursue*;  
 chapt. 5, *address.*

**prōspectus**, -ūs, mas., *view, outlook.*

**prōtinus**, adv., *immediately, instantly.*

**prōturbō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *rout, drive off (in confusion).*

**prōvideō**, see **videō**, *foresee, provide, arrange beforehand.*

**prōvincia**, -ae, fem., *a province (governed by a Roman magistrate).*

**prōvolō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fly (rush) forth, hurry forward.*

**proximē**, adv., *recently, last, lately.*

**proximus**, -a, -um, adj., *next, nearest (last).*

**prūdētia**, -ae, fem., *discretion, wisdom, foresight.*

**pūblicus**, -a, -um, adj., *public*;  
**rēs pūblica**, fem., *the state.*

**Pūblius**, -ī, mas., *a Roman praenomen (the first name).*

**puer**, **puerī**, mas., *boy*; plur., *children.*

**pūgna**, -ae, fem., *a fight, a battle*.  
**pūgnō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *fight*,  
*engage, contend*.

**Q**, initial letter of **Quīntus**.

**quā**, adv., *where* (chapt. 33).

**qua**, indefinite pron., see **quis**.

**quadringenti**, -ae, -a, num. adj.,  
*four hundred*.

**quaerō**, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**,  
**quaesitum**, *ask, inquire*.

**quam**, adv., *than, as* (after com-  
 paratives and comparative ex-  
 pressions); chapt. 32, 2d sent.,  
 and chapt. 33, indef. pron., *any*.

**quamvis**, indef. pron. from  
**quīvis**, **quaevis**, etc. (which  
 see); chapt. 31, *any you please*.

**quantopere**, adv., *how greatly*,  
*how very much*; see **opus**.

**quantus**, -a, -um, adj., *how great?*,  
*how much (many)?*

**quartus**, -a, -um, num. adj.,  
*fourth*.

**quattuor**, indecl. num. adj., *four*.

**que**, enclitic conj., *and* (always  
 appended to the word or to  
 some part of the phrase or  
 sentence which it connects).

**quī**, **quae**, **quod**, rel. pron., *who*,  
*which, what, that*.

**quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam**,  
 indef. pron., *a certain, certain*.

**quidem**, adv., *indeed, certainly*;  
**nē . . . quidem**, *not . . . even*  
 (emphasizing the word placed  
 between them).

**quīn**, conj., *but that, that, from*  
 (after negative verbs of *prevent-*  
*ing, hindering, doubting, etc.*).

**quīnam**, **quaenam**, **quodnam**,  
 interrog. pron., *who?*, *what?*

**quīndecim**, indecl. num. adj.,  
*fifteen*.

**quīngenti**, -ae, -a, num. adj., *five*  
*hundred*.

**quīnquāgintā**, indecl. num. adj.,  
*fifty*.

**quīnque**, indecl. num. adj., *five*.

**Quīntus**, -ī, mas., *a Roman*  
*praenomen (the first name)*.

**quis**, **quae**, **quid**, interrog. pron.,  
*who?*, *which?*, *what?*; indef.  
 pron., *any, any one, anything*  
 (after **sī**, **nisi**, **nē**, num).

**quisquam**, (no fem.), **quidquam**  
 (**quicquam**), indef. pron., *any*  
*one, anything* (in negative  
 clauses).

**quisque**, **quaeque**, **quidque**,  
 indef. pron., *each, each one*.

**quisquis**, **quaequae**, **quicquid**  
 (**quidquid**), indef. pron., *who-*  
*ever, whatever*.

**quīvis**, **quaevis**, **quidvis**, indef.  
 pron., *who you please, any*  
*one*.

**quō**, adv., *whither, where*; chapt.  
 25, = **ut eō**, *so that thereby*,  
 (*so that by it*).

**quod**, conj., *because*; chapt. 17,  
*the fact that*.

**quoque**, conj., *also* (emphasizing  
 the word which it follows).

**rāmus**, -ī, mas., *a branch, a bough*.

**ratio**, -ōnis, fem., *a reckoning, a*  
*plan, a reason*.

**recipiō**, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,  
*take back, receive*; **sē recipere**,

- betake one's self*; chapt. 12, *sē recipere*, *recover*.
- reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum, give back, render*.
- redeō, -īre, -ivī (-iī), -itum, go back, return*; less exactly, *decline (slope)*.
- redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, reduce*; chapt. 27, *render*.
- redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, renew, restore*.
- Redonēs, -um, mas., a Gallic people in Brittany*.
- redūcō, see dūcō, lead back, bring back*.
- referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, bring back, report, announce*.
- refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, break in, break open*.
- regiō, -ōnis, fem., a region, a district, a part (of the country)*.
- regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, to rule, have control of*.
- rēgnum, -ī, neut., kingdom, power*; plur., *sovereignty*.
- rēiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectum, drive back, hurl back, drive off*.
- relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, (no supine), be weakened, languish away*.
- relinquō, -linquere, -liquī, -lictum, leave behind, leave*.
- reliquus, -a, -um, adj., remaining, the rest of*; as a noun (usually plur.), *the rest*.
- Rēmī, -ōrum, a leading tribe of the Belgae*.
- remittō, see mittō, send or hurl back*; chapt. 15, *relax, give up*.
- Rēmus, -ī, mas., one of the Remi*.
- renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, bring back word, report, announce*.
- repellō, -pellere, reppulī, repulsum, drive back, repulse*.
- repentinus, -a, -um, adj., sudden*; abl. *repentinō (as adv.), suddenly*.
- reperiō, -perīre, repperī or reperi, repertum, find out, ascertain, find*.
- rēs, rei, fem., a thing, a fact*; *rēs frūmentāria, a grain supply*; *rēs pūblica, the state*.
- resistō, sistere, -stitī, (nosupine), resist (with dat.), withstand*.
- respiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectum, look back, look behind one*.
- respondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, answer, reply*.
- retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold back, restrain*; chapt. 21, with *memoriam, preserve*.
- revertor, -vertī, -versus sum, depon., go back, return*; active forms in the perfect system, *revertī, reverteram, etc.*
- revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call back, call away, recall*.
- rēx, rēgis, mas., a king*.
- Rhēnus, -ī, mas., the Rhine*.
- rīpa, -ae, fem., a bank, a river-bank*.
- rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, ask, ask for*.
- Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., Roman*; as a noun, *a Roman*.
- rubus, -ī, mas., a bramble-bush, a bramble*.
- rūmor, -ōris, mas., a report, a rumour*.
- rūpēs, -is, fem., a cliff, a rock*.

**rūrsus**, adv., *again, in turn, back again.*

**rūs, rūris**, neut., *country; locative, rūri, in the country.*

**Sabīnus, -ī**, mas., a lieutenant of Caesar.

**Sabis, -is**, mas., (now) *the Sambre*, a river in Gaul flowing into the Meuse.

**saepēs, -is**, fem., *a hedge.*

**sagittārius, -ī**, mas., *a bowman, an archer.*

**salūs, -ūtis**, fem., *safety, welfare.*

**sarcina, -ae**, fem., *a package, a pack*; plur., *baggage* (the load carried on the back of each soldier).

**saxum, -ī**, neut., *a rock.*

**scientia, -ae**, fem., *skill, knowledge.*

**scribō, scribere, scripsī, scriptum**, *write*; chapt. 29, *give an account* (in writing).

**scūtum, -ī**, neut., *a shield* (of the Roman legion) made of wood, covered with leather, convex and oblong (2½ by 4 ft.).

**sectiō, -ōnis**, fem., *a cutting*; hence, from dividing in lots, *booty.*

**secundum**, prep. + acc., *along*; chapt. 18, *next to.*

**secundus, -a, -um**, num. adj., *second*; chapt. 9, *favourable.*

**sed**, conj., *but.*

**senātor, -tōris**, mas., (*an elder*), *a senator.*

**senātus, -ūs**, mas., *a senate*

(council of old men), especially the Roman senate.

**Senonēs, -um**, mas., a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Seine.

**sententia, -ae**, fem., *an opinion, a view.*

**sentis, -is**, mas., *a briar, a thornbush* (mostly plur.).

**septimus, -a, -um**, num. adj., *seventh.*

**Sequanus, -a, -um**, adj., *of the Sequani*; mas. plur., *the Sequani*, a Gallic tribe on the Rhone.

**sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**, depon., *follow*; chapt. 22, with **ēventus, ensue.**

**servitūs, -tūtis**, fem., *slavery, subjection.*

**servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *watch*; chapt. 33, with **praesidia, maintain.**

**sēsē**, see **suī**.

**sex**, indecl. num. adj., *six.*

**sexāgintā**, indecl. num. adj., *sixty.*

**sexcentī, -ae, -a**, num. adj., *six hundred.*

**sī**, conj., *if*; chapt. 9, *whether.*

**sīc**, adv., *so, thus, as follows.*

**sīgnifer, -ferī**, mas., *a standard-bearer.*

**sīgnificātiō, -ōnis**, fem., *signal, warning.*

**sīgnificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum**, *show, indicate, announce.*

**sīgnum, -ī**, neut., *sign, standard*; **sīgna convertere**, *face about*; **sīgna inferre**, *advance (to the attack).*

**silva**, -ae, fem., *a forest, woods.*

**silvester** (-tris), -tris, -tre, adj.

(of three terminations), *woody, wooded.*

**simul**, adv., *at the same time.*

**sine**, prep. + abl., *without.*

**singulāris**, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations), *remarkable, unique.*

**singulī**, -ae, -a, adj., *single, several, each, one at a time.*

**sinister**, -tra, -trum, adj., *left.*

**sōl**, sōlis, mas., *the sun.*

**sollicitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *incite, stir up, instigate.*

**sōlum**, acc. neut. as adv., *only; nōn solum . . . sed etiam, not only . . . but also.*

**sōlus**, -a, -um, adj., gen. sōlius, *only, alone.*

**spatium**, -ī, neut., *space, distance; less exactly, time.*

**speciēs**, -iēi, fem., *an appearance, a sight, a show.*

**speculātor**, -tōris, mas., *a spy, a scout.*

**spēs, spei**, fem., *hope, expectation.*

**spīritus**, -ūs, mas., *breath; plur., pride, arrogance.*

**statim**, adv., *at once, immediately.*

**statiō**, -ōnis, mas., *a post, a picket; in statiōne, on guard.*

**statuō**, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtum, *decide, determine.*

**statūra**, -ae, fem., *stature, height, size.*

**strepitus**, -ūs, mas., *noise, din.*

**studeō**, -dēre, -duī, (no supine), (with dat.), *desire; chapt. 17, pay attention to.*

**studium**, -ī, neut., *eagerness, desire, fondness (for a thing).*

**sub**, prep. + abl. and acc., *under; chapt. 13, 33, towards, near to.*

**subeō**, see eō, *undergo, approach, enter.*

**subitō**, adv., *suddenly, hastily.*

**submitō**, see mittō, *send up, send, despatch (with dat.).*

**subruō**, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *undermine, dig under.*

**subsequor**, see sequor, *follow up, pursue, follow on.*

**subsidium**, -ī, neut., *relief, assistance, help.*

**succēdō**, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *come up, approach, draw near.*

**successus**, -ūs, mas., *a coming up, an advance, a close approach.*

**Suessiōnēs**, -um, mas., *a tribe of the Belgae between the Marne and the Isère.*

**suī**, sibi, sē (sēsē), reflex. pron., *himself, themselves, etc.*

**sum**, esse, fuī, be, am.

**summa**, -ae, fem., *the sum, the total; chapt. 4, control; chapt. 23, with imperii, chief command.*

**summus**, -a, -um, adj., *highest, top of.*

**sūmō**, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūptum, *take, assume, claim.*

**superior**, -ior, -ius, adj. (comparative—two terminations), *higher, former, preceding.*

**superō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *overcome, defeat, conquer.*

**supersedeō**, -sedēre, -sēdī, -ses-  
sum, *refrain from*.

**supersum**, see **sum**, *survive, remain*.

**supplex**, -plicis, adj. (of one termination), *humble*; used as a noun, mas. and fem., *a suppliant*.

**supplicātiō**, -ōnis, fem., *a thanksgiving* (a supplication).

**suprā**, adv., *above, before*.

**sustentō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *hold out*.

**sustineō**, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, *withstand*; chapt. 6, with **sēsē**, *hold out*; chapt. 25, with **sē**, *stand up*.

**suus**, -a, -um, possess. adj. pron., *his (own), their (own), (reflex.)*.

**T.**, initial letter of **Titus**.

**tam**, adv., *so*.

**tamen**, adv., *however, nevertheless, still*.

**tantulus**, -a, -um, adj., *so small, so little*.

**tantus**, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so much*.

**tardō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *check, retard*.

**tardus**, -a, -um, adj., *slow, sluggish*; chapt. 25, *exhausted*.

**tegimentum**, -ī, neut., *a covering, a cover*.

**tēlum**, -ī, neut., *a weapon, a missile, a javelin*.

**tempus**, -oris, neut., *time*; chapt. 22, *occasion*; **ūnō tempore**, *at one and the same time*; **eōdem tempore**, *at the same time*.

**tendō**, *tendere*, **tetendī**, **tēnsum** and **tentum**, *extend, stretch out*.

**teneō**, **tenēre**, **tenuī**, **tentum**, *hold, keep*.

**tener**, -era, -erum, adj., *tender, young, delicate*.

**terror**, -ōris, mas., *fright, terror, alarm*.

**tertius**, -a, -um, num. adj., *third*.

**testūdō**, -dinis, fem., *testudo* (a covering of shields).

**Teutonī**, -ōrum, (-ēs, -um), mas., a German people in Jutland, defeated by Marius in B.C. 102.

**timeō**, **timēre**, **timuī**, (no supine), *fear, be afraid*.

**Titūrius**, -ī, mas., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*; see **Sabinus**.

**Titus**, -ī, mas., a Roman praenomen (the first name).

**tormentum**, -ī, neut., *an engine of war* (for throwing missiles).

**totidem**, indecl. adj., *just as many, as many*.

**tōtus**, -a, -um, gen. **tōtius**, adj., *entire, the whole of*.

**trabs**, **trabis**, fem., *a timber, a beam*; (nom. sing. sometimes, **trabēs**).

**trādō**, **trādere**, **trādidi**, **trāditum**, *hand over, give up*.

**trādūcō**, see **dūcō**, *lead across, bring over*.

**trāns**, prep. with acc., *across, over, beyond*.

**trānseō**, see **eō**, *cross over, go across, cross*.

**trānsgridior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, depon., *go across, cross*.

**trānsversus**, -a, -um, adj., *across*;  
with *fossa*, *a cross-ditch*.

**trēs**, **trēs**, **tria**, gen. **trium**, num.  
adj., *three*.

**Trēverī**, -ōrum, mas., a power-  
ful tribe of the Belgians on the  
Moselle.

**tribūnus**, -ī, mas., *a tribune*;  
with **militum**, *a military tri-  
bune*.

**trīdūm**, -ī, neut., *three days'*  
*time, three days*.

**triplex**, gen. **triplicis**, adj. (of  
one termination), *triple, three-  
fold*.

**tuba**, -ae, fem., *a trumpet* (a  
straight instrument for in-  
fantry).

**tum**, adv., *then*; chapt. 4, **cum**  
... **tum**, *both . . . and*.

**tumultus**, -ūs, mas., *an uproar*,  
*confusion, a commotion*.

**tumulus**, -ī, mas., *a hill, a mound*.

**Turonēs**, -um (-ī, -ōrum), mas.,  
*a Gallic tribe on the Loire*.

**turpitūdō**, -dinis, fem., *disgrace*,  
*baseness, dishonour*.

**turris**, -is, fem., *a tower*.

**tūtus**, -a, -um, adj., *safe, secure*.

**tuus**, -a, -um, poss. pron., *your*.

**ubi**, adv., *when, where*.

**ūllus**, -a, -um, gen. **ūllius**, adj.,  
*any one, any*.

**ūnā**, adv. (**ūnā cum**). *together*  
*with, along with* (them).

**ūndecimus**, -a, -um, num. adj.,  
*eleventh*.

**undique**, adv., *from (on) all parts*,  
*on all sides*.

**ūniversus**, -a, -um, adj., *whole*,  
*all*.

**ūnus**, -a, -um, gen. **ūnius**, num.  
adj., *one, only, alone*.

**urgeō**, **urgēre**, **ursī**, (no supine),  
*press hard*.

**ūsus**, -ūs, mas., *use, practice*,  
*advantage*.

**ut** (**utī**), conj., with indic. *as*,  
*when*; with subjunc., *so that*,  
*in order that*.

**uterque**, -traque, -trumque, gen.  
**utriusque**, adj., *each of two*,  
*both*.

**ūtor**, **ūtī**, **ūsus sum**, depon., *use*,  
*employ, enjoy* (with *abl.*).

**vacuus**, -a, -um, adj., *empty*,  
*free*; chapt. 12, with **ab** + *abl.*,  
*destitute of*.

**vadum**, -ī, neut., *a ford, shallows*.

**valeō**, **valēre**, **valuī**, **valitum**,  
*be strong*; **plūrimum valēre**,  
*have very great influence*.

**vāllum**, -ī, neut., *a rampart, a*  
*palisade*.

**varius**, -a, -um, adj., *diverse*,  
*different, various*.

**vāstō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *lay*  
*waste, ravage*.

**Veliocassēs**, -ium, (-ī, -ōrum),  
mas., *a Gallic tribe on the right*  
*bank of the Seine*.

**vēndō**, **vēndere**, **vēndidī**, **vēn-  
ditum**, *sell*.

**Venellī** (**Unellī**), -ōrum, mas., *a*  
*tribe along the west coast of*  
*Gaul*.

**Venetī**, -ōrum, mas., *a Gallic*  
*tribe on the west coast*.

**veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum,**  
*come, approach, go.*

**verbum, -ī, neut.,** *a word, a dis-*  
*course.*

**vereor, verēri, veritus sum,**  
*depon., fear, be afraid.*

**vergō, vergere,** (no perfect, no  
supine), *incline, slope, lie to-*  
*wards.*

**vērō, adv.,** *in fact, in truth.*

**versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, turn,**  
*deal with; frequently as a*  
*depon., be (remain); chapt. 24,*  
*be engaged.*

**vesper, -erī, mas.,** *the evening.*

**vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum,**  
*forbid.*

**vēxillum, -ī, neut.,** *a flag.*

**vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, harass,**  
*annoy.*

**victor, -tōris, mas.,** *a conqueror;*  
*chapt. 24 (as adj.), victorious.*

**vīcus, -ī, mas.,** *a village.*

**videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsum, see;**  
*as depon. in the present system*  
*of the passive, seem.*

**vigilia, -ae, fem.,** *a watch (one of*  
*the four divisions of the night).*

**vīmen, -minis, neut.,** *a pliant*  
*twig.*

**vincō, vincere, vicī, victum,**  
*conquer, defeat.*

**vīnea, -ae, fem., vinea** (a mova-  
ble shed covering a besieging  
party).

**vīnum, -ī, neut.,** *wine.*

**vir, virī, mas.,** *a man.*

**Viromandui, -ōrum, mas.,** *a tribe*  
*of the Belgians north of the*  
*Oise.*

**virtūs, -tūtis, fem.,** *courage,*  
*valour (manliness).*

**vīs, (vīs), (plur. virēs),** *vigour,*  
*strength, force.*

**vīlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, avoid,**  
*escape.*

**vix, adv.,** *scarcely, with diffi-*  
*culty.*

**volō, velle, voluī, (no supine),**  
*wish, be willing.*

**voluntās, -tātis, fem.,** *desire, will*  
*(good will), approval.*

**vōx, vōcis, fem.,** *voice; plur.,*  
*words, shouts*

**vulgō, adv. (abl. of vulgus),**  
*generally, everywhere.*

**vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, wound,**  
*injure, hurt.*

**vulnus, -eris, neut.,** *a wound.*

## ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

- about, *circiter*, adv.; *dē*, prep.  
+ *abl.*  
about midnight, *dē mediā nocte*.  
above, *suprā*, adv.  
abundance, *cōpia*, -*ae*, fem.  
access, *aditus*, -*ūs*, mas.  
across, *trāns*, prep. + *acc.*  
address, *prōsequor*; (3).  
advance, *prōgredior*, (3).  
after, *cum*, conj. + pluperf. sub-  
junc.; *post*, prep. + *acc.*  
afterwards, *postea*, adv.  
again, *rūrsus*, adv.  
against, *contrā*, prep. + *acc.*  
aid, *auxilium*, -*i*, neut.; *iuvō*,  
*adiuvō*, (1).  
alarm, *commoveō*, (2).  
all; *omnis*, -*is*, -*e*, adj.  
almost, *paene*, adv.  
alone, *sōlus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.  
ambassador, *lēgātus*, -*i*, mas.  
ambush, *īnsidiae*, -*arum*, fem.  
among, *inter*, prep. + *acc.*  
and, *et*, *que*, *ac*, *atque*, conj.  
announce, *nūntiō*, *renūntiō*, (1).  
another (other), *alter*, -*era*, -*erum*,  
adj.  
any, *ullus*, -*a*, -*um*, adj.  
approach, *adventus*, -*ūs*, mas.  
archer, *sagittārius*, -*i*, mas.  
arms, *arma*, -*orum*, neut.  
army, *exercitus*, -*ūs*, mas.; *aciēs*,  
*aciēi*, fem.  
arrival, *adventus*, -*ūs*, mas.  
arrive, *pervenio*, (4).  
arrogance, *spīritus*, -*ūs*, mas. (in  
the plur.).  
as, *ut*, conj. + indic.  
as soon as, *cum primum*, conj.  
ask, *rogō*, (1); *quaerō*, (3).  
ask for, *petō*, (3).  
assemble, *conveniō*, (4); *cōgō*, (3).  
attack, *impetus*, -*ūs*, mas.; *op-*  
*pugnō*, (1); *aggredior*, (3).  
attempt, *cōnor*, (1).  
at early dawn, *primā lūce*.  
at first, *primō*, adv.  
at one and the same time, *ūnō*  
*tempore*.  
at once, *statim*, adv.  
at the foot of the mountain, *sub*  
*monte*.  
at the same time, *eōdem tempore*.  
auxiliaries, *auxilia*, -*orum*, neut.  
avoid, *vitō*, (1).  
await, *expectō*, (1).  
badge, *īnsigne*, -*is*, neut.  
baggage, *impedimenta*, -*orum*,  
neut.  
band, *manus*, -*ūs*, fem.  
bank, *rīpa*, -*ae*, fem.

battle, *proelium*, -ī, neut.  
 be, *sum*; be able, *possum*.  
 be in command of, *praesum*  
 + *dat*.  
 be very powerful, *plūrimum*  
*posse*; *plūrimum valere*.  
 be unwilling, *nōlō*.  
 bear, *ferō*.  
 beginning, *initium*, -ī, neut.  
 begin battle, *proelium commi-*  
*tere*.  
 behind, *post*, prep. + *acc*.  
 beloved, *amātus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 betake one's self, *sē recipere*; *sē*  
*conferre*.  
 between, *inter*, prep. + *acc*.  
 blame, *incūsō*, (1).  
 body, *corpus*, -oris, neut.  
 boldly, *audācter*, adv.  
 borders, *fīnis*, -is, mas. (in the  
*plur.*).  
 both . . . and, *et . . . et*, conj.  
 boundary, *fīnis*, -is, mas. (in the  
*plur.*).  
 bowman, *sagittārius*, -ī, mas.  
 boy, *puer*, *puerī*, mas.  
 bravely, *fortiter*, adv.  
 break camp, *castra movēre*  
 bridge, *vōns*, *pontis*, mas.  
 bring, *ferō*.  
 bring to, *addūcō*, (3).  
 bring up, *agō*, (3).  
 broad, *lātus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 brother, *frāter*, -tris, mas.  
 build, *aedificō*, (1).  
 building, *aedificium*, -ī, neut.  
 burn, *incendō*, (3).  
 business, *negōtium*, -ī, neut.; with  
*dare*, to employ.  
 but, *sed*, conj.

but also, *sed etiam*, conj.  
 by, *ā*, *ab*, prep. + *abl*. (with  
 passive verb).  
 by night, *noctū* (as adv.).  
 calamity, *calamitās*, -tātis, fem.  
 call, *appellō*, (1).  
 camp, *castra*, -ōrum, neut.  
 captive, *captivus*, -ī, mas.  
 carry, *portō*, (1).  
 cavalry, *eques*, *equitis*, mas.;  
*equitātus*, -ūs, mas.  
 cause, *causa*, -ae, fem.  
 centurion, *centuriō*, -ōnis, mas.  
 certain, *certus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 chief, *prīnceps*, -cipis, mas.  
 children, *liberī*, -ōrum, mas.  
 choose, *dēligō*, (3).  
 cohort, *cohors*, -hortis, fem.  
 collect, *cōgō*, (3).  
 command, *imperium*, -ī, neut.;  
*imperō*, (1).  
 commander, *imperātor*, -tōris,  
 mas.  
 come, *veniō*, (4).  
 common, *commūnis*, -is, -e, adj.  
 conceal, *cēlō*, (1).  
 concerning, *dē*, prep. + *abl*.  
 confidence, *fidēs*, *fideī*, fem.  
 conquer, *pellō*, *vincō*, (3); *superō*,  
 (1).  
 conspire, *coniūrō*, (1); *cōsentiō*,  
 (4).  
 contend, *dīcertō*, (1); *contendō*,  
 (3).  
 convenient, *opportūnus*, -a, -um,  
 adj.  
 corn, *frūmentum*, -ī, neut.  
 council of war, *concilium*, -ī,  
 neut.

courage, *virtūs*, -tūtis, fem.  
 covering, *tegimentum*, -ī, neut.  
 covering (of shields), *testūdō*,  
   *-dinis*, fem.  
 cross, *trānseō*.  
 custom, *mōs*, *mōris*, mas.; *cōn-*  
*suētūdō*, -*dinis*, fem.  
 cut down, *interscindō*, (3).  
 cut off, *intercludō*, (3); *prohibeō*,  
   (2).  
 danger, *periculum*, -ī, neut.  
 dare, *audeō*, (2).  
 dart, *tēlum*, -ī, neut.  
 day, *diēs*, *diēi*, mas. and fem.  
 decide, *cōstituō*, (3).  
 deep, *altus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 defeat, *pellō*, *vincō*, (3); *superō*, (1).  
 defence, *praesidium*, -ī, neut.;  
   *mūnimentum*, -ī, neut.  
 defend, *dēfendō*, (3).  
 defender, *dēfēnsor*, -sōris, mas.  
 delay, *mora*, -ae, fem.; *moror*, (1).  
 demand, *poscō*, (3); *postulō*, (1).  
 depart, *ēgredior*, *proficīscor*, (3);  
   *discēdō*, (3).  
 departure, *profectiō*, -ōnis, fem.  
 deprive, *dēspoliō*, (1).  
 descend (be descended) *orior*, (4).  
 desire, *studeō*, (2); *studium*, -ī,  
   neut. (fondness).  
 deter, *dēterreō*, (2).  
 different, *dīversus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 dig (extend), *obducō* (with *fos-*  
   *sam*), (3).  
 direct, *mandō*, (1).  
 ditch, *fossa*, -ae, fem.  
 divide, *distineō*, (2).  
 do, *faciō*, (3).  
 draw near to, *appropinquō*, (1);

for construction with verb, see  
 chapt. 10, next to last sent.;  
 19, second sent.; 31, first sent.  
 draw up, *instruō*, (3).  
 drive, *compellō*, (3).  
 drive back, *repellō*, (3).  
 drive out, *expellō*, (3).  
 each (of the two), *uterque*, adj.  
 easily, *facile*, adv.  
 easy, *facilis*, -is, -e, adj.  
 eight, *octō*, indecl. num. adj.  
 either . . . or, *aut . . . aut*, conj.  
 employ, *negōtium dare*.  
 empty, *vacuus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 encourage, *cohortor*, (1); with *ut*  
   + subjunc.  
 end, *finis*, -is, mas.  
 ends of the ditches, *extrēmae*  
   *fossae*.  
 enemy, *hostis*, -is, mas. (usually  
   *plur.*).  
 engine of war, *tormentum*, -ī,  
   neut.  
 enroll, *cōnscribō*, (3).  
 enter, *intrō*, (1).  
 enter upon, *ineō*.  
 entire, *tōtus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 entrust, *permittō*, (3).  
 envoy, *lēgātus*, -ī, mas.  
 equal, *adaequō*, (1); for construc-  
   tion with verb, see chapt. 32,  
   last sent.  
 erect, *cōstituō*, (3).  
 especially, *māximē*, adv.  
 establish, *cōnfirmō*, (1).  
 even, *etiā*, conj.  
 evening, *vesper*, -erī, mas.  
 exchange hostages, *obsidēs inter*  
   *sē dare*.

execute, *administrō*, (1).

expect, *expectō*, (1).

face about, *signa convertō*, (3).

fail, *fallō*, (3).

farthest, *extrēmus*, -a, -um, adj.

father, *pater*, -tris, mas.

fear, *vereor*, *timeō*, (2).

fertility, *fertilitās*, -tātis, fem.

few, *paucus*, -a, -um, adj.; plur. only.

fickleness, *levitās*, -tātis, fem.

field, *ager*, *agrī*, mas.

fierce, *ferus*, -a, -um, adj.

fight, *pugna*, -ae, fem.; *pugnō*, *dēcertō*, *dīmīcō*, (1), *contendō*, *cōnflīgō*, (3).

fill, *compleō*, (2).

find, *reperiō*, *inveniō*, (4).

find out, *cognōscō*, (3); *explorō*, (1).

fire, *ignīs*, -is, mas.

first, *primus*, -a, -um, adj.

five, *quīque*, indecl. num. adj.

flee, *fugiō*, (3).

flight, *fuga*, -ae, fem.

fodder, *pābulum*, -ī, neut.

follow after, *subsequor*, (3).

foot, *pēs*, *pedis*, mas.

for, *nam*, conj.

for the sake of, *causā* (as a prep., following a gen.).

force (vigor), *vis*, *vīs*, fem.; (plur. *virēs*).

forces, *cōpiæ*, -ārum, fem.

ford, *vadum*, -ī, neut.

foremost (men), *primī*, -ōrum, (mas. plur. of *primus*).

forest, *silva*, -ae, fem.

former, *prīstinus*, -a, -um, adj.

fortification, *mūnitiō*, -ōnis, fem.

fortify, *mūniō*, (4).

free, *vacuus*, -a, -um, adj.

frequent, *crēber*, -bra, -brum, adj.

fresh, *integer*, -gra, -grum, adj.

friend, *amīcus*, -ī, mas.

friendly, *amīcus*, -a, -um, adj.

friendship, *amīcitiā*, -ae, fem.

frighten, *perterreō*, (2).

from, *ā*, *ab*, prep. + *abl*.

from (on) all sides, *undique*, adv.

gate, *porta*, -ae, fem.

Gaul, (country), *Gallia*, -ae, fem.; (person), *Gallus*, -ī, mas.

general, *praefectus*, -ī, mas.

general (common), *commūnis*, -is, -e, adj.

give, *dō*, (1).

give hostages to one another, *obsidēs inter sē dare*.

give up, *permittō*, *trādō*, (3).

great, *māgnus*, -a, -um, adj.

halt, *cōsis'ō*, (3).

hand over, *trādō*, (3).

hasten, *mātūrō*, (1); *contendō*, (3).

have, *habeō*, (2).

have very great power or influence, *plūrimum posse*, *plūrimum valēre*.

he, self, *ipse*, -a, -um, intensive pron.

he, she, it, *is*, *ea*, *id*, (used as pers. pron., third person).

hedge, *saepēs*, -is, fem.

height, *altitūdō*, -dinis, fem.

helmet, *galca*, -ae, fem.

help, *auxilium*, -ī, neut.; *iuvō*, (1).

hesitate, *dubitō*, (1).  
 high, *altus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 hill, *collis*, -is, mas.  
 hinder, *impediō*, (4).  
 hire, *condūcō*, (3).  
 his, *ēius* (not reflex.); *suus*, -a, -um (reflex.), possess. pronouns.  
 hither, *citerior*, -ior, -ius, adj.  
 hold, *obtineō*, (2).  
 hold out, *sustentō*, (1).  
 home, *domus*, -ūs (-ī), fem.  
 hope, *spēs*, *speī*, fem.  
 horse, *equus*, -ī, mas.  
 hostage, *obses*, -īdis, mas.  
 how great, *quantus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 hurl, *cōniciō*, (3).

immediately, *prōtinus*, *statim*, adv.

in, on, upon, *in*, prep. + *abl*.

incite, *sollicitō*, (1).

infantry, *pedes*, -itis, mas. (usually *plur.*).

influence, *addūcō*, (3).

inform, *certiōrem* (-ēs) *facere*.

in front of, *prō*, prep. + *abl*.

inhabit, *incolō*, (3).

injury, *iniūria*, -ae, fem.

inquire, *quaerō*, (3).

instruct, *mandō*, (1).

into, *in*, prep. + *acc*.

investigate, *cōgnōscō*, (3).

javelin, *pīlum*, -ī, neut.

join, *coniungō*, (3).

just as, as, *ita . . . ut*.

keep, *contineō*, (2).

keep apart, *distineō*, (2).

keep back, *retineō*, (2).

kill, *interficiō*, (3).

kindly, *liberāliter*, adv.

king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, mas.

kingdom, *rēgnum*, -ī, neut.; (plur. sovereignty).

kinsmen, *cōnsanguineī*, -ōrum, mas.

large, *māgnus*, -a, -um, adj.

last, lately, *proximē*, adv.

lay waste, *vāstō*, *populor*, (1).

lead, *dūcō*, (3).

lead across, *trādūcō*, (3).

leader, *dux*, *ducis*, mas.

lead out, *ēdūcō*, (3).

leave, *relinquō*, (3).

legion, *legiō*, -ōnis, fem.

left, *sinister*, -tra, -trum, adj.

less, *minus*, adv.

less easily, *minus facile*, *minus commodē*, adv.

letter, *littera*, -ae, fem.; (usually *plur.*).

lieutenant, *lēgātus*, -ī, mas.

light, *lūx*, *lūcis*, fem.

light-armed, *expeditus*, -a, -um, adj.

likewise, *item*, adv.

line of battle, (army), *aciēs*, *aciēī*, fem.

line of march, *agmen*, -minis, neut.

long, a long time, *diū*, adv.

longer, *diūtius*, adv.

love, *amō*, (1).

make, *faciō*, (3).

make (take) a stand, *cōnsistō*, (3).

make an attack upon, *facere impetum in* + *acc*.

make more certain (see 'inform'), *certiōrem* (-ēs) *facere*.

man, *homō, hominis*, mas.; *vir, viri*, mas.

march, *iter, itineris*, neut.; *iter facere*.

marsh, *aestuārium*, -ī, neut.

meanwhile, *interim*, adv.

memory, *memoria*, -ae, fem.

(men) in the front, *priōrēs*, -um, mas. (compar. adj. as noun).

(men) in therear, *novissimī*, -ōrum, mas. (superl. adj. as noun).

merchant, *mercātor*, -tōris, mas.

message, messenger, *nūntius*, -ī, mas.

middle of, *medius*, -a, -um, adj.

mind, *animus*, -ī, mas.

most of, *plērusque*, -aque, -umque, adj. (in the plur. only).

mountain, *mōns, montis*, mas.

move, *moveō*, (2).

movable shed, *vīnea*, -ae, fem.

multitude, *multitūdō*, -dīnis, fem.

much, many, *multus*, -a, -um, adj.

name, *nōmen*, -mīnis, neut.

nature, *nātūra*, -ae, fem.

near by, *iuxta*, adv.

nearness, *propīnquitās*, -tātis, fem.

neighbouring, *fīnitimus*, -a, -um, adj.; in the mas. plur., noun, *neighbours*.

neither, *neuter*, -tra, -trum, adj.

neither . . . nor, *neque (nec)* . . . *neque (nec)*.

new, *novus*, -a, -um, adj.

next, *proximus*, -a, -um, adj.

night, *nox, noctis*, fem.

no, none, *nullus*, -a, -um, adj.

not, *nōn*, adv.; *nē* (regular negative of the imperative).

not only, *nōn modo*.

not yet, *nōndum*.

number, *numerus*, -ī, mas.

obtain, *impetrō*, (1).

of cavalry, *equester*, -tris, -tre, adj. (of three terminations).

of corn, *frūmentārius*, -a, -um, adj.

officer, *magistrātus*, -ūs, mas.

on, *see in*, upon.

one (alone), *ūnus*, -a, -um, num. adj.

only, alone, *sōlus*, -a, -um, adj.; *ūnus*, -a, -um, adj.

on all sides, *undique*, adv.

on account of, *propter*, prep. + acc.

on the flank, *ab latere* (from *latus*, the noun).

on the left side, *ab sinistrā parte*.

on the right wing, *ā dextrō cornū*.

on the top of the hill, *in summō colle*.

on this side of, *cis*, prep. + acc.

opportunity, *facultās*, -tātis, fem.

opposite, *adversus*, -a, -um, adj.

order, *imperātum*, -ī, neut.; *imperō*, (1); *iubeō*, (2).

other (another), *alter*, -era, -erum; *alius*, -a, -ud, adj.

our, *noster*, -tra, -trum, adj.; mas. plur. as noun, our men.

out of, *ē, ex*, prep. + abl.

outstretched, *passus*, -a, -um, adj.

overcome, *superō*, (1).

- pace, *passus*, -ūs, mas.  
 part, *pars*, *partis*, fem.  
 peace, *pāx*, *pācis*, fem.  
 people, *populus*, -ī, mas.  
 pitch (place), *pōnō*, (3).  
 place, *locus*, -ī, mas.; neut. plur.,  
*loca*; *conlocō*, (1); *pōnō*, (3).  
 place in command of, *præficiō*,  
 (3), (with *dat.*).  
 plain, *plānitēs*, *plānitiē*, fem.  
 power, *imperium*, *rēgnum*, -ī,  
 neut.; *potestās*, -tātis, fem.  
 powerful, *potēns*, gen. *potentis*,  
 adj. (of one termination).  
 prepare, *parō*, (1); prepared,  
*parātus*, -a, -um (particip. as  
 adj.)  
 prevent, *prohibeō*, *dēterreō*, (2);  
*impediō*, (4).  
 promise, *polliceor*, (2).  
 protection, *fidēs*, *fidei*, fem.  
 province, *prōvincia*, -ae, fem.  
 pursue, *prōsequor*, (3).  
 put on, *induō*, (3).  
 quickly, *celeriter*, adv.  
 rampart, *vāllum*, -ī, neut.  
 ready, *parātus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 rear, *novissimum agmen*, *novis-*  
*simi agminis*, neut.  
 receive, *accipiō*, (3).  
 recently, *proximē*, adv.  
 redoubt, *castellum*, -ī, neut.  
 reduce, *redigō*, (3).  
 refrain from, *supersedeō*, (2).  
 region, *regiō*, -ōnis, fem.  
 relief, *subsidiūm*, -ī, neut.  
 remaining, *reliquus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 Remian (a), *Rēmus*, -ī, mas.;  
 plur., the Remi.  
 renew, *redintegrō*, (1).  
 report, *rūmor*, -ōris, mas.; *nūntiō*,  
*renūntiō*, (1).  
 rest, the rest, *cēterus*, -a, -um,  
 adj.; usually mas. plur. as a  
 noun.  
 restrain, *retineō*, (2).  
 resist, *resistō*, (3), (with *dat.*).  
 return, *revertor*, (3).  
 revolution, *rēs nova*, *reī novae*,  
 fem.  
 right, *dexter*, -tra, -trum, adj.  
 river, *flūmen*, -minis, neut.  
 Roman, *Rōmānus* (adj. or noun).  
 rout, *fugō*, *prōfligō*, (1); *pellō*, (3).  
 rumor, *rūmor*, -ōris, mas.  
 run down, *decurrō*, (3).  
 rush forth, *prōvolō*, (1).  
 safety, *salūs*, -ūtis, fem.  
 sally, *excursiō*, -ōnis, fem.  
 say, *dicō*, (3).  
 scout, *explōrātor*, -tōris, mas.  
 second, *secundus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 see, *videō*, (2).  
 seek, *petō*, (3).  
 seem, *videor*, (2).  
 seize, *occupō*, (1).  
 senate, *senātus*, -ūs, mas.  
 send, *mittō*, (3).  
 send forward, *praemittō*, (3).  
 separate, *distineō*, (2).  
 servant, *servus*, -ī, mas.  
 settle, *cōnsidō*, (3).  
 set out, *proficiscor*, (3).  
 set up (arrange), *cōstituō*, (3).  
 seventh, *septimus*, -a, -um, num.  
 adj.  
 shield, *scūtum*, -ī, neut.  
 side, *latus*, -eris, neut.

sight, *cōspectus*, -ūs, mas.  
 signal, *sīgnum*, -ī, neut.  
 since, *cum* + subjunc.  
 shortness, *brevitās*, *exiguitās*,  
 -tūtis, fem.  
 slave, *servus*, -ī, mas.  
 slavery, *servitūs*, -tūtis, fem.  
 slay, *occidō*, (3).  
 slight, *parvulus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 slinger, *funditor*, -tōris, mas.  
 so (thus), *tam*, *ita*, adv.  
 so great, *tantus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 some, *nōnnūllus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 so that, *ut* + subjunc.  
 so that . . . not, *nē* + subjunc.  
 sovereignty, *rēgnum*, -ī, neut.,  
 (in the plur.).  
 speech, *ōrātiō*, -ōnis, fem.  
 speed, *cursus*, -ūs, mas.  
 state, *civitās*, -tūtis, fem.  
 stone, *lapis*, -idis, mas.  
 stop (cease), *dēsistō*, (3).  
 storm, *expūgnō*, (1).  
 strength, *vīs*, (*vīs*), fem.  
 strip, *nūdō*, (1).  
 strong (to be), *valeō*, (2); to have  
 very great influence, *plūrimum*  
*valēre*.  
 subdue, *superō*, (1); *vincō*, *pellō*,  
 (3).  
 subjection, *servitūs*, -tūtis, fem.  
 suddenly, *subitō*, adv.  
 suitable, *idōneus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 summer, *aestās*, -tūtis, fem.  
 summon, *convocō*, (1).  
 supply (plenty), *cōpia*, *ae*  
 fem.; (in the plur.) forces.  
 supply of corn, *rēs frūmentāria*,  
*rēi frūmentāriae*, fem.  
 supplies, *commēatus*, -ūs, mas.

surrender, *dēditō*, -ōnis, fem.;  
*dēdō*, *trādō*, (3).  
 surround, *circumdō*, (1); *circum-*  
*veniō*, (4).  
 swamp, *palūs*, -ūdis, fem.  
 sword, *gladius*, -ī, mas.  
 tall, *altus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 tenth, *decimus*, -a, -um, num. adj.  
 terms, *condiciō*, -ōnis, fem.  
 territory, *fīnis*, -is, mas. (in the  
 plur.).  
 testudo, *testūdō*, -dinis, fem.  
 that, *is*, *ea*, *id*, demons. pron., or  
 adj.  
 their, *eōrum*, (not reflex.), possess.  
 pron.; *suus*, -a, -um, (reflex.),  
 possess. pron.  
 there, *ibi*, adv.; *eō* (in sense of  
*thither*).  
 thing, *rēs*, *rēi*, fem.  
 this, *hic*, *haec*, *hōc*, demons. pron.  
 this side of, *cis*, prep. + *acc*.  
 thither, *eō*, adv.  
 (those) in the front, *priōrēs*, -um,  
 mas. (compar. adj. as noun).  
 thousand, *mille*; declined only in  
 plur., *mīlia*, -ium, neut.  
 three, *trēs*, *trēs*, *tria*, num. adj.  
 through, *per*, prep. + *acc*.  
 throw, *cōniciō*, (3).  
 time, *tempus*, -oris, neut.  
 to (towards), *ad*, prep. + *acc*.  
 tower, *turris*, -is, fem.  
 town, *oppidum*, -ī, neut.  
 townsmen, *oppidānī*, -ōrum, mas.  
 top of, *summus*, -a, -um, adj.  
 tribe, *gēns*, *gentis*, fem.  
 triple, *triplex*, gen. *triplicis*, adj.  
 (of one termination).

trumpet, *tuba*, -ae, fem.

try, *cōnor*, (1); *experior*, (4).

two, *duo*, *duae*, *duo*, num. adj.

undermine, *subruō*, (3).

unexpectedly, *dē imprōvisō*.

unfavorable, *inīquus*, -a, -um, adj.

unfriendly, *inimīcus*, -a, -um, adj.

unite (conspire), *cōsentiō*, (4).

unless, *nisi*, conj.

upon, *in* + acc., with verbs of motion; *in* + abl., with verbs of rest.

uproar, *tumultus*, -ūs, mas.

urge, *cohortor*, (1).

use, *usus*, -ūs, mas.; *utor*, (3).

very greatly, *māximē*, adv.

very like, *cōsimilis*, -is, -e, adj. (of two terminations).

very many, *plūrimus*, -a, -um, adj. (in the plur.).

village, *vīcus*, -ī, mas.

vine, *vīnea*, -ae, fem.

wait for, *expectō*, (1).

wall, *mūrus*, -ī, mas.

war, *bellum*, -ī, neut.

watch, *vigilia*, -ae, fem.

weapon, *tēlum*, -ī, neut.

when, where, *ubi* (denoting time or place).

while, *cum* + imperf. subjunc.

who, *quī*, (rel. pron.); *quis*, (interrog. pron.).

width, *lātītūdō*, -dinis, fem.

wing, *cornū*, -ūs, neut.

winter, *hiemō*, (1).

winter-quarters, *hiberna*, *hibernācula*, -ōrum, neut.

wish, *volō*, *velle*, *volūī*.

with, *cum*, prep. + abl.; *post-positive* with the *personal, relative* and *reflexive pronouns*.

within, *intrā*, prep. + acc.

without, *sine*, prep. + abl.

with respect to, *dē*, prep. + abl.

withstand, *sustineō*, (2).

work, *opus*, -eris, neut.

wound, *vulnus*, -eris, neut.; *vulnerō*, (1).

# INDEX.

References are to paragraphs.

**Ā, ab:** use of, 240

**Ablative:** separation, 221; quality, 376; time when or within which, 65; means or instrument, 43; attendance or accompaniment, 43; cause and manner, 210; place in which (place where), 47; place from which (whence), 386; with *ā* or *ab* and passive verb to denote personal agent, 237; *causā* with the *gen.*, 7; *quō* with the comparative, 384; with *opus* and *ūsus*, 379; with depon. verbs, 353; with comparative adj., 369; abl. absolute, 287; abl. absol. analyzed, 288; abl. absol. written in four ways, 364; abl. absol. distinguished from the p. p. p. modifying subj. or obj., 323

**Accusative:** direct object, 16, *c*; extent in space, 342; duration of time, 342; adverbial acc., 374; end or limit of motion (place towards which), 386; subj. of infinitive, 301, 302

**Ad:** with verbs of motion, 59; with *gerundive* in affirm. purpose, 355

**Adapted and Simplified Caesar:** 408-447

**Adjectives:** agreement of, 4, 115; stem, how found, 188, 298; used as substantives, 258; in the predicate, 95, 97; governing the *dat.*, 126; with *gen.* in *ius*, *dat.* in *i*, 286; of 1st and 2d declens. declined, 466; of 3d declens. declined, 467; numeral adjs. declined, 468; comparison of regular adjs., 298, 469; comparison of, ending in *er*, 308, 470; comparison of, ending in *ilis*, 314, 471, comparison of irregular, 472

**Adverb:** translated like adj., 216

**Adverbial accusative:** 374

**Adverbial phrase:** use of, 34

**Adverbs compared:** 473

**Affirmative purpose:** how expressed, 320; expressed in four ways, 355

**Affirmative result:** 321

**Ager:** declined, 454

**Agmen:** declined, 122

**Altior:** declined, 467

**Altus:** declined, 466

**Amō:** complete paradigms, 474, 475

**Analysis of a complex sentence:** 204

**Apposition:** 54

**Capiō:** complete paradigms, 480, 481

**Cāsus:** declined, 182

**Causal clauses:** 104, 276

**Causal cum:** 350, 359

**Certior factus:** 338

**Certiōrem (-ēs) facere:** 333

**Cīvitās:** declined, 122

**Cohortor:** use of, 347

**Collis:** declined, 130

**Commands and exhortations:** 389

**Commands, etc., in O. O.:** 390

**Comparative adjective declined:** 467

**Comparison of adjectives:** see 'Adjectives.'

**Comparison of adverbs:** 473

**Complex sentence:** 204 [337]

**Compound verbs with dative:**

**Concessive cum.** 350, 359

**Conditions.** more vivid future, 223, *a*, *b*; less vivid future, 335; conditions in O. O., 396

**Conjugations:**

*1st conjuga.:* list of 92 verbs, 448; complete paradigms (*amō*), 474, 475; synopses, by stems (*portō*): (*a*) *active*—pres. syst., 75, perf. syst., 120, sup. syst. 133; (*b*) *passive*—pres. and perf. syst., 255

*2d conjuga.:* list of 42 verbs, 449; complete paradigms (*monēō*), 476, 477; synopses, by stems (*dēlēō*): (*a*) *active*—pres.

syst., 158, perf. syst., 163, sup. syst., 169; (*b*) *passive*—pres. and perf. syst., 270

*3d conjuga.:* list of 157 verbs, 450; complete paradigms (*pōnō*), 478, 479; *capiō* (the 'iō' verb) complete, 480, 481; synopses, by stems (*pōnō*): (*a*) *active*—pres. syst., 192, perf. syst., 196, sup. syst., 197; (*b*) *passive*—pres. syst., 281, perf. syst., 284

*4th conjuga.:* list of 19 verbs, 451; complete paradigms (*mūniō*), 482, 483; synopses, by stems (*mūniō*): (*a*) *active*—pres. syst., 225, perf. syst., 230, sup. syst., 231; (*b*) *passive*—pres. syst., 295, perf. syst., 296

**Cornū:** declined, 461

**Corpus:** declined, 458

**Crēber:** declined, 466

**Cum clauses:** historical *cum*, *when* (= *while* or *after*), 128, 203, 263, 359; temporal *cum*, *when*, 359; causal *cum*, *since*, 350, 359; concessive *cum*, *although*, 350, 359

**Dative:** indirect obj., 15; with adjs., 126; with *imperō* and *mandō*, 134, 145; with *negōtium dare*, 330; with compound verbs, 337; with special verbs, 348; with *persuādeō* (in the *active*), 345; with *persuādeō* (in the *passive*), 380; double dat. (purpose, end, service), 352; possession, 357; personal agent, 362

**Declension of adjectives:** 1st and 2d declensions, 466; 3d declension, including pres. particip. and comparative, 467; numerals, 468

**Declension of nouns:**

*1st declension:* stem, gender, paradigms, 453

*2d declension:* stem, gender, paradigms, 454

*3d declension:* stems, kinds of, 455; nom., how formed in *consonant* stems, 456, A, B, C; nom., how formed in *vowel* stems, 457; *nom. sing.* ending (all genders) of vowel stems in *i*, 457; *nom. plur.* (neut.) ending of vowel stems in *i*, 457; *gen. plur.* ending of vowel stems in *i*, 457; *acc. plur.* (mas. and fem.) endings in *is* or *ēs*, 457 *gen. plur.* endings *um* and *ium*, all 3d-declension nouns, 460; general rules of gender, 458; paradigms: *miles*, 112; *civitās*, *agmen*, *lapis*, *miles ferus*, 122; *pater*, *rūmor*, *latus*, *corpus*, *legiō*, 124; *collis*, *rēx*, *flūmen lātum*, 130; *multitūdō*, *vis*, *iter*, 138; *frāter*, *hostis*, *pēs*, *facultās*, *virtūs*, *lēx*, *flūmen*, *insigne*, 458; *mīlia* (plur. of *mille*), 459. Third-declension paradigms (nouns) may be found in 112, 122, 124, 130, 138, 458, 459

*4th declension:* stem, gender, paradigms, 461

*5th declension:* stem, gender, paradigms, 462

**Declension of pronouns:** personal pron., 1st person, 463; demonstr. and intensive, 464; rel., interrog., and indef., 465

**Dēleō:** for synopses by stems, both voices, see 'Conjugations,' 2d.

**Demonstrative pronouns,** 464

**Deponent verbs:** use of, 325

*1st conjuga.:* complete paradigms (*populor*), 494; for *active* forms and synopses, *by stems*, see 326, 327

*2d conjuga.:* complete paradigms (*vereor*), 495

*3d conjuga.:* complete paradigms (*ūtor*), 496

*4th conjuga.:* complete paradigms (*potior*), 497

**Diēs:** declined, 462

**Direct discourse** (*Ōrātiō Rēcta*), 301

**Direct object:** 15, 16, c

**Direct question:** 313

**Duo:** declined, 468

**Duplex:** declined, 467

**Duration of time:** 342

**Ego:** declined, 463

**Eō:** complete paradigms, 486

**Equester:** declined, 467

**Extent in space:** 342

**Faciō:** active paradigms, 492

**Facultās:** declined, 458

**Fearing:** verbs of, with *ut* or *nē* + subjunctive, 343

**Ferō:** complete paradigms, 490, 491

**Fīō:** passive of *faciō*; passive paradigms, 493

**Flūmen:** declined, 458

**Flūmen lātum:** declined, 130

**Fortis:** declined, 188

**Fossa:** declined, 1, 6

**Frāter:** declined, 458

**Future participle, Future infinitive:** how formed, 170; fut. infin. in O. O., 318, examples 3 and 4 with note; fut. infin. of depon. verb, 328

**Galea:** declined, 453

**Gender:** 1st declension, 453; 2d declension, 454; 3d declension, 458, I, II, III; 4th declension, 461; 5th declension, 462

**Genitive:** use of and meaning, 7; with the abl. *causā*, 7; partitive and exceptions, 378; ending in *um* and *ium*, 460

**Gerund:** defined and declined, 73

**Gerundive construction:** in agreement with noun, 253; with *ad* to represent affirmative purpose, 355

**Gladius:** declined, 454

**Hic:** declined, 464

**Hinder:** verbs of, with *quān* or *nē* + subjunctive, 370

**Historical cum:** 128, 203, 263

**Hortatory subjunctive:** 395

**Hostis:** declined, 458

**How to express 'ought' or 'must':** *pres.* and *past* action, 385, 1, 2, 3

**How words are combined:** order and dependence, 92, 161, 176

**Īdem:** declined, 434

**Ille:** declined, 464

**Imperō:** with *dat.* and subjunctive clause, 145, 228

**Impersonal verbs:** 365

**Impetum facere:** with *in* + acc., 216

**In:** uses of, 35

**Indefinite pronoun, quis:** declined, 465

**Indirect Discourse (Ōrātiō Ōbliqua):** defined, 301; mood in 392; *pres. infin.* (statement clauses), 302; *perf. infin.* (statement clauses), 305; *fut. infin.* (statement clauses), 318; *subord. clauses in*, 306, 397; substitute for *fut. infin.* in, 382; conditions in, 396; commands and exhortations in, 390; *certiōrem (-ēs) facere*, used as a verb of *saying*, 333; specimens of, 400-407

**Indirect object:** 15, 16, *d*

**Indirect question:** mood of, 313

**Īnsigne:** declined, 458

**Integer:** declined, 56

**Intensive pronoun (ipse):** declined, 464

**Intermediate clauses:** 276

**Intermediate (subordinate) clauses in O. O.:** 306

**Interrogative pronoun (quis):** declined, 465

**Iipse:** declined, 464

**Irregular verbs:** list of 26 verbs, 452

*eō*, complete paradigms, 486

*faciō*, " " 492

*ferō*, " " 490, 491

*fiō*, " " 493

*mālō*, " " 489

**Irregular verbs :**

nōlō, complete paradigms, 488

possum, " " 485

sum, " " 484

volō, " " 487

**Is, ea, id :** declined, 464**Iter :** declined, 459**Iubeō :** use of, 155**-ius :** gen. ending of adjs., 286**Lapis :** declined, 458**Latus :** (noun) declined, 458**Legiō :** declined, 458**Less vivid future condition :** 335**Less vivid future condition in**

O. O. : 396, 2 and examples.

**Lēx :** declined, 458**-limus :** adj. superl. ending, 471**Mālō :** complete paradigms, 489**Mandō :** with *dat.* and subjunctive clause, 145, 228**Manus :** declined, 461**Miles :** declined, 458**Miles ferus :** declined, 122**Milia :** declined, 459**Moleō :** complete paradigms, 476, 477**Mood in O. O. :** 392**More vivid future condition :** 223, *a, b***More vivid future condition in**  
O. O. : 396, 1 and examples.**Motion, end or limit of :** 386**Multitūdō :** declined, 458**Mūniō :** complete paradigms, 482, 483; for synopses, by stems, both voices, see 'Conjugations,' 4th.**'Must' or 'ought' :** how expressed, 385, 1, 2, 3**Nē :** with subjunctive, neg. purpose, 211, 320; with subjunctive after *imperō* and *mandō*, 228; with imperative, neg. commands and exhortations, 389; *nē* + imperative (neg. commands, etc.) changed to O. O., 390; after verbs of fearing, 343; after verbs of hindering, etc., 370**Negative purpose :** 211, 320**Negative result :** 321**Negōtium dare :** with *dat.* and subjunctive clause, 330**Nisi :** in conditions, 223, 335**Nōlō :** complete paradigms, 488**Object :** direct, indirect, 15, 16**Oppidum :** declined, 37**Opus and ūsus :** with *abl.*, 379**Ōrātiō Oblīqua :** see 'Indirect Discourse.'**Ōrātiō Rēcta :** see 'Direct Discourse.'**Order of words :** 16, 77, 92, 161, 176**'Ought' or 'must' :** how expressed, 385, 1, 2, 3,**Participles :** pres. particip. declined, 467; substitutions for perf. act., 340, 372; formation of perf. pass., 257; use and agreem. of perf. pass., 316; perf. pass. in *abl. absol.*, 287, 364; perf. pass., when mod. the subj. or obj., distinguished from *abl. absol.*, 323; perf. pass. of depon., its use instead of perf. act., 340; perf. pass.

- translated as finite or coordinate verb, 381; perf. pass. with *habeō* or *teneō*, 375
- Partitive genitive:** and exceptions, 378
- Pater:** declined, 124
- Periphrastic conjugation:** formation and meaning, 361; complete paradigms, 498, 499
- Personal agent:** with regular passive verb, 237; with gerundive (periphrast. pass.), 362
- Personal pronoun (ego):** declined, 463
- Persuadeō:** in the active, 345; passive, 380
- Pēs:** declined, 458
- Place from—towards—which:** 386
- Place in which:** 47
- Pōnō:** complete paradigms, 478, 479; for synopses, by stems, both voices, see 'Conjugations,' 3d
- Populor:** complete paradigms, 494
- Possession:** dat. of, 357
- Possum:** complete paradigms, 485
- Postquam:** in temporal clauses, 358
- Potior:** complete paradigms, 497
- Predicate nominative:** 95, 97
- Pronouns:** *ego*, 463; *hīc*, *īdem*, *ille*, *ipse*, *is*, 464; *quī*, *quis*, 465; *sē*, 214
- Puer:** declined, 41
- Pūgnāns:** declined, 467
- Purpose:** relative clause of, 311; affirm. and neg. purpose, 320; affirm. purpose expressed in four ways, 355
- Quantity:** general rules of, 500-504
- Que:** position, 215
- Questions:** direct, indirect, 313
- Quī:** declined, 465
- Quis:** declined, 465
- Quod clauses:** mood of; when *indic.*, 276; when *subjunc.*, 276, 306
- Reflexive pronoun:** *personal* *suī*, etc., declined, 214; *possessive* *suus*, etc., 189
- Relative:** *quī*, declined, 465; agreement of, with antecedent, 83; with *castra*, etc., 84, 85; agreement of, with pred. word, 373; rel. clause of purpose, 311; of cause or concession, 368; of result, 387; rel. as a connective at the beginning of a sent. 367
- Rēs:** declined, 462
- Result clauses:** 321
- Rēx:** declined, 130
- rimus:** adj. superl. ending, 470
- Rūmor:** declined, 124
- Scūtum:** declined, 454
- Sē:** declined, 214
- Sequence of tenses:** rule of, 135; table of, 136; application of rule of, 137; use of, in O. C. 397
- Servus:** declined, 18, 25
- Silva:** declined, 453
- Special verbs with dative:** 348
- Subordinate clauses:** use and

- dependence of, 110, 161, 166,  
276; use of, in O. O., 306,  
397
- Substitution for future infinitive:** in supineless and passive verbs, 382
- Substitution for perfect active participle:** by using depon. particip., abl. absol., or subord. clause, 340, 372
- Suī:** declined, 214
- Sum:** complete paradigms, 484; synopsis, pres. syst., 117; perf. syst., 127
- Suus:** use and meaning of, 189
- Temporal clauses:** *postquam*, *ubi*, etc. + indic., 358
- Tōtus:** declined, 286
- Trēs:** declined, 468
- Ubi:** use of, 203, 358
- Ut:** in purpose clauses, 53, 320, 355; with verbs of command, 145, 228; clauses of command in O. O., 389, 392, 2, *a*, *b*, *c*; in temporal clauses, 358
- Ut and ut non** in result clauses, 321
- Ūtor:** complete paradigms, 496
- Vir:** declined, 454
- Virtūs:** declined, 458
- Vis:** declined, 459
- Volō:** complete paradigms, 487
- Vowel stems in i:** (*a*) *nouns*: *collis*, declined, 130; *hostis*, declined, 458; gender, stem, and special endings of, 131, 457; (*b*) *adjectives*: *fortis*, declined, 467; stem and special endings of, 188









[illegible]

## Demco 293-5

BOSTON UNIVERSITY



1 1719 02753 7531

